

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
21 August 2008 (21.08.2008)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2008/099001 A1**

(51) International Patent Classification:  
*A61K 35/74* (2006.01) *A61K 45/06* (2006.01)  
*A61K 39/395* (2006.01) *A61P 35/00* (2006.01)

(74) Agent: TARUTTIS, Stefan; Aegidientorplatz 2b, 30159  
Hannover (DE).

(21) International Application Number:  
PCT/EP2008/051839

(81) Designated States (*unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of national protection available*): AE, AG, AL, AM, AO, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL, PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SV, SY, TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA, ZM, ZW.

(22) International Filing Date:  
15 February 2008 (15.02.2008)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:  
07102516.7 15 February 2007 (15.02.2007) EP

(84) Designated States (*unless otherwise indicated, for every kind of regional protection available*): ARIPO (BW, GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM, ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, HR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, NO, PL, PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(71) Applicant (*for all designated States except US*):  
HELMHOLTZ-ZENTRUM FÜR INFektions-  
FORSCHUNG GMBH [DE/DE]; Inhoffenstrasse 7,  
38124 Braunschweig (DE).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (*for US only*): WESTPHAL,  
Kathrin [DE/DE]; Gliesmaroder Str. 15, 38106 Braun-  
schweig (DE). LÖSSNER, Holger [DE/DE]; Dresdenstr.  
119a, 38124 Braunschweig (DE). LESCHNER, Sara  
[DE/DE]; Celler Str. 24d, 38114 Braunschweig (DE).  
WEISS, Siegfried [DE/DE]; Gutenbergstr. 10, 38118  
Braunschweig (DE).

**Published:**

- with international search report
- before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of receipt of amendments

(54) Title: USE OF A LEUKOCYTE DIMINISHING OR INACTIVATING AGENT IN COMBINATION WITH BACTERIALLY-MEDIATED TUMOR TREATMENT

(57) Abstract: The present invention provides pharmaceutical compositions for use in tumor therapy as well as a medical treatment in tumor therapy. The compositions comprise a leukocyte diminishing and/or leukocyte inactivating agent for use in bacterial tumor therapy in combination. Preferably, the leukocyte inactivating or diminishing agents are expressed by the bacteria used for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for bacterial tumor therapy.



WO 2008/099001 A1

**USE OF A LEUKOCYTE DIMINISHING OR INACTIVATING AGENT IN  
COMBINATION WITH  
BACTERIALLY-MEDIATED TUMOR TREATMENT**

The present invention relates to pharmaceutical compositions useful for the treatment of tumors, especially for the treatment of solid tumors. The present invention provides an improvement for known therapies using non-pathogenic bacteria for the treatment of solid tumors by providing the use of agents for the manufacture of pharmaceutical compositions that cause an increase of the penetration of the bacteria into tumor tissue.

**State of the art**

Pawelek et al. ("Bacteria as tumor - targeting vectors", *Lancet Oncology* 4, 548-556 (2003)) describe that bacteria can be administered to organisms, e.g. human patients, suffering from a tumor, the administration of bacteria resulting in shrinkage of the tumor. Pawelek et al. found that tumor cells were destructed by the immunoreactions originally directed against the bacterial infection.

For tumor therapy using the administration of bacteria to the affected organism, it is known from Pawelek et al. that the natural preference of bacterial strains to target tumor tissue can be exploited for an improved therapeutic effect by manipulating the bacteria for the delivery of biologically active factors into the tumor tissue.

Dang et al. ("Combination bacteriolytic therapy for the treatment of experimental tumors", PNAS USA 98, 15155-15160 (2001)) demonstrated that bacteria accumulate and grow in necrotic regions of solid tumors, leaving a rim of viable tumor tissue.

The preference of obligate anaerobic bacteria, e.g. *Clostridium* and *Bifidobacterium*, for the hypoxic and anoxic regions of a solid tumor is explained by the preference of the bacteria for certain growth conditions (Bettegowda et al., "Overcoming the hypoxic barrier to radiation therapy with anaerobic bacteria", PNAS USA 100, 15083-15088 (2003)). However, also facultative anaerobic bacteria used for tumor targeting, e.g. *Salmonella typhimurium* or *E. coli* were found not to migrate into viable tumor tissue, but remain in necrotic tumor regions (Forbes et al., "Sparse initial entrapment of systemically injected *Salmonella typhimurium* leads to heterogeneous accumulation within tumors", Cancer Research 63, 5188-5193 (2003)).

WO01/24637 describes a tumor treatment therapy by combined administration of bacteria and irradiation to the tumor. The bacteria can be genetically manipulated to produce a cellular toxin, e.g. colicin, or a cytokine or an anti-angiogenic protein.

### **Objects of the invention**

In view of the shortcomings of tumor therapies using bacteria for administration to a patient to achieve the reduction of viable tumor tissue, it is an object of the present invention to provide the use of compounds for the production of pharmaceutical compositions suitable for use in tumor therapy, which compositions improve the efficacy of the use of bacteria in tumor treatment, e.g. the use of compounds for pharmaceutical purposes in addition to or in combination with pharmaceutical compositions comprising bacteria, for use in tumor therapy.

### General description of the invention

The present invention achieves the above-mentioned objects by providing the use of compounds for the production of pharmaceutical compositions for use in tumor therapy as well as a medical treatment in tumor therapy. Specifically, the present invention provides the use of a leukocyte diminishing and/or leukocyte inactivating agent for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for use in bacterial tumor therapy, e.g. in combination with the use of bacteria for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for use in tumor therapy. Preferably, the leukocyte inactivating or diminishing agents are expressed by the bacteria used for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for bacterial tumor therapy.

Compounds and treatment according to the invention comprise the administration of non-pathogenic bacteria to an organism or patient bearing a solid tumor, the active compounds being specifically directed against the activity, preferably against the presence of leukocytes, e.g. leading to the inactivation, reduction or depletion of leukocytes from the organism affected by the presence of a tumor, at least leading to the depletion of leukocytes within and/or around tumor tissue. For therapeutic purposes, non-pathogenic bacteria are used as a pharmaceutically active component, e.g. selected from attenuated bacteria, non-pathogenic bacteria and commensal bacteria. Exemplary bacteria are comprised in the group gram-negative bacteria including *E. coli*, *Salmonella* spp., e.g. *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhimurium, like strain SL7207, e.g. *Salmonella enterica* serovar Typhi, like strain Ty21a, *Shigella* spp., *Yersinia* spp., and *Vibrio cholerae* and gram-positive bacteria including *Bacillus* spp., e.g. *Bacillus subtilis*, *Clostridium* spp., *Listerium monocytogenes*, and *Mycobacterium* spp., e.g. strain BCG. Commensal bacteria are for example *E. coli*, *Lactobacillus* spp., *Lactococcus* spp., and *Streptococcus gordonii*. With reference to the affinity of *Vibrio cholerae* to tumors this is a property shared with at least some invasive bacteria, making them useful within the present invention. Non pathogenic bacteria for use in the present invention are comprised in the group including the following bacteria and, in the case of pathogenic bacteria, from respective attenuated strains thereof: *Agrobacterium* e.g. *Agrobacterium tumefaciens*; *Bacillus* e.g. *Bacillus cereus*, *Bacillus subtilis*, *Bacillus thuringiensis*, *Bacillus weihenstephanensis*; *Bartonella* e.g. *Bartonella henselae*, *Bartonella schoenbuchensis*; *Bdellovibrio* e.g. *Bdellovibrio bacteriovorus*, *Bdellovibrio starrii*, *Bdellovibrio stolpii*; *Bifidobacterium* e.g. *Bifidobacterium adolescentis*, *Bifidobacterium bifidum*, *Bifidobacterium lactis*, *Bifidobacterium longum*; *Bordetella* e.g. *Bordetella*



*pertussis*; *Borrelia* e.g. *Borrelia burgdorferi*; *Brucella* e.g. *Brucella abortus*, *Brucella bronchiseptica*; *Burkholderia* e.g. *Burkholderia cenocepacia*, *Burkholderia fungorum*, *Burkholderia mallei*, *Burkholderia pseudomallei*; *Campylobacter* e.g. *Campylobacter fecalis*, *Campylobacter pylori*, *Campylobacter sputorum*; *Chlamydia* e.g. *Chlamydia pneumoniae*, *Chlamydia psittaci*, *Chlamydia trachomatis*; *Clostridium* e.g. *Clostridium difficile*, *Clostridium novyi*, *Clostridium oncolyticum*, *Clostridium perfringens*, *Clostridium sporogenes*, *Clostridium tetani*; *Corynebacterium* e.g. *Corynebacterium diphtheriae*, *Corynebacterium glutamicum*, *Corynebacterium jeikeium*; *Edwardsiella* e.g. *Edwardsiella hoshinae*, *Edwardsiella ictaluri*, *Edwardsiella tarda*; *Enterobacter* e.g. *Enterobacter aerogenes*, *Enterobacter cloacae*, *Enterobacter sakazakii*; *Enterococcus* e.g. *Enterococcus avium*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, *Enterococcus faecium*, *Enterococcus gallinarum*; *Escherichia* e.g. *Escherichia coli*; *Eubacterium* e.g. *Eubacterium lentum*, *Eubacterium nodatum*, *Eubacterium timidum*; *Helicobacter* e.g. *Helicobacter pylori*; *Klebsiella* e.g. *Klebsiella oxytoca*, *Klebsiella pneumoniae*; *Lactobacillus* e.g. *Lactobacillus bulgaricus*, *Lactobacillus casei*, *Lactobacillus delbrueckii*, *Lactobacillus plantarum*; *Lactobacterium* e.g. *Lactobacterium fermentum*; *Lactococcus* e.g. *Lactococcus lactis*, *Lactococcus plantarum*; *Legionella* e.g. *Legionella pneumophila*; *Listeria* e.g. *Listeria innocua*, *Listeria ivanovii*, *Listeria monocytogenes*; *Microbacterium* e.g. *Microbacterium arborescens*, *Microbacterium lacticum*; *Mycobacterium* e.g. *Bacille Calmette-Guérin (BCG)*, *Mycobacterium avium*, *Mycobacterium bovis*, *Mycobacterium paratuberculosis*, *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; *Neisseria* e.g. *Neisseria gonorrhoeae*, *Neisseria lactamica*, *Neisseria meningitidis*; *Pasteurella* e.g. *Pasteurella haemolytica*, *Pasteurella multocida*; *Salmonella* e.g. *Salmonella bongori*, *Salmonella enterica* ssp.; *Shigella* e.g. *Shigella dysenteriae*, *Shigella flexneri*, *Shigella sonnei*; *Staphylococcus* e.g. *Staphylococcus aureus*, *Staphylococcus lactis*, *Staphylococcus saprophyticus*; *Streptococcus* e.g. *Streptococcus gordonii*, *Streptococcus lactis*, *Streptococcus pneumoniae*, *Streptococcus pyogenes*, *Streptococcus salivarius*; *Treponema* e.g. *Treponema denticola*, *Treponema pallidum*; *Vibrio* e.g. *Vibrio cholerae*; *Yersinia* e.g. *Yersinia enterocolitica*, *Yersinia pseudotuberculosis*, including S1-strains devoid of Hfr factors and of pili of these bacteria, especially S1-strains of *E. coli*.

For the present invention, the term leukocyte generally comprises the group of granulocytes like neutrophilic, basophilic and eosinophilic granulocytes and mast cells. In addition to granulocytes, leukocytes can also include macrophages and dendritic cells.

The present invention is based on the observation that the depletion or inactivation of leukocytes in and/or around tumor tissue results in an infiltration of the entire tumor tissue, including the viable tumor tissue, by bacteria administered for therapeutic purposes, resulting in a significant improvement of tumor size reduction.

Further, it has been shown that the depletion of leukocytes, more preferred of granulocytes, and most preferred of neutrophilic granulocytes, essentially from the entire organism affected by the presence of a tumor does not significantly impair the health status of the organism or patient, and leads to a significant improvement of bacterial tumor therapy, namely to a significant reduction of tumor tissue, especially of viable tumor tissue, by the presence of bacteria used for therapy essentially throughout the entire tumor.

In the alternative to a systemic inactivation or depletion of leukocytes, the depletion or inactivation of leukocytes, more preferred of granulocytes, and most preferred of neutrophilic granulocytes can be effected essentially for the tumor tissue only, e.g. as a local depletion or inactivation of these immune cells in the vicinity of and/or within a solid tumor.

Initially, it was observed that the administration of bacteria for therapeutical purposes in tumor therapy essentially leads to colonization of the necrotic regions of tumor tissue, while leaving the viable regions of tumor tissue essentially unaffected. As a result, tumor therapy using bacteria to-date leaves at least a fraction of the viable tumor tissue intact.

A cause for the limitation of the spread of bacteria used in tumor therapy to necrotic regions of a solid tumor is believed by the present inventors to be caused by a barrier generated by leukocytes, especially of neutrophilic granulocytes and macrophages, gathering at a boundary or interfacial area of viable tumor tissue towards necrotic regions and towards healthy tissue.

The presence of an agent for the inactivation, reduction in number, i.e. diminishing leukocytes, or depletion of leukocytes by at least 50%, preferably by at least 80%, more preferably by at least 95%, most preferably by about 99%, especially of neutrophilic granulocytes and macrophages, results in the colonization of viable tumor tissue by bacteria administered for therapeutic purposes in tumor therapy. As a consequence of the inactivation, reduction in number and/or depletion of leukocytes, therapeutically administered bacteria can

locate into the viable tumor tissue, which leads to a significant reduction, preferably to the elimination of viable tumor tissue.

Surprisingly, it could be shown that the depletion of a fraction of the natural immune system, namely of leukocytes, especially of granulocytes, more especially of neutrophilic granulocytes by at least 50% and up to more than 90% from the blood of an organism affected by the presence of a tumor leads to a significantly higher efficacy of tumor reduction by bacterial treatment but does not result in significant impairments of the organism.

Accordingly, it is demonstrated by the present invention that the virtual elimination of leukocytes, more especially of neutrophilic granulocytes, from the blood of an organism results in an increased efficacy of tumor therapy using the administration of bacteria. Preferably, the number of leukocytes, more especially of neutrophilic granulocytes or macrophages is reduced, more preferably depleted from the tumor bearing organism, preferably from the tumor tissue only and, more preferably, for a limited period of time, allowing the restoration of the presence of leukocytes, more especially of neutrophilic granulocytes or macrophages after a significant decrease of viable tumor tissue, preferably after complete destruction of the tumor tissue. Accordingly, it is preferred that the compounds for inactivation or depletion of leukocytes, more especially of neutrophilic granulocytes or macrophages are used for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for use in the treatment of solid tumors for transient inactivation or depletion.

For temporary depletion of leukocytes, the present invention in a first embodiment provides the use of antibodies, specifically directed against leukocytes, especially antibody specific for granulocytes or macrophages, for the production of pharmaceutical compositions for use in tumor therapy, for local or systemic administration. Administration of antibodies specific against leukocytes leads to their depletion from the blood of the organism affected by presence of a tumor. In the alternative or in addition to the administration of an antibody preparation, antibody can be provided by expression by the bacteria used in tumor therapy, which bacteria are genetically manipulated to express an antibody directed specifically against leukocytes, preferably including the secretion of the antibody in soluble form.

In addition to or in the alternative to the use of antibodies directed against leukocytes, the presence of leukocytes in and around tumor tissue can significantly be reduced by eliminating for instance the activity of cytokines and/or chemokines, which attract leukocytes to the tumor

tissue. Accordingly, the invention provides the use of antibody specifically directed against a cytokine or a chemokine attracting leukocytes for the production of a pharmaceutical composition, in combination with the use of bacteria in a pharmaceutical composition against tumor, because the compounds masking or otherwise eliminating the activity of cytokines and/or chemokines attracting leukocytes to the surrounding of or into tumor tissue also result in an increased presence of the bacteria used in tumor therapy within the viable regions of tumor tissue and, as a consequence, in an increased reduction of viable tumor tissue.

In addition to or in the alternative to the administration of compounds, e.g. antibody, eliminating the activity of cytokines and/or chemokines attracting leukocytes to the site of tumor tissue, by administration of antibody directed against the specific leukocytes attracting cytokines and/or chemokines, to the organism affected by a tumor, these antibodies specifically directed against chemokines and/or cytokines can be provided by expression by the bacteria used in tumor therapy, which bacteria are genetically manipulated to express the specific antibodies, preferably in soluble form and including secretion.

Accordingly, the present invention in addition to providing the use of antibody specifically directed against leukocytes and/or the use of antibody specifically directed against the activity of cytokines and/or the use of antibody specifically directed against chemokines attracting leukocytes within tumor tissue, for use in the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for tumor therapy, and the respective tumor therapy, the present invention provides bacteria for use in the production of pharmaceutical compositions for tumor therapy, which bacteria are genetically manipulated to express antibody directed against leukocytes and/or antibody directed against cytokines and/or antibody specifically directed against chemokines attracting leukocytes. For the purposes of this invention, the expression of anti-leukocyte specificity can be used to include both toxins specifically directed against leukocytes, antibody specifically directed against leukocytes, and antibody directed against a cytokine and/or against a chemokine having leukocyte attracting properties. Expression of at least one of these antibodies by the bacteria used for tumor therapy predominantly leads to presence of these antibodies within the tumor tissue and its surroundings because the bacteria used in tumor therapy have a natural preference for the tumor tissue, e.g. based on the facultative anaerobic or obligate anaerobic habitat requirements.

For suppressing the activity of cytokines and/or chemokines, antibodies can be used for the production of a pharmaceutical composition according to the invention, which antibodies are comprised in the group of antibody neutralizing tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF $\alpha$ ), antibody neutralizing interleukin 8 (IL-8), antibody neutralizing epithelial-derived neutrophil attractant (ENA-78, corresponding to CXCL5), antibody neutralizing growth - related oncogene alpha (gro- $\alpha$ ), antibody neutralizing interferon- $\gamma$ -inducible-lymphocyte-attractant chemokine (monocyte chemoattractant protein 1, MCP 1), antibody neutralizing interferon gamma inducible protein (IP - 10), antibody neutralizing monokine induced by interferon gamma (MIG) and/or antibody neutralizing formyl-MLP, antibody neutralizing anaphylatoxin C5a, antibody neutralizing anaphylatoxin C3a, antibody neutralizing prostaglandines, e.g. antibody neutralizing prostaglandine E1, antibody neutralizing prostaglandine MIP-1 $\alpha$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\beta$ ), antibody neutralizing prostaglandine MIP-1 $\beta$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\alpha$ ), antibody neutralizing RANTES/CCL5 (RANTES = regulated upon activation , normal T-cell expressed and secreted), and/or antibody neutralizing leukocyte adhesion factor LFA-1. These antibodies can be generated according to standard procedures as a polyclonal serum fraction, or as a monoclonal preparation or, preferably, by expression from the nucleic acid sequence encoding the antibody in a manipulated bacterium used in the pharmaceutical composition for tumor therapy.

Antibodies suitable for depleting leukocytes can be selected from the group comprising anti-CD11b, anti-CD11c, anti-Gr1 and anti-F4/80.

For systemic depletion of monocytes, which are precursor cells of macrophage and granulocytes, clodronate, e.g. formulated into a liposome preparation, can be used.

Further, the depletion or inactivation of leukocytes can be effected by genetically manipulating bacteria used in tumor therapy to express a cytotoxin, e.g. colicin or *Pseudomonas* exotoxin. Alternatively, the depletion or inactivation of leukocytes according to the invention can be caused using natural bacteria having cytotoxic activity, e.g. *E. coli* of the phylogenetic group B2, which express a cytotoxin. Accordingly, the present invention provides the use of cytotoxin expressing bacteria for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for tumor therapy.

Preferably, the cytotoxin for use in the present invention has a preference for inhibiting or depleting leukocytes and a less pronounced effect on other cells like e.g. erythrocytes. More preferably, the cytotoxin is specific for leukocytes. In accordance with the preference for an anti-leukocyte specificity of the cytotoxin for use in the preparation of a pharmaceutical composition according to the present invention, the cytotoxin is provided for administration or activity at the site of leukocyte accumulation in the vicinity of the tumor or, more preferably, the cytotoxin does not or only to a limited extent have general cytotoxic activity directed against all cells, but has anti-leukocyte specificity. Exemplary preferred leukocyte specific cytotoxins are comprised in the group of a soluble cytotoxin obtainable from *Pasteurella haemolytica* culture supernatant as described by Shewen et al. (Infection and Immunity, 91-94 (1982)), staphylococcal leukocidin, soluble leukocyte toxin obtainable from *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans* as described by Tsai et al. (Infection and Immunity 427-439 (1979)), and leukocidins, e.g. Panton-Valentine leukocidin of *Staphylococcus aureus*, described by Genestier et al. (The Journal of Clinical Investigation 3117-3127 (2005)).

Bacteria for use as a pharmaceutical agent in tumor therapy comprising an expression cassette for a synthesis product essentially depleting or at least inactivating leukocytes, e.g. selected from the aforementioned antibodies or toxins, especially those having specificity against neutrophilic granulocytes or macrophages, can comprise a constitutive promoter for expression control, preferably an inducible promoter being inducible by an agent that can be administered separate from the bacteria to the organism affected by presence of the tumor. A preferred inducible promoter for the expression cassette for the anti-leukocyte synthesis product is a saccharide inducible promoter, especially the arabinose inducible promoter. For release of the toxin and/or antibody directed against leukocytes, the genetically manipulated bacteria comprising the coding sequences for the anti-leukocyte toxin and/or anti-leukocyte antibody can be provided with coding sequences and/or regulatory sequences providing for the secretion of the anti-leukocyte toxin and/or anti-leukocyte antibody from the bacteria, or for release of the anti-leukocyte toxin and/or anti-leukocyte antibody by inducible lysis of the bacteria.

Preferably, the anti-leukocyte antibody of the invention is a single-chain antibody designed for synthesis in its active form, e.g. in soluble form, in the bacterium. As an example, the anti-leukocyte antibody is devoid of a constant chain domain and/or devoid of a light chain

domain, e.g. the antibody is a minibody or nanobody, e.g. corresponding to the structure of camelids, which are antibodies obtainable from camel and alpaca.

As a further embodiment, bacteria for use in tumor therapy according to the invention, comprising an expression cassette, the synthesis product of which has anti-leukocyte activity, e.g. leads to the reduction of leukocytes, especially preferred to the depletion of leukocytes, also contain an expression cassette for a translation product having anti-tumor activity, the expression cassette preferably under the control of an inducible promoter, which preferably is a tumor-specific promoter, which is more preferably inducible separately from the promoter controlling the expression cassette encoding the anti-leukocyte agent.

### Detailed description of the invention

The present invention is now described in greater detail by way of examples with reference to the figures, wherein

- Figures 1 A, B and C for comparison show microscopic pictures of one sample section of a mouse tumor after systemic infection with *Salmonella typhimurium* in the identical sample section, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 100  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
- Figures 2 A, B and C show enlargements of the microscopic pictures of Figure 1 in one sample section, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 10  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
- Figures 3 A, B and C show microscopic pictures of one sample section of a mouse tumor after systemic depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, followed by systemic infection with *Salmonella typhimurium* shortly after bacterial infection in one sample section, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 100  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
- Figure 4 A, B and C show microscopic pictures of one sample section of a mouse tumor after systemic depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, in which depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes was achieved only to 95%, followed by systemic infection

- with *Salmonella typhimurium* shortly after bacterial infection in a similar sample section, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 100  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
- Figures 5 A, B and C show microscopic pictures of one sample section of a mouse tumor after systemic depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, followed by systemic infection with *Salmonella typhimurium* 2 days post bacterial infection in enlargement from Figure 4 in an identical sample section, namely at A) the localization of bacteria, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 10  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
  - Figures 6 A, B and C show microscopic pictures of vital tumor tissue of a mouse tumor after systemic depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, followed by systemic infection with *Salmonella typhimurium* 2 days post bacterial infection in an identical sample section, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 10  $\mu\text{m}$ ,
  - Figures 7 A, B and C show microscopic pictures of a vital region of a mouse tumor directly at the border of the tumor next to the skin after systemic depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, followed by systemic infection with *Salmonella typhimurium* 2 days post bacterial infection, namely at A) the localization of *Salmonella typhimurium*, at B) the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes, and at C) the localization of macrophages, with the white bar on the bottom right corner representing 10  $\mu\text{m}$ , and
  - Figure 8 shows results of A) neutrophil counts after administration of antibody depleting neutrophilic granulocytes, B) bacterial counts of *S. typhimurium*, C) bacterial counts of *E. coli*, and D) bacterial counts of *Shigella flexneri*, after administration of these bacteria to separate experimental animals, with black columns referring to bacterial counts in experiments according to the invention after administration of a granulocyte specific antibody for depletion of neutrophils, and comparative grey columns referring to bacterial counts without the depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes.

Micrographs of Figures 1 to 7 were taken from cryosections of 10  $\mu\text{m}$  thickness prepared from snap frozen tumor tissue (Tissue-Tek OCT compound, obtained from Sakura Finetek)



from sacrificed mice using a microtome cryostat (Cryo-Star HM 560V, Microm), followed by air-drying at room temperature overnight and fixing in acetone at -20 °C for three min, rehydrating in PBS, blocking with 50 µg/mL BSA and 1 µg/mL FcR blocker (rat anti-mouse CD 16/CD 32). For specific staining of *Salmonella typhimurium*, polyclonal rabbit anti-*S. typhimurium* (Sifin) and polyclonal goat anti-rabbit Alexa 488 (Sigma) were used, for staining of *Shigella flexneri*, polyclonal goat anti-rabbit with Alexa 488 (Sigma) and polyclonal rabbit anti-*Shigella flexneri* (Biomol) were used, for staining of *E. coli*, polyclonal goat-anti-*E. coli* (Biomol) and polyclonal rabbit anti-goat Alexa 488 (Invitrogen) were used.

For staining of neutrophilic granulocytes, rat-anti-Gr1 biotin (RB6-8C5) and streptavidin-cy5 (Molecular Probes) for staining of macrophages rat anti-CD 11b PE (eBioscience) were used, and for staining of eucaryotic cells, Phalloidin Alexa fluor 594 (Molecular Probes) and DRAQ5 (Biostatus) were used. After staining, the slides were washed and dried, mounted with mounting medium (Neomount, Merck) and analysed using a laser scanning confocal microscope (LSM 510 Meta, Zeiss) followed by image processing using an LSM5 image browser (Zeiss) and Adobe photoshop 7.0.

For paraffin sections, tumors were fixed with 10% (v/v) paraformaldehyde and imbedded in paraffin wax. Sections of 5 µm were mounted starfrost slides and stained with hematoxilin and cosin. Stained paraffin sections were analysed with an Olympus BX51 microscope.

In Figures 1 to 7, similar sample sections are shown, respectively. Accordingly, superimposition of Figures A – C allows to determine the relative localization of leukocytes and bacteria after their specific detection. Necrotic tissue (indicated as “Nekrose”) and vital tumor tissue (indicated as “vital”) were detected by specific staining and/or light microscopy.

#### Comparative example 1: Use of bacteria for the treatment of tumors in mice

For comparative purposes, BALB/c mice (6 weeks old, female, purchased from Harlan, Borchon, Germany) were subcutaneously inoculated at the abdomen with  $5 \times 10^5$  cells of the colon adenocarcinoma cell line CT26 (available as ATCC CRL-2638), which were grown as monolayers in IMDM medium (Gibco BRL), supplemented with 10 % (v/v) heat inactivated fetal calf serum, 250 µM β-mercapto ethanol and 1% (v/v) penicillin - streptomycin.

After 10 days following injection, mice bearing tumors of diameters from 5 to 7 mm were infected with bacteria suspended in phosphate buffered saline (PBS) using  $5 \times 10^6$  cfu of *Salmonella typhimurium* (strain SL2707, hisG,  $\Delta$ aroA (Hoiseth and Stocker, 1981)) or *E. coli* TOP10 (Invitrogen, Karlsruhe, Germany) from overnight cultures grown at 37 °C in shake flasks intravenously, or intratumorally with  $1 \times 10^7$  *Shigella flexneri* (sero type 5,  $\Delta$ dap, according to Sansonetti et al., 1982), grown in tryptic soy broth, supplemented with 200  $\mu$ M Congo red, 30  $\mu$ g/mL kanamycin, 100  $\mu$ g/mL DAP at 37 °C in shake flasks.

The intratumoral administration of *Shigella flexneri* was used because initial experiments showed that systemic administration of *Shigella flexneri* did not result in a preferential accumulation of the bacteria in tumor tissue, as was observed for salmonella and *E. coli*.

In Figure 1 A – C and its enlargement in Figure 2 A – C, sections of mouse tumor two days post systemic bacterial infection by *Salmonella typhimurium* and without depletion of leukocytes are shown. The accumulation of macrophages (Figures 1C and 2C) in one line can be seen, corresponding to the localization of neutrophilic granulocytes (Figures 1B and 2B), and which can be interpreted as the accumulation of leukocytes in one plane. In vital tumor tissue (indicated by “vital”) identified in light microscopy, no significant presence of bacteria (Figures 1A and 2A) was detected whereas bacteria could be localized in necrotic regions (indicated as “Nekrose”).

Analyses of tumor tissue from mice after infection with *E. coli* or after infection with *Shigella flexneri*, show that bacteria are essentially limited to necrotic regions of the tumor with a layer of leukocytes being arranged between necrotic and viable tumor tissue.

Example 1: Use of a granulocyte - specific antibody for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for the depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes in combination with artificial bacterial infection

Using the experimental procedure of comparative example 1, a significant depletion of neutrophils according to the invention was initiated by administering three doses of 25  $\mu$ g each of monoclonal rat-anti-Gr1 (RB6-8C5) antibody, diluted in 100  $\mu$ L PBS intraperitoneally, one day before, simultaneously, and 1 day following bacterial infection.

In Figures 3 to 7, cryosections are depicted, now showing detection of the bacteria in trial dispersed throughout the tumor tissue, including the viable regions of the tumor. In detail, Figures 3 - 7 show the effect of the depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes as a significantly reduced number of neutrophilic granulocytes (Figures 3 and 4 B) from tumor tissue and the destruction of the layer formed by neutrophilic granulocytes at the interfacial area between necrotic and viable tumor tissue. Correspondingly, the number of leukocytes detected in tumor tissue is reduced.

In detail, the enlargement of a fraction of Figure 4, shown as Figure 5, demonstrates that following the depletion of leukocytes, especially of neutrophilic granulocytes from tumor tissue results in the spread of bacteria that were administered systemically or locally to tumor tissue also into viable tumor tissue because bacteria can be detected on both sides of the interface between necrotic and viable tumor tissue, even if a fraction of leukocytes can be detected to remain at this interface.

In Figure 6 bacteria are now be detected also to reside in vital tumor tissue. This is corroborated by Figure 7 showing vital tumor tissue at the border of the tumor and skin, in which vital tumor tissue now bacteria are found.

When comparing the extension of the necrosis observed by microscopy, a significant increase of the necrotic area for the artificially induced tumor could be detected caused by the depletion of neutrophils, exemplified here by the application of the granulocyte specific antibody  $\alpha$ - Gr1. Results are summarized in table 1.

**Table 1: Percentage necrosis after administration of bacteria with and without the depletion of neutrophils**

tumor	bacteria administered	depletion with $\alpha$ -Gr1 antibody	necrosis [%]
CT26	No infection	-	5-15
	<i>S. typhimurium</i> SL7270	-	60-65
	<i>S. typhimurium</i> SL7270	+	75-85
	<i>E. coli</i> TOP10	-	60-65
	<i>E. coli</i> TOP10	+	80-85
	<i>S. flexneri</i> $\Delta$ dap	-	65-70
	<i>S. flexneri</i> $\Delta$ dap	+	85-90

Table 1 shows that in addition to the increase of necrotic area within a solid tumor, an increase in the number of viable bacteria per volume of tumor tissue is observed, demonstrating the increased colonization of the tumor by bacteria effected by the reduction of the number of neutrophilic granulocytes, preferably by their depletion.

Figure 8 A shows the influence of the experimental systemic administration of the neutrophilic granulocyte-specific antibody rat- $\alpha$ -Gr1 RB6-8C5) to control animals without any treatment (ctrl), with administration of 25  $\mu$ g antibody 1 day before administration of the bacteria, (-1), concurrent with the administration of bacteria (0) and 1 day following bacterial administration (1), and for doses of 100  $\mu$ g antibody, respectively. It can be seen that neutrophils are drastically reduced already by doses of 25  $\mu$ g antibody per mouse and even further by doses of 100  $\mu$ g.

Neutrophilic granulocytes were counted by flow cytometry, using 50  $\mu$ L blood, lysis in 1.5 mL erythrocyte lysis buffer, vortexing, incubating for 5 minutes at room temperature and centrifuging for 5 minutes. The lysis procedure was repeated once. Cell pellets were washed once with PBS and stained with rat- $\alpha$ -Gr1 FITC (RB6-8C5) and with rat- $\alpha$ -CD 11b PE (eBioscience) for 20 minutes on ice. After staining, cells were washed with PBS and analyzed by cell sorting (FACS) (FACSCalibur, Becton Dickinson).

When analyzing the colonization of tumor, spleen and liver after the depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes by administration of rat- $\alpha$ -Gr1 antibody (black columns) in comparison to the bacterial treatment without depletion of neutrophilic granulocytes, (grey columns), a drastic increase of colony forming units (CFU) that could be counted after plating the respective tissue homogenates from artificially infected mice demonstrates the effective colonization of tumor tissue caused by the administration of compounds for reducing or depleting neutrophilic granulocytes from the tumor affected organism or patient.

In the alternative to the use of an anti-granulocyte antibody for producing a composition for tumor therapy, the spread of bacteria into viable tumor tissue was equally enhanced by depleting leukocytes by making use of chlodronat. For depletion of macrophages by chlodronat, chlodronat-containing liposomes were administered at doses of 2,5g chlodronat/kg body weight. Following the depletion of macrophages, the inoculation of the experimental animals was made as described above.

Results of bacteria spreading into viable tumor tissue and bacterial counts within tumor tissue and liver and spleen were comparable to results obtained with anti-granulocyte antibody. Further, reductions of tumor size were similar to those obtained with the anti-granulocyte antibody.

An observation of the health status of mice after depletion of macrophages did not show a significant impairment of the general health status, although mice were found to have reduced activity levels.

Example 2: Use of bacteria constitutively expressing anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibody for the production of a composition for tumor therapy

As an alternative to the separate administration of an agent directed to substantially decrease the number of neutrophilic granulocytes, bacteria suitable for tumor therapy were genetically manipulated to express and secrete an anti-granulocyte antibody, namely a soluble form of rat- $\alpha$ -Gr1 (RB6-8C5) antibody. For the expression of the anti-granulocyte antibody, bacterial cells were transformed using a pBR322-derived bacterial plasmid containing an expression cassette, constitutively expressing the anti-granulocyte antibody under the control of the promoter of the *E. coli*  $\beta$ -lactamase gene ( $P_{bla}$ ).

The administration procedure of Example 1 of mice bearing an artificially induced CT26 tumor, with *Salmonella typhimurium* SL7207, *E. coli* TOP10 or *Shigella flexneri* ( $\Delta$ dap), respectively, was repeated after transformation of the bacteria with the expression plasmid encoding the soluble rat- $\alpha$ -Gr1.

Analysis of the tumor tissue showed that bacteria had spread throughout the tumor tissue, including the viable regions of the tumor. The anti-tumor effect was increased in comparison to the same bacterial strains lacking the constitutive expression cassette for the anti-granulocyte antibody, reaching approximately the increase in necrotic area as obtained in Example 1 using separate administration of the anti-granulocyte antibody.

Example 3: Use of bacteria inducibly expressing anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibody for the production of a composition for tumor therapy

As a further the embodiment of the invention, the constitutive promoter of the expression cassette of Example 2 was exchanged for a saccharide inducible promoter, namely the *E. coli* arabinose- inducible promoter P<sub>BAD</sub>. The P<sub>BAD</sub> promoter has the advantage of being closely regulated in the absence of the inductor saccharide L-arabinose and allowing rapid induction of protein synthesis in the presence of the inductor saccharide, while the inductor saccharide can be administered to the tumor bearing organism or patient separate from the genetically manipulated bacteria.

In this example, bacteria harboring the expression cassette for encoding the anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibody under the control of the P<sub>BAD</sub> promoter were administered to tumor bearing mice. After 2 days following administration of the bacteria, arabinose as the suitable inductor saccharide was administered in an amount of 5 g/kg body weight. Following the administration of the inductor saccharide, analysis of the tumor tissue after 2 days showed an effective colonization of the entire tumor tissue, including its viable regions, with the bacteria.

The reduction in tumor size was approximately equally effective as in Examples 1 and 2.

Example 4: Bacterial vector for use in tumor therapy comprising an expression cassette for an anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibody and an inducible expression cassette for an anti-tumor toxin

For increasing the efficacy of bacterial presence in the viable portions of tumor tissue according to the invention, the bacteria used for tumor therapy in addition to an expression cassette encoding an anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibody were transformed with an expression cassette derived from pACYC184 (GenBank/EMBL accession number X06403) encoding a cytotoxin under the control of an inducible promoter. The inducible promoter for cytotoxin synthesis according to a preferred embodiment is also a saccharide inducible promoter, e.g. the *E. coli* arabinose- inducible promoter P<sub>BAD</sub> or the *E. coli* rhamnose-inducible promoter P<sub>rha</sub>.

A bacterial pBR322-derived plasmid containing both an expression cassette for anti-leukocyte antibody, namely for a soluble variant of rat- $\alpha$ -CD11b, and an expression cassette for a cytotoxin, namely a colicin. When inducible promoters, preferably saccharide-inducible promoters responding to different inducers are arranged before the structural genes within the expression cassettes for the leukocyte diminishing or inactivating agent and the toxin, respectively, expression of both molecules can be induced separately. Separately inducible expression cassettes are advantageous because separate induction of the leukocyte diminishing or inactivating agent and the toxin, respectively allows to better control the anti-tumor effect of the bacteria. Plasmid construction was according to standard cloning procedures.

Further examples for cytotoxins that can be encoded in an expression cassette within bacteria for use in tumor treatment of the invention are comprised in the group of colicins, pseudomonas exotoxins.

Example 5: Bacteria for use in tumor therapy encoding a cytotoxin against eukaryotic cells

Local depletion of leukocytes in tumor tissue and reduction of tumor size, including the reduction of viable tumor tissue, was obtained by systemic administration of bacteria naturally expressing a cytotoxic activity or genetically manipulated to express a cytotoxin active against eukaryotic cells. The bacteria were preferably *E. coli* selected from the phylogenetic group B2, which naturally express a cytotoxic activity. In the alternative, an expression cassette encoding the cytotoxic activity was synthesized and functionally linked to

a bacterial promoter, then integrated into a non-toxin bearing bacterial strain as a plasmid or integrated into the bacterial genome.

Cytotoxic *E. coli* were administered at  $10^6$  cfu systemically to CT26 tumor bearing BALB/c mice, generated according to Comparative Example 1. Histological analysis was done on day three and tumor growth was monitored for 10 days following bacterial infection. For comparison, toxin-free *E. coli* TOP10 was used in control animals.

Analyses showed that the administration of cytotoxic activity bearing bacteria in comparison to the control animals receiving toxin-free bacteria resulted in a significantly improved retardation of tumor growth, preferably in a significant reduction of tumor size, especially in a reduction of viable tumor tissue. Further, it was shown that leukocytes were reduced in number, preferably depleted from tumor tissue.

Presently, it is believed that the anti-tumor effect of the use of bacteria expressing a cytotoxic compound as an anti-tumor agent, exemplified here by the cytotoxic *E. coli* IHE 3034 (group B2) is based on the activity of the hybrid peptide-polyketide genotoxin, known to induce DNA double-strand breaks and an activation of the DNA damage checkpoint pathway (Nougayrede et al., Science 313, 848-851 (2006)), resulting in the desired reduction of tumor growth and tumor size.



### Claims

1. Use of a leukocyte diminishing or leukocyte inactivating agent for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for use in tumor therapy, the therapy comprising the administration of bacteria.
2. Use according to claim 1, characterized in that the leukocyte diminishing or inactivating agent is selected from agents specifically causing the transient reduction in number and/or inactivation of leukocytes.
3. Use according to claim 1 or 2, characterized in that the leukocyte diminishing or leukocyte inactivating agent is selected from neutrophilic granulocyte depleting agents.
4. Use according to one of the preceding claims, wherein the leukocyte diminishing or leukocyte inactivating agent is selected from the group comprising chlodronat and anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibodies.
5. Use according to claim 4, characterized in that the anti-leukocyte antibody is expressed by an expression cassette contained in the bacteria.
6. Use according to one of the preceding claims, characterized in that the leukocyte diminishing or inactivating agent is selected from the group comprising antibodies specifically directed against a cytokine and/or against a chemokine attracting leukocytes.
7. Use according to claim 6, characterized in that the antibody directed against a cytokine and/or against a chemokine is expressed by an expression cassette contained in the bacteria.
8. Use according to claim 6 or 7, characterized in that the antibody against a cytokine and/or against a chemokine is selected from the group comprising antibody specifically directed against at least one of the group comprising tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNFa), interleukin 8 (IL-8), epithelial-derived neutrophil attractant (ENA-78,

corresponding to CXCL5), growth - related oncogene alpha (gro- $\alpha$ ), interferon- $\gamma$ -inducible-lymphocyte-attractant chemokine (monocyte chemoattractant protein 1, MCP 1), interferon gamma inducible protein (IP - 10), or monokine induced by interferon gamma (MIG), interferon gamma inducible protein (IP - 10), monokine induced by interferon gamma (MIG), formyl-MLP, anaphylatoxin C5a, anaphylatoxin C3a, prostaglandines, prostaglandine E1, prostaglandine MIP-1 $\alpha$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\beta$ ), prostaglandine MIP-1 $\beta$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\alpha$ ), RANTES/CCL5 (RANTES = regulated upon activation , normal T-cell expressed and secreted), and/or leukocyte adhesion factor LFA-1.

9. Use according to one of claims 5 to 8, characterized in that the expression cassette contains a saccharide inducible promoter controlling the expression.
10. Use according to one of the preceding claims, characterized in that the bacteria used for the production of a pharmaceutical composition for use in tumor therapy comprise an expression cassette encoding a cytotoxin active against eucaryotic cells.
11. Use according to claim 10, characterized in that the expression cassette contains a saccharide inducible promoter controlling the expression.
12. Use according to one of claims 10 and 11, characterized in that the cytotoxin is selected from the group comprising colicin or *Pseudomonas* exotoxin, a cytotoxin obtainable from *Pasteurella haemolytica* culture supernatant, staphylococcal leukocidin, soluble leukocyte toxin obtainable from *Actinobacillus actinomycetemcomitans*, a leukocidin, Pantone-Valentine leukocidin of *Staphylococcus aureus*, or in that the bacteria are *E. coli* of the phylogenetic group B2.
13. Pharmaceutical composition for use in tumor therapy comprising the administration of bacteria to a patient, characterized in the composition comprising a leukocyte diminishing or leukocyte inactivating agent selected from the group comprising clodronat and anti-neutrophilic granulocyte antibodies and antibody specifically directed against at least one of the group comprising tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF $\alpha$ ), interleukin 8 (IL-8), epithelial-derived neutrophil attractant (ENA-78,

corresponding to CXCL5), growth - related oncogene alpha (gro- $\alpha$ ), interferon- $\gamma$ -inducible-lymphocyte-attractant chemokine (monocyte chemoattractant protein 1, MCP 1), interferon gamma inducible protein (IP - 10), or monokine induced by interferon gamma (MIG), interferon gamma inducible protein (IP - 10), monokine induced by interferon gamma (MIG), formyl-MLP, anaphylatoxin C5a, anaphylatoxin C3a, prostaglandines, prostaglandine E1, prostaglandine MIP-1 $\alpha$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\beta$ ), prostaglandine MIP-1 $\beta$  (macrophage inflammatory protein 1 $\alpha$ ), RANTES/CCL5 (RANTES = regulated upon activation, normal T-cell expressed and secreted), and/or leukocyte adhesion factor LFA-1.

14. Pharmaceutical composition according to claim 13, characterized in that the antibody is encoded by a nucleic acid.
15. Pharmaceutical composition according to claim 14, characterized in that the nucleic acid is arranged in an expression cassette contained in bacteria.

**Figures**

Figure 1A



Figure 1B

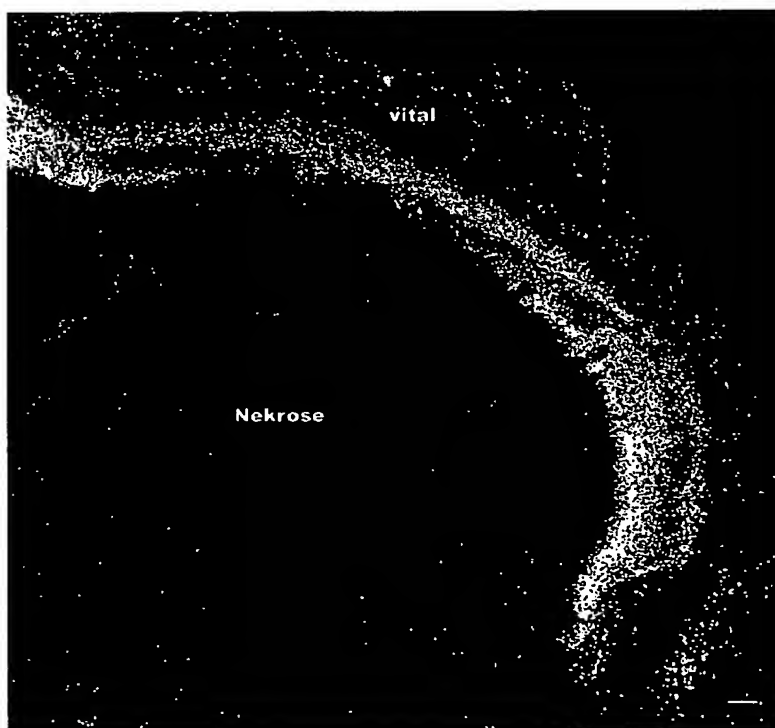


Figure 1C

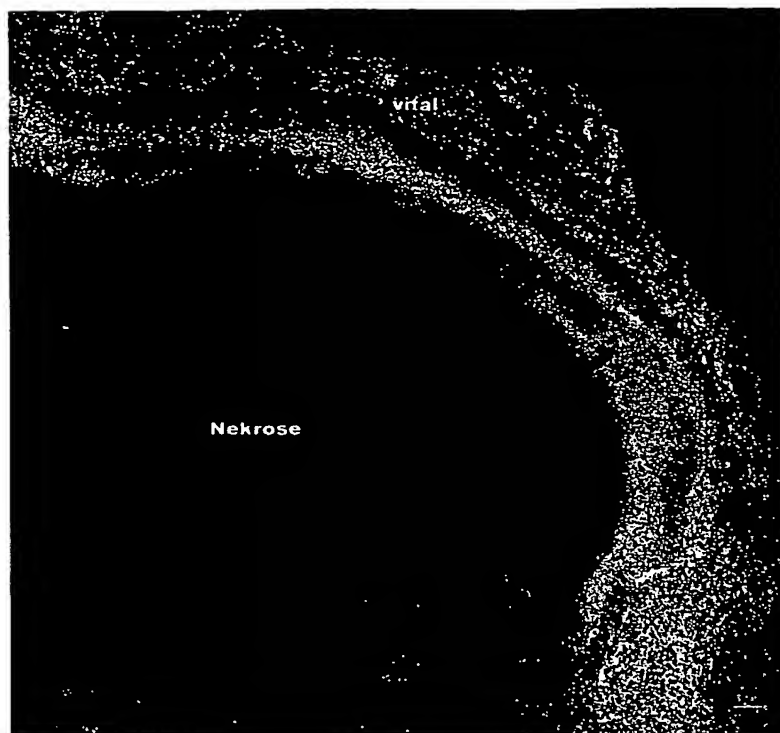


Figure 2A

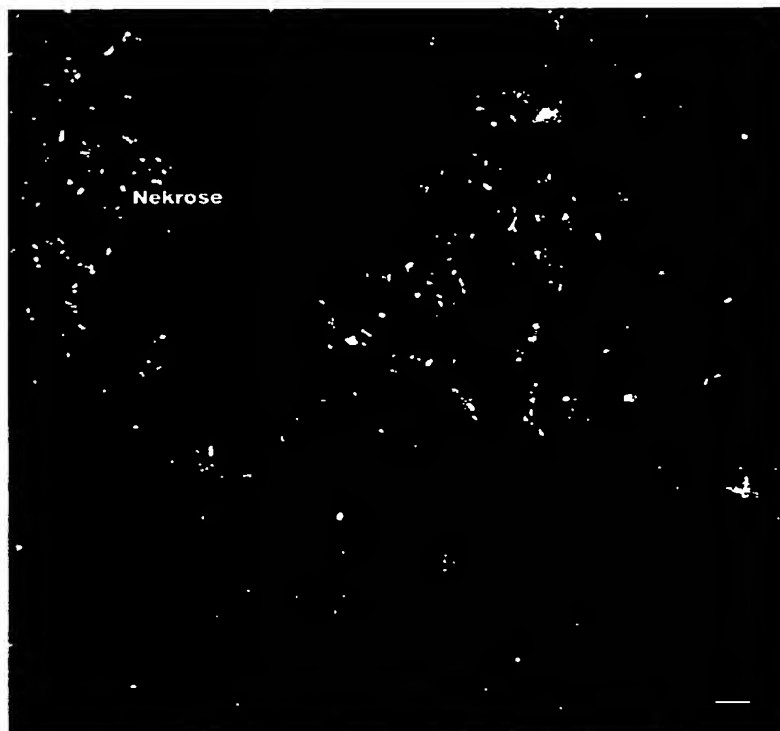


Figure 2B

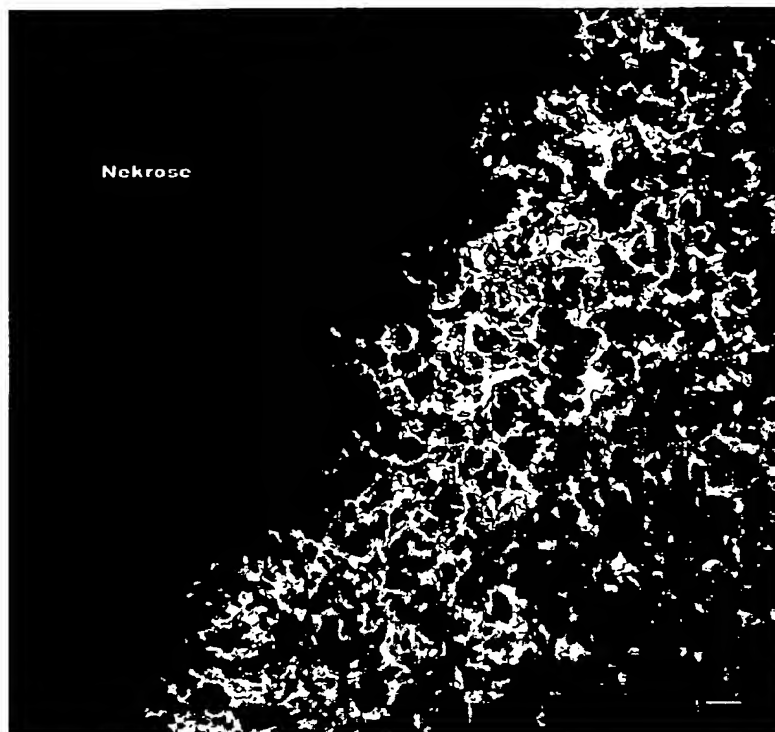


Figure 2C



Figure 3A

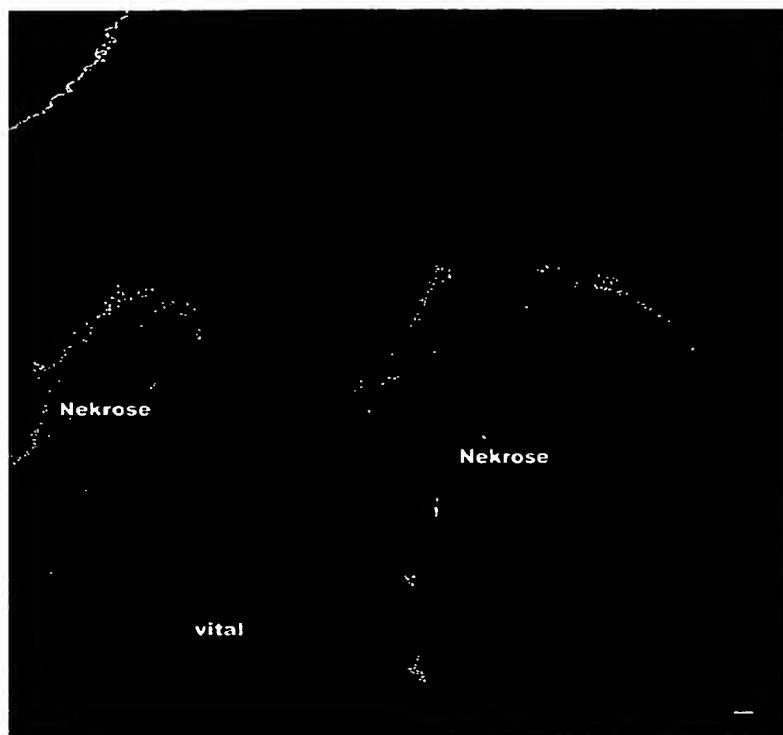


Figure 3B

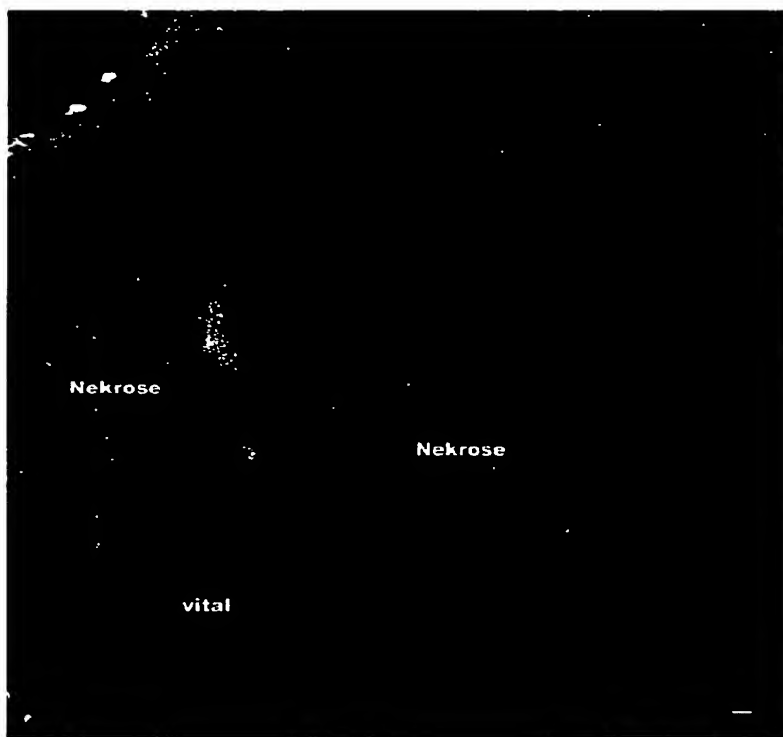


Figure 3C

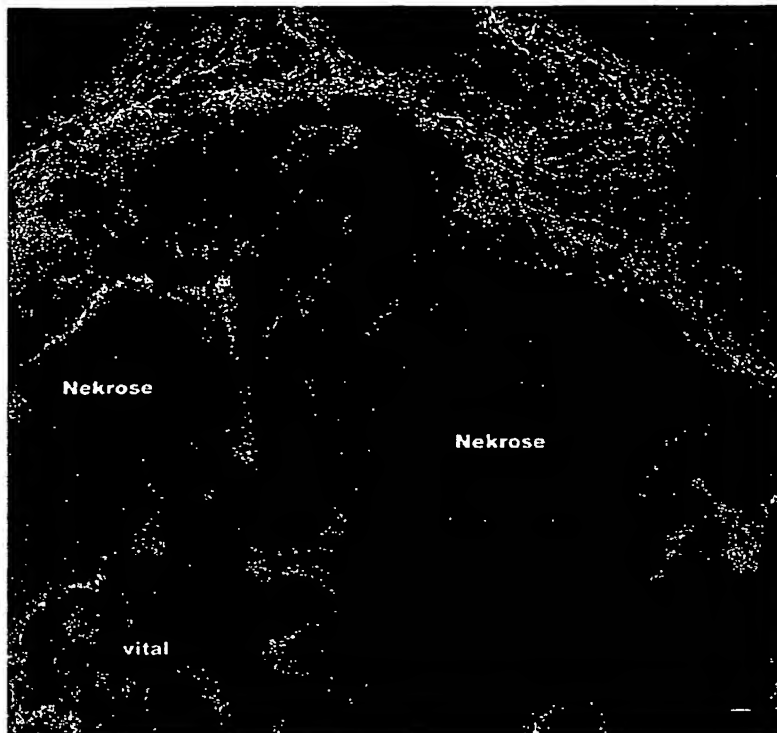


Figure 4A

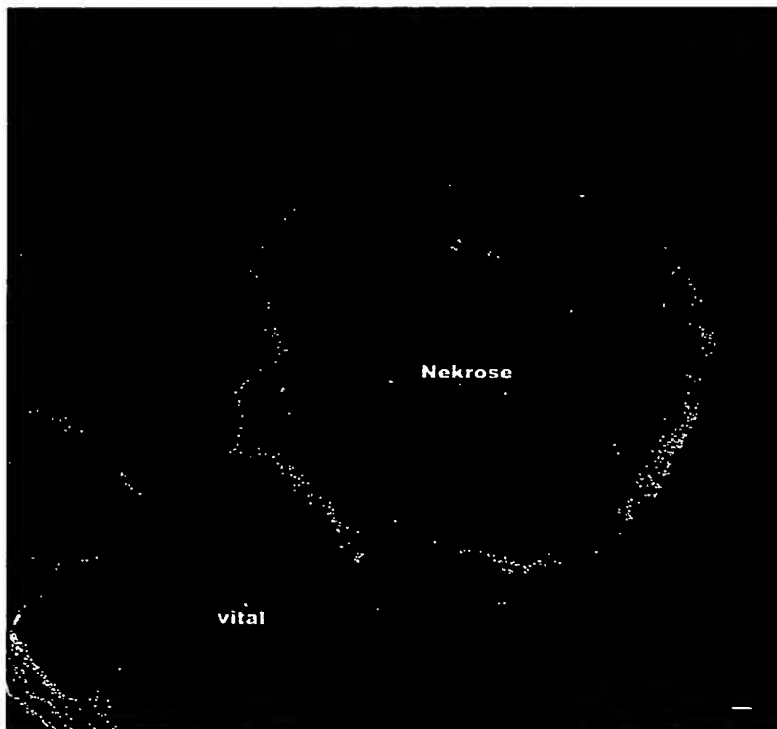




Figure 4B

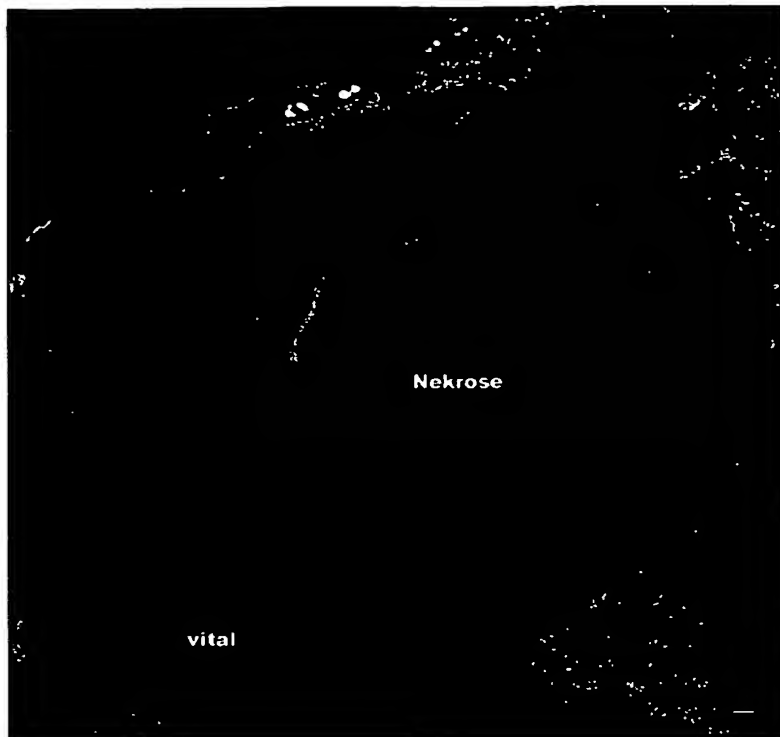


Figure 4C

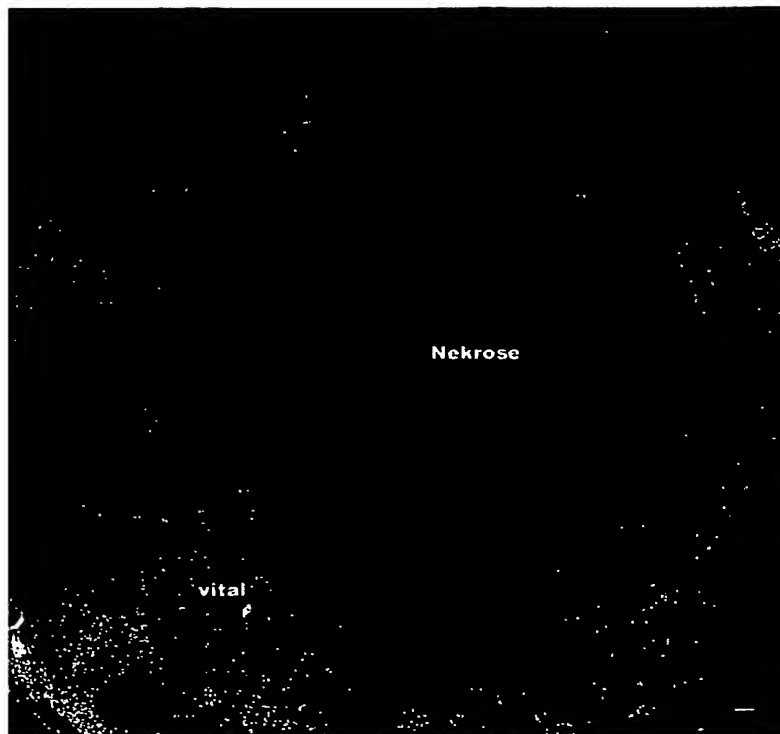


Figure 5A

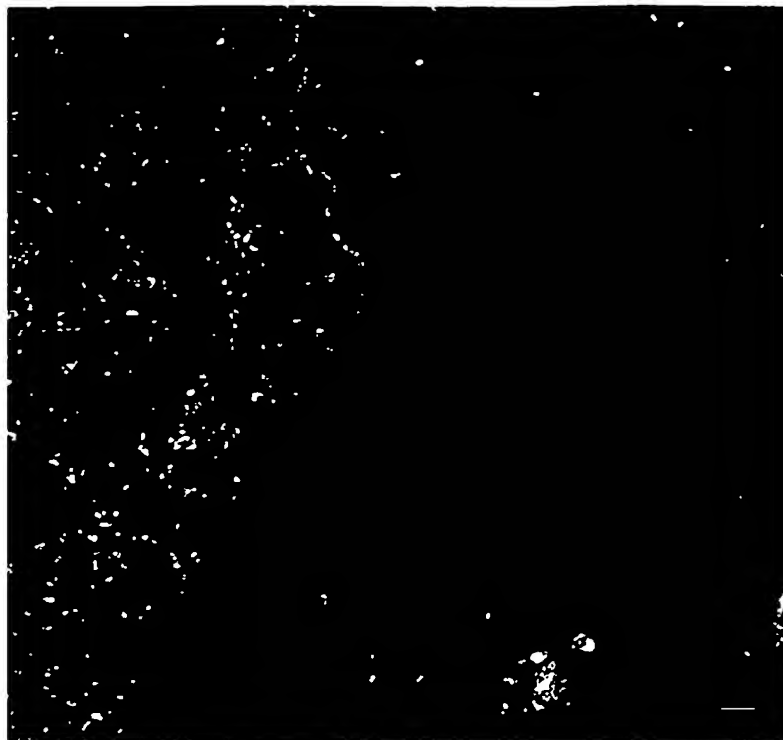


Figure 5B

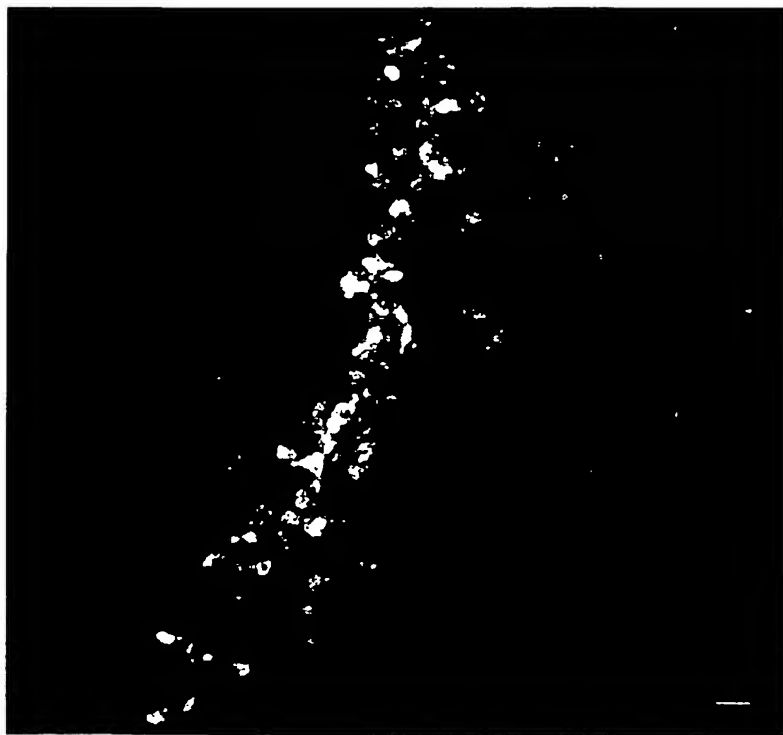


Figure 5C

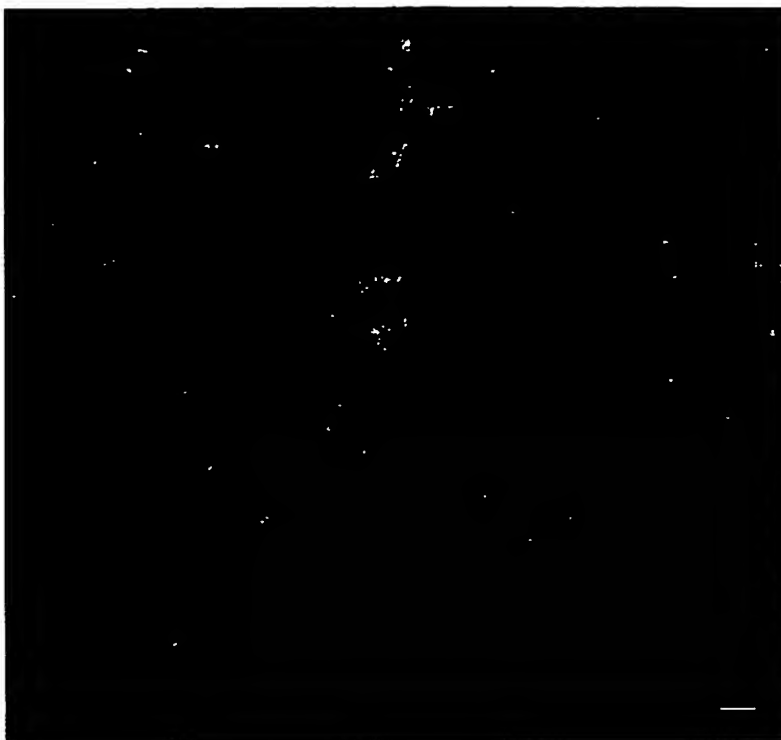


Figure 6A



Figure 6B



Figure 6C



Figure 7A



Figure 7B

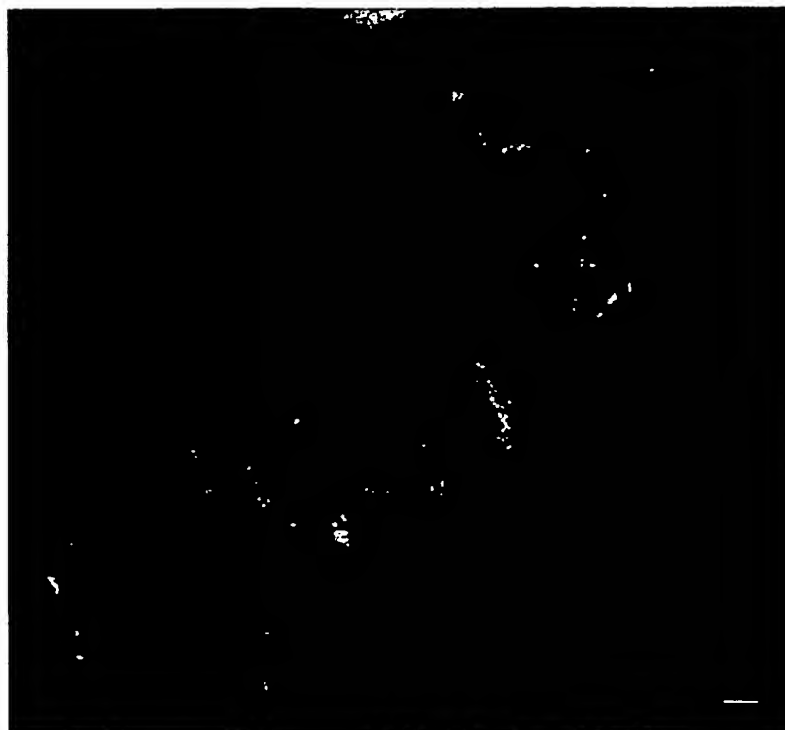
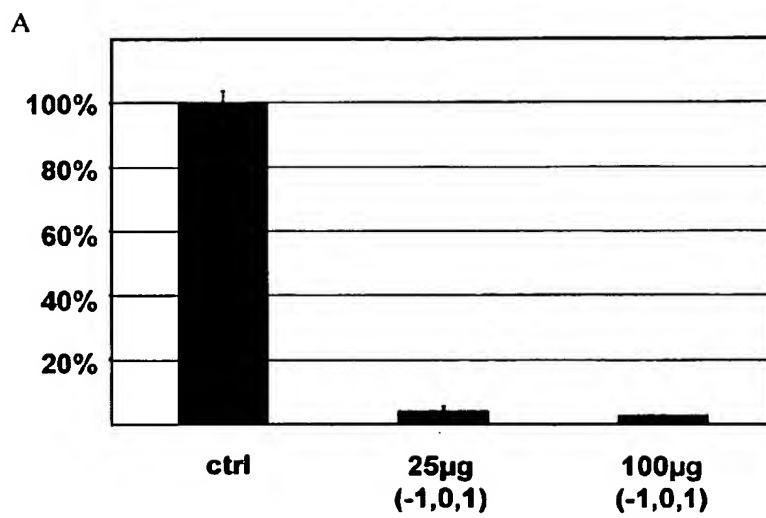


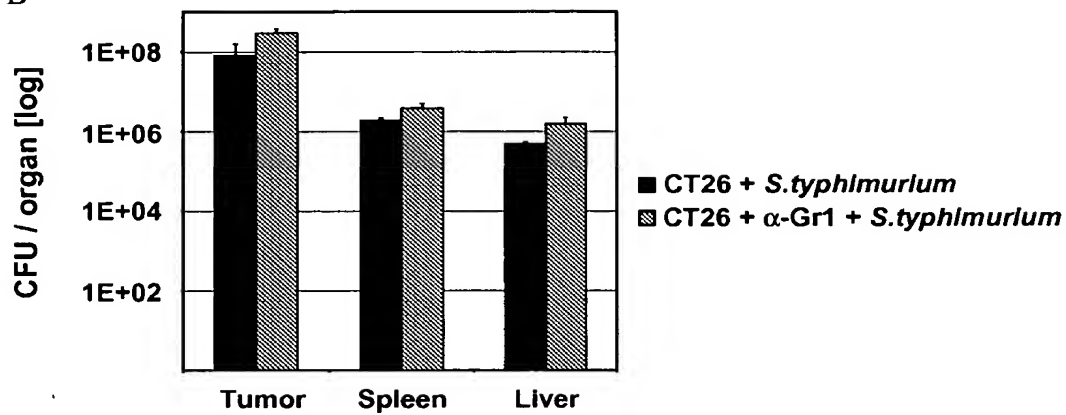
Figure 7C



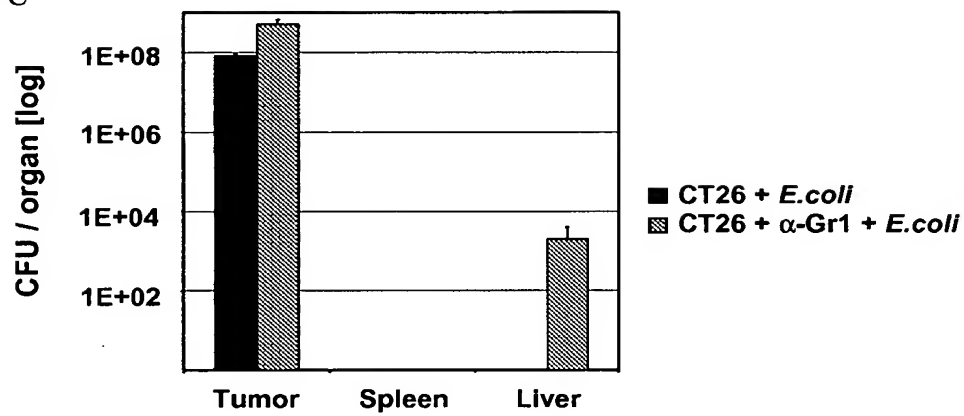
Figure 8



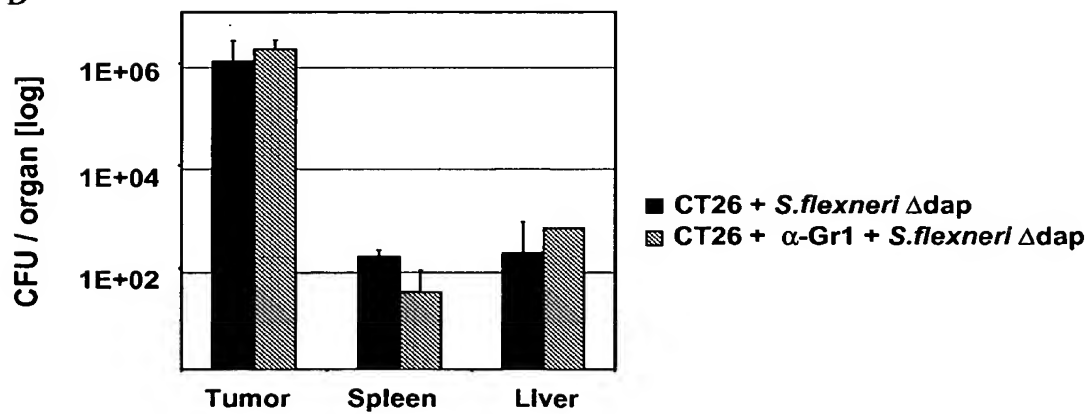
B



C



D



# SLIP SHEET



(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
21 August 2008 (21.08.2008)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 2008/100292 A2**

(51) International Patent Classification: Not classified

(21) International Application Number:  
PCT/US2007/022172

(22) International Filing Date: 18 October 2007 (18.10.2007)

(25) Filing Language: English

(26) Publication Language: English

(30) Priority Data:  
60/852,390 16 October 2006 (16.10.2006) US  
60/933,050 4 June 2007 (04.06.2007) US  
60/950,587 18 July 2007 (18.07.2007) US  
60/994,794 21 September 2007 (21.09.2007) US

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US):  
**GENELUX CORPORATION** [US/US]; 3030 Bunker  
Hill Street, Suite 310, San Diego, CA 92109 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): **FRENTZEN, Alexa**  
[DE/US]; 1219 Hornblend St., Unit #C, San Diego, CA  
92109 (US). **CHEN, Nanhai** [CN/US]; 9167 Buckwheat  
Street, San Diego, CA 92129 (US). **ZHANG, Qian**  
[CN/US]; 12601 El Camino Real, Unit B., San Diego, CA  
92130 (US). **YU, Yong, A.** [CN/US]; 3830 Elijah Ct., Unit  
422, San Diego, CA 92130 (US). **SZALAY, Aladar, A.**  
[US/US]; 7704 North Fork Rd., Highland, CA 92346 (US).

(74) Agents: **SEIDMAN, Stephanie L.** et al.; **BELL BOYD  
& LLOYD**, 3580 Carmel Mountain Road, Suite 200, San  
Diego, California 92130 (US).

(81) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of national protection available): AE, AG, AL, AM,  
AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BH, BR, BW, BY, BZ, CA, CH,  
CN, CO, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DO, DZ, EC, EE, EG,  
ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, GT, HN, HR, HU, ID, IL,  
IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KM, KN, KP, KR, KZ, LA, LC, LK,  
LR, LS, LT, LU, LY, MA, MD, ME, MG, MK, MN, MW,  
MX, MY, MZ, NA, NG, NI, NO, NZ, OM, PG, PH, PL,  
PT, RO, RS, RU, SC, SD, SE, SG, SK, SL, SM, SV, SY,  
TJ, TM, TN, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VC, VN, ZA,  
ZM, ZW.

(84) Designated States (unless otherwise indicated, for every  
kind of regional protection available): ARIPO (BW, GH,  
GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, NA, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZM,  
ZW), Eurasian (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM),  
European (AT, BE, BG, CH, CY, CZ, DE, DK, EE, ES, FI,  
FR, GB, GR, HU, IE, IS, IT, LT, LU, LV, MC, MT, NL, PL,  
PT, RO, SE, SI, SK, TR), OAPI (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM,  
GA, GN, GQ, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

**Declaration under Rule 4.17:**

— as to the applicant's entitlement to claim the priority of the  
earlier application (Rule 4.17(iii))

**Published:**

— without international search report and to be republished  
upon receipt of that report  
— with sequence listing part of description published sepa-  
rately in electronic form and available upon request from  
the International Bureau  
— the filing date of the international application is within two  
months from the date of expiration of the priority period

(54) Title: MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS FOR USE IN DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS

(57) Abstract: Modified or attenuated viruses and methods for preparing the modified viruses and modulating attenuation are provided. Vaccines that contain the viruses are provided. The viruses can be used in methods of treatment of diseases, such as proliferative and inflammatory disorders, including as anti-tumor agents. The viruses also can be used in diagnostic methods.

WO 2008/100292 A2

- 1 -

**MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS FOR USE IN DIAGNOSTIC AND  
THERAPEUTIC METHODS**

**RELATED APPLICATIONS**

Benefit of priority is claimed to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 5 60/852,390, to Nanhai Chen, Aladar A. Szalay, Yong A. Yu and Qian Zhang, filed on October 16, 2006, entitled "MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS FOR USE IN DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS," to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/933,050, to Qian Zhang and Nanhai Chen, filed on June 4, 2007, entitled "VECTOR FOR VACCINIA VIRUS," to U.S. Provisional Application Serial 10 No. 60/950,587, to Nanhai Chen and Yong A. Yu, filed on July 18, 2007, entitled "USE OF MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS IN COMBINATION WITH A CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENT FOR USE IN THERAPEUTIC METHODS," and to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/994,794, to Alexa Frentzen, Nanhai Chen, Qian Zhang, Yong A. Yu and Aladar A. Szalay, filed on September 21, 2007, 15 entitled "MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS." Where permitted, the subject matter of each of these applications is incorporated by reference in its entirety.

This application is related to U.S. Application No. (Attorney Dkt. No. 17248- 015001/4815) to Nanhai Chen, Aladar A. Szalay, Yong A. Yu and Qian Zhang, filed on October 16, 2007, entitled "METHODS FOR ATTENUATING VIRUS STRAINS 20 FOR DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC USES," which also claims priority to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/852,390, U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/933,050, U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/950,587, and to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/994,794.

This application is related to U.S. Application No. (Attorney Dkt. No. 17248- 25 016001/4816) to Nanhai Chen, Alexa Frentzen, Aladar A. Szalay, Yong A. Yu and Qian Zhang, filed on October 16, 2007, entitled "MODIFIED VACCINIA VIRUS STRAINS FOR USE IN DIAGNOSTIC AND THERAPEUTIC METHODS," which also claims priority to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/852,390, U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/933,050, U.S. Provisional Application Serial 30 No. 60/950,587, and to U.S. Provisional Application Serial No. 60/994,794.

This application is related to U.S. Application Serial No. 10/872,156, to Aladar A. Szalay, Tatyana Timiryasova, Yong A. Yu and Qian Zhang, filed on June

- 2 -

18, 2004, entitled "MICROORGANISMS FOR THERAPY," which claims the benefit of priority under 35 U.S.C. §119(a) to each of EP 03 013 826.7, filed 18 June 2003, entitled "Recombinant vaccinia viruses useful as tumor-specific delivery vehicle for cancer gene therapy and vaccination," EP 03 018 478.2, filed 14 August 5 2003, entitled "Method for the production of a polypeptide, RNA or other compound in tumor tissue," and EP 03 024 283.8, filed 22 October 2003, entitled "Use of a Microorganism or Cell to Induce Autoimmunization of an Organism Against a Tumor."

This application also is related to International Application Serial No. 10 PCT/US04/19866, filed on June 18, 2004. This application also is related to U.S. Application Serial No. 10/866,606, filed June 10, 2004, entitled "Light emitting microorganisms and cells for diagnosis and therapy of tumors," which is a continuation of U.S. Application Serial No. 10/189,918, filed July 3, 2002, U.S. Application filed May 19, 2004 Serial No. 10/849,664, entitled, "Light emitting 15 microorganisms and cells for diagnosis and therapy of diseases associated with wounded or inflamed tissue" which is a continuation of U.S. Application Serial No. 10/163,763, filed June 5, 2003, International PCT Application WO 03/014380, filed July 31, 2002, entitled "Microorganisms and Cells for Diagnosis and Therapy of Tumors," PCT Application WO 03/104485, filed June 5, 2003, entitled, "Light 20 Emitting Microorganisms and Cells for Diagnosis and Therapy of Diseases Associated with Wounded or Inflamed tissue," EP Application No. 01 118 417.3, filed July 31, 2001, entitled "Light-emitting microorganisms and cells for tumor diagnosis/therapy," EP Application No. 01 125 911.6, filed October 30, 2001, entitled "Light emitting microorganisms and cells for diagnosis and therapy of tumors," EP 25 Application No. 02 0794 632.6, filed January 28, 2004, entitled "Microorganisms and Cells for Diagnosis and Therapy of Tumors," and EP Application No. 02 012 552.2, filed June 5, 2002, entitled "Light Emitting Microorganisms and Cells for Diagnosis and Therapy of Diseases associated with wounded or inflamed tissue."

This application also is related to U.S. Application Serial No. 11/827,518, to 30 Jochen Stritzker, Phil Hill, Aladar A. Szalay, Yong A. Yu and Qian Zhang, entitled "METHODS AND COMPOSITIONS FOR DETECTION OF MICROORGANISMS

- 3 -

AND CELLS AND TREATMENT OF DISEASES AND DISORDERS," filed July 11, 2007.

Where permitted, the subject matter of each of the applications above is incorporated by reference in its entirety.

## 5 **FIELD OF THE INVENTION**

Modified and/or attenuated viruses and methods for preparing the modified viruses and modulating attenuation are provided. Diagnostic and therapeutic methods also are provided.

## **BACKGROUND**

- 10 Viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic methods often are pathogenic and must be attenuated to increase their safety for administration. Attenuation can be effected by repeated passage through cell lines and/or through animals to screen for strains that have reduced pathogenicity. Other methods for attenuation of a virus involve production of recombinant viruses that have a modification in one or more viral genes
- 15 that results in loss or reduced expression of a viral gene or inactivation of a viral protein. Once attenuated viruses are generated, methods for increasing the attenuation of the virus often involve selecting or identifying additional genes for mutation, combining mutations and/or insertion of heterologous genes for expression of proteins that alter the *in vivo* pathogenicity of the virus (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,265,189
- 20 and U.S. Patent Publication No. 2006-0099224). The effects of combinations of modifications, however, are difficult to predict and require extensive testing to determine what combinations of modifications yields a desired level of attenuation. Further complicating the process is the fact that mutations often decrease or abolish viral functions that are required for viral replication or life cycle progression.
- 25 Essential viral functions often are provided in *trans* in order to produce the mature virions for infection (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,750,396, 6,261,551, 6,924,128, 6,974,695). Thus, packaging cell lines that express the essential viral proteins are required for viral propagation. Such cell lines, however, can be challenging to generate due to the toxicity of the viral proteins that are expressed.
- 30 Mutation of non-essential genes is a method of attenuation that preserves the ability of the virus to propagate without the need of a packaging cell lines. In viruses

- 4 -

such as vaccinia virus, mutations in non-essential genes, such as the thymidine kinase (TK) gene or hemagglutinin (HA) gene have been employed to attenuate the virus (e.g., Buller *et al.* (1985) *Nature* 317, 813-815, Shida *et al.* (1988) *J. Virol.* 62(12):4474-80, Taylor *et al.* (1991) *J. Gen. Virol.* 72 (Pt 1):125-30, U.S. Patent Nos. 5,364,773, 6,265,189, 7,045,313). The inactivation of these genes decreases the overall pathogenicity of the virus without eliminating the ability of the viruses to replicate in certain cell types. Further modulation of the attenuation of the virus similarly is difficult, since it can require identification of additional non-essential genes for modification, followed by testing of combinations of mutations in order to select a recombinant virus with a desired level of attenuation.

In view of the efforts to generate attenuated viruses for therapy, including the methods mentioned above, there still exists a need for methods for attenuating viruses. Accordingly, it is among the objects herein, to provide methods for attenuating viruses and to provide attenuated viruses and diagnostic and/or therapeutic methods that employ such viruses.

#### SUMMARY

Provided herein are methods for attenuating viruses. The viruses can be used in therapeutic and diagnostic methods. Also provided are attenuated viruses.

The methods for attenuation permit modulation of the levels of viral attenuation without the need to mutate restrictive combinations of viral genes or provide additional therapeutic genes for *in vivo* attenuation. The methods permit modulation of the attenuation of the virus in a predictable manner. Provided are methods for systematically altering a virus to a level of attenuation that is desired for a particular application of the virus. Also provided are attenuated viruses.

Therapeutic viruses also are provided. The viruses can be used as therapeutics. In addition they can be employed as starting materials in the methods for modulating attenuation. The therapeutic viruses can contain a heterologous nucleic acid, inserted for its encoded protein or for attenuation. The heterologous nucleic acid can contain an open reading frame operably linked to a promoter. The heterologous nucleic acid can be operatively linked to a native promoter or a heterologous (with respect to the virus) promoter. Any suitable promoters, including synthetic and

- 5 -

naturally-occurring and modified promoters, can be used. Exemplary promoters include synthetic promoters, including synthetic viral and animal promoters. Native promoter or heterologous promoters include, but are not limited to, viral promoters, such as vaccinia virus and adenovirus promoters. Vaccinia viral promoters can be  
5 synthetic or natural promoters, and include vaccinia early, intermediate, early/late and late promoters. Exemplary vaccinia viral promoters for use in the methods can include, but are not limited to, P<sub>7.5k</sub>, P<sub>11k</sub>, P<sub>SE</sub>, P<sub>SEL</sub>, P<sub>SL</sub>, H5R, TK, P28, C11R, G8R, F17R, I3L, I8R, A1L, A2L, A3L, H1L, H3L, H5L, H6R, H8R, D1R, D4R, D5R, D9R, D11L, D12L, D13L, M1L, N2L, P4b or K1 promoters. Other viral promoters  
10 can include, but are not limited to, adenovirus late promoter, Cowpox ATI promoter, or T7 promoter.

Methods provided herein for modification of viruses, particularly therapeutic viruses, include steps of addition, deletion and/or modification of a heterologous nucleic acid in the viral genome. Such modifications of viruses result in altering the  
15 level of attenuation of the virus compared to the unmodified virus. Methods provided herein for the modulation of attenuation of a therapeutic virus can increase or decrease the level of attenuation of the therapeutic virus compared to an unmodified therapeutic virus.

Provided herein are methods to alter the attenuation of a therapeutic virus  
20 where a promoter contained in the therapeutic virus is modified or replaced. Such promoters can be replaced by stronger or weaker promoters, where replacement results in a change in the attenuation of the virus. As provided in the methods herein, a promoter contained in a therapeutic virus can be replaced with a natural or synthetic promoter. Exemplary promoters that can replace a promoter contained in a  
25 therapeutic virus can be a viral promoter, such as a vaccinia viral promoter, and can include a vaccinia early, intermediate, early/late or late promoter. Additional exemplary viral promoters are provided herein and known in the art and can be used to replace a promoter contained in a therapeutic virus.

Therapeutic viruses for use in the methods provided herein of modulation the  
30 attenuation of the virus can contain a heterologous nucleic acid that contains an open reading frame that encodes one or more gene products. Methods provided herein for

- 6 -

modulating the attenuation of a therapeutic virus include modification of a heterologous nucleic acid that contains an open reading frame. Methods provided herein for modification of the open reading frame can include increasing the length of the open reading frame, removal of all or part of the open reading frame or  
5 replacement of all or part of the open reading frame.

Provided herein are methods to alter the attenuation of a therapeutic virus where a heterologous nucleic acid contained in the virus is modified by removal or all or a portion of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule. The portion of the heterologous nucleic acid that is removed can be 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or more, 10 or more, 15  
10 or more, 20 or more, 50 or more, 100 or more, 1000 or more, 5000 or more nucleotide bases. Also provided herein are methods to alter the attenuation of a therapeutic virus where a heterologous nucleic acid contained in the virus is modified by removal or all or a portion of a first heterologous nucleic acid molecule and replaced by a second heterologous nucleic acid molecule, where replacement changes the level of  
15 attenuation of the virus. The second heterologous nucleic acid molecule can contain a sequence of nucleotides that encodes a protein or can be a non-coding nucleic acid molecule. In some examples, the second heterologous nucleic acid molecule contains an open reading frame operably linked to a promoter. The second heterologous nucleic acid molecule can contain one or more open reading frames or one or more  
20 promoters. Further, the one or more promoters of the second heterologous nucleic acid molecule can be one or more stronger promoters or one or more weaker promoters, or can be a combination or both.

Provided herein are methods for assessing the level of attenuation of a therapeutic virus following addition, deletion and/or modification of a heterologous  
25 nucleic acid in the viral genome. Such methods for measuring the level of attenuation can be performed *in vitro* or *in vivo* and can include assessment of changes in any or all of the following properties of the virus: a) viral mRNA synthesis, b) viral protein expression, c) viral DNA replication, d) viral plaque size, e) viral titer or f) *in vivo* toxicity. The methods provided herein can modulate the attenuation of a therapeutic  
30 virus by altering transcription of one or more viral genes or altering translation of one or more endogenous viral polypeptides during the viral life cycle.

- 7 -

Provided herein are methods for determining the desired level of attenuation for application of the virus. Exemplary applications of a therapeutic virus include diagnostic applications, therapeutic application or a combination thereof. An exemplary therapeutic application is treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis. An  
5 exemplary diagnostic application is detection of a tumor. The desired level of attenuation for application of the therapeutic virus can depend on a variety of factors including, but not limited to, the health of a subject prior to administration of the virus to the subject or the selection of the route of administration for the virus.

Provided herein are methods for further modification of therapeutic viruses  
10 that have been modified to modulate their attenuation. Included in such methods are insertion heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal. Exemplary of such proteins are luciferases, such as a click beetle luciferase, a Renilla luciferase, or a firefly  
luciferase, fluorescent proteins, such as a GFP or RFP, or proteins that can bind a  
15 contrasting agent, chromophore, or a compound or ligand that can be detected, such as a transferrin receptor or a ferritin. Also included in such methods are insertion heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode a therapeutic gene product, such as a cytokine, a chemokine, an immunomodulatory molecule, a single chain antibody, antisense RNA, siRNA, prodrug converting enzyme, a toxin, an antitumor  
20 oligopeptide, an anti-cancer polypeptide antibiotic, angiogenesis inhibitor, or tissue factor. Such heterologous nucleic acid molecules can be inserted into the viral genome in an intergenic region or in a locus that encodes a nonessential viral gene product, such as hemagglutinin (HA), thymidine kinase (TK), F14.5L, vaccinia growth factor (VGF), A35R, or N1L gene loci. In some examples, methods for  
25 further modification of therapeutic viruses, such as vaccinia viruses, that have been modified to modulate their attenuation can include replacement of the A34R gene with the A34R gene from another vaccinia virus strain. For example, in a vaccinia LIVP strain, the A34R gene can be replaced with the A34R gene from vaccinia IHD-J strain. Such replacement can increase the extracellular enveloped virus (EEV) form  
30 of vaccinia virus or can increase the resistance of the virus to neutralizing antibodies.



- 8 -

Therapeutic viruses for use in the methods provided herein of modulation the attenuation of the virus can be, for example, a poxvirus, herpesvirus, adenovirus, adeno-associated virus, lentivirus, retrovirus, rhabdovirus or papillomavirus. Exemplary members of these families of viruses are vaccinia virus, avipox virus, myxoma virus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), murine Maloney leukemia virus (MMLV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV), reovirus, Newcastle disease virus, coxsackievirus, measles virus, influenza virus, mumps virus, poliovirus, Seneca valley virus, and semliki forest virus. Exemplary vaccinia virus strains for use in the methods provided herein include Western Reserve (WR), Copenhagen, Tashkent, Tian Tan, Lister, Wyeth, IHD-J, and IHD-W, Brighton, Ankara, MVA, Dairen I, LIPV, LC16M8, LC16MO, LIPV, WR 65-16, Connaught, New York City Board of Health. Exemplary LIPV vaccinia viruses provided herein for use in the methods provided herein include GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h75, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.

Provided herein are viruses for use uses therapeutics and/or in diagnostic methods. Exemplary viruses provided herein include recombinant vaccinia viruses that contain a modified hemagglutinin (HA) gene, thymidine kinase (TK) gene, and F14.5L gene, where one or more of the modifications comprises insertion of a heterologous non-coding nucleic acid molecule into the HA gene locus, TK gene locus, or F14.5L gene locus. In such viruses, a functional HA, TK, and F14.5L polypeptide is not expressed. Exemplary viruses provided herein for therapeutic and diagnostic use include Lister strain vaccinia viruses, such as GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.

Viruses provided herein for therapeutic and diagnostic use include recombinant vaccinia viruses that contain a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that

- 9 -

encodes a therapeutic gene product, such as an angiogenesis inhibitor (*e.g.*, plasminogen kringle 5 domain, anti-VEGF scAb (G6), tTF-RGD, truncated human tissue factor-RGD peptide fusion protein), a tumor growth suppressor (*e.g.*, IL-24), an immune stimulator (*e.g.*, sIL-6R-IL-6, soluble IL-6 receptor-IL-6 fusion protein).

5        Such therapeutic gene products can be operably linked to a vaccinia promoter, such as a vaccinia early promoter, a vaccinia intermediate promoter, a vaccinia early/late promoter and a vaccinia late promoter.

      Provided herein is an exemplary vaccinia virus that expresses the human plasminogen kringle 5 domain under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter is GLV-1h81. Also provided herein are exemplary vaccinia viruses that  
10        express sIL-6R-IL-6 under the control of a vaccinia early promoter, vaccinia early/late promoter or vaccinia late promoter (GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, and GLV-1h92, respectively). Also provided herein are exemplary vaccinia viruses that express IL-24 under the control of a vaccinia early promoter, vaccinia early/late promoter or  
15        vaccinia late promoter (GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, and GLV-1h98, respectively). Also provided herein are exemplary vaccinia viruses that express a tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of a vaccinia early promoter, vaccinia early/late promoter or vaccinia late promoter (GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, and GLV-1h106, respectively). Also provided herein are exemplary vaccinia viruses that express an anti-VEGF scAb  
20        (G6)-FLAG fusion protein under the control of a vaccinia early promoter, vaccinia early/late promoter or vaccinia late promoter (GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108, and GLV-1h109, respectively).

      Viruses provided herein for therapeutic and diagnostic use include recombinant vaccinia viruses that contain a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that  
25        encodes a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal. Exemplary of such proteins are luciferases, such as a click beetle luciferase, a Renilla luciferase, or a firefly luciferase, fluorescent proteins, such as a GFP or RFP, or proteins that can bind a contrasting agent, chromophore, or a compound or ligand that can be detected, such as a transferrin receptor or a ferritin. Provided herein are  
30        recombinant Lister strain vaccinia viruses that express click beetle luciferase (CBG99) and RFP (*e.g.*, GLV-1h84).

- 10 -

Provided herein are viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use that contain a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that encodes two or more diagnostic or therapeutic gene products, where the gene products are linked by a picornavirus 2A element. In one example provided herein, the recombinant vaccinia virus contains a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that encodes CBG99 is linked by a picornavirus 2A element to a second heterologous nucleic acid molecule that encodes RFP (*e.g.*, GLV-1h84).

Provided herein are recombinant vaccinia viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use that contain a replacement of the A34R gene with the A34R gene from another vaccinia virus strain. Provided herein is a Lister strain vaccinia virus, where the A34R gene is replaced by the A34R gene from vaccinia IHD-J strain (*e.g.*, GLV-1i69). Such replacement increases the extracellular enveloped virus (EEV) form of vaccinia virus and increases the resistance of the virus to neutralizing antibodies.

Provided herein are recombinant vaccinia viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use that contain deletion of the A35R gene (*e.g.*, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 GLV-1j89).

Provided herein are recombinant vaccinia viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use that can be further modified by addition of one or more additional heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode a therapeutic protein, a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal. Exemplary of such proteins are luciferases, such as a click beetle luciferase, a Renilla luciferase, or a firefly luciferase, fluorescent proteins, such as a GFP or RFP, or proteins that can bind a contrasting agent, chromophore, or a compound or ligand that can be detected, such as a transferrin receptor or a ferritin. Also included in such methods are insertion heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode a therapeutic gene product, such as a cytokine, a chemokine, an immunomodulatory molecule, a single chain antibody, antisense RNA, siRNA, prodrug converting enzyme, a toxin, an antitumor oligopeptide, an anti-cancer polypeptide antibiotic, angiogenesis inhibitor, or tissue factor. Exemplary antigens include tumor specific antigens, tumor-associated antigens, tissue-specific antigens, bacterial antigens, viral antigens, yeast antigens, fungal antigens, protozoan antigens, parasite antigens, and mitogens. The one or

- 11 -

more additional heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode a therapeutic protein, a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal can be operatively linked to a promoter, such a vaccinia virus promoter.

5        Provided herein are host cells that contains a recombinant virus provided herein. An exemplary host cell is a tumor cell that contains a recombinant virus provided herein.

10        Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions that contain a recombinant virus provided herein and a pharmaceutically acceptable. The compositions contain an amount or concentration of the virus suitable for the intended use, such as therapy, diagnostics or both, and route of administration. Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions formulated for local or systemic administration. Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions that contain two or more viruses. Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions that are formulated for administration as a vaccine, such a smallpox vaccine.

15        Provided herein are methods of detecting one or more viruses in a subject involving the steps of: a) administering a pharmaceutical composition provided herein to a subject, where the pharmaceutical composition contains a virus provided herein that expresses a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal, and b) detecting the detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable  
20        signal, whereby detection indicates the presence of the virus in the subject. Further, provided herein are methods of detecting a tumor in a subject involving the steps of: a) administering a pharmaceutical composition provided herein to a subject, where the pharmaceutical composition contains a virus provided herein that expresses a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal, and b)  
25        detecting the detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal, whereby detection indicates the presence of a tumor in the subject. Methods provided herein for detection include, but are not limited to, fluorescence imaging, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), positron emission tomography (PET), scintigraphy, gamma camera, a  $\beta^+$  detector, a  $\gamma$   
30        detector, or a combination thereof. In some examples, two or more two or more detectable proteins or proteins capable of inducing a detectable signal are detected.

- 12 -

For example, two or more fluorescent or luminescent proteins can be detected sequentially or simultaneously at different wavelengths.

Provided herein are methods of treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis by administering a pharmaceutical composition provided herein to a subject, such as a  
5 human subject or an animal subject. For the methods provided herein, administering the pharmaceutical composition causes tumor growth to stop or be delayed, causes a reduction in tumor volume or causes the tumor to be eliminated from the subject.

Exemplary tumors in humans for methods of treatment provided herein include, but are not limited to, bladder tumor, breast tumor, prostate tumor,  
10 carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, biliary tract cancer, bladder cancer, bone cancer, brain cancer, CNS cancer, glioma tumor, cervical cancer, choriocarcinoma, colon and rectum cancer, connective tissue cancer, cancer of the digestive system, endometrial cancer, esophageal cancer, eye cancer, cancer of the head and neck, gastric cancer, intra-epithelial neoplasm, kidney cancer, larynx cancer, leukemia, liver cancer, lung  
15 cancer, lymphoma, Hodgkin's lymphoma, Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, melanoma, myeloma, neuroblastoma, oral cavity cancer, ovarian cancer, pancreatic cancer, retinoblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, rectal cancer, renal cancer, cancer of the respiratory system, sarcoma, skin cancer, stomach cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, uterine cancer, and cancer of the urinary system. Exemplary tumors in a  
20 canine, feline, or pet subject for methods of treatment provided herein include, but are not limited to, lymphosarcoma, osteosarcoma, mammary tumors, mastocytoma, brain tumor, melanoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, carcinoid lung tumor, bronchial gland tumor, bronchiolar adenocarcinoma, fibroma, myxochondroma, pulmonary sarcoma, neurosarcoma, osteoma, papilloma, retinoblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma, Wilm's tumor,  
25 Burkitt's lymphoma, microglioma, neuroblastoma, osteoclastoma, oral neoplasia, fibrosarcoma, osteosarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma, genital squamous cell carcinoma, transmissible venereal tumor, testicular tumor, seminoma, Sertoli cell tumor, hemangiopericytoma, histiocytoma, chloroma, granulocytic sarcoma, corneal papilloma, corneal squamous cell carcinoma, hemangiosarcoma, pleural  
30 mesothelioma, basal cell tumor, thymoma, stomach tumor, adrenal gland carcinoma, oral papillomatosis, hemangioendothelioma, cystadenoma, follicular lymphoma,

- 13 -

intestinal lymphosarcoma, fibrosarcoma, and pulmonary squamous cell carcinoma. Exemplary tumors in a rodent subject for methods of treatment provided herein include, but are not limited to, insulinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, neuroma, pancreatic islet cell tumor, gastric MALT lymphoma and gastric adenocarcinoma. Exemplary  
5 tumors in an ovine, equine, bovine, caprine, avian, porcine, or piscine subject for methods of treatment provided herein include, but are not limited to, leukemia, hemangiopericytoma, ocular neoplasia, preputial fibrosarcoma, ulcerative squamous cell carcinoma, preputial carcinoma, connective tissue neoplasia, mastocytoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, lymphoma, pulmonary adenomatosis, pulmonary sarcoma,  
10 Rous sarcoma, reticulo-endotheliosis, fibrosarcoma, nephroblastoma, B-cell lymphoma, lymphoid leukosis, retinoblastoma, hepatic neoplasia, lymphosarcoma, plasmacytoid leukemia, swimbladder sarcoma (in fish), caseous lymphadenitis, and lung tumor.

For the methods provided herein for a therapeutic or diagnostic application, a  
15 pharmaceutical composition provided herein can be administered systemically, intravenously, intraarterially, intratumorally, endoscopically, intralesionally, intramuscularly, intradermally, intraperitoneally, intravesicularly, intraarticularly, intrapleurally, percutaneously, subcutaneously, orally, parenterally, intranasally, intratracheally, by inhalation, intracranially, intraprostatically, intravitreally, topically,  
20 ocularly, vaginally, or rectally.

For the methods provided herein for treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis, the pharmaceutical composition provided herein can be administered with an anti-viral agent, such as, but not limited to, cidofovir, alkoxymethyl esters of cidofovir, Gleevec, gancyclovir, acyclovir, and ST-26.

25 Provided herein are combinations that contain a pharmaceutical composition provided herein and an anticancer agent. Exemplary anticancer agents for use in combinations provided herein include, but are not limited to, a cytokine, a chemokine, a growth factor, a photosensitizing agent, a toxin, an anti-cancer antibiotic, a chemotherapeutic compound, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a signaling  
30 modulator, an anti-metabolite, an anti-cancer vaccine, an anti-cancer oligopeptide, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimetabolic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer antibody, an anti-

- 14 -

cancer antibiotic, an immunotherapeutic agent, hyperthermia or hyperthermia therapy, a bacterium, radiation therapy or a combination thereof. Exemplary chemotherapeutic compounds for use in combinations provided herein include, but are not limited to, alkylating agents such as a platinum coordination complex, among other

5 chemotherapeutic compounds provided herein. Exemplary platinum coordination complexes include, but are not limited to, cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-S.

Provided herein are combinations of the viruses provided and an anti cancer agent, such as a cytokine, a chemokine, a growth factor, a photosensitizing agent, a  
10 toxin, an anti-cancer antibiotic, a chemotherapeutic compound, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a signaling modulator, an anti-metabolite, an anti-cancer vaccine, an anti-cancer oligopeptide, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimetabolic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer antibody, an anti-cancer antibiotic, an immunotherapeutic agent, hyperthermia or hyperthermia therapy or a bacterium. Provided herein are  
15 combinations of the viruses provided and an anti cancer agent, such as cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

Provided herein are combinations where the compound and virus are formulated separately in two compositions. Provided herein are combinations where  
20 the compound and virus are formulated as a single composition.

Provided herein are uses of the viruses provided herein for the treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis. Also provided herein are uses of the viruses provided herein for preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis.

25 Provided herein are kits that contain a pharmaceutical composition or combination provided herein and optionally instructions for administration thereof for treatment of cancer.

Provided herein are vaccines, such as a smallpox vaccine, containing a recombinant vaccinia virus provided herein. Further, provided herein are methods of  
30 vaccination where a vaccine, such as a smallpox vaccine, containing a recombinant vaccinia virus provided herein is administered to a subject for generation of an

- 15 -

immune response.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION****Outline**

- 5        **A. Definitions**
- B. Viruses for treatment and diagnosis**
  - 1. Viruses with altered infectivity
    - a. Viruses with modified viral proteins
      - i. Increase in the Vaccinia EEV form by replacement of A34R
      - 10        ii. Deletion of A35R
    - b. Viruses with multiple genome insertions and/or deletions
  - 2. Viruses that express proteins for tumor imaging
  - 3. Viruses that express proteins for tumor treatment
    - 15        a. Proteins for inhibiting angiogenesis
      - i. hk5
      - ii. tTF-RGD
      - iii. anti-VEGF scab
    - b. Proteins for tumor growth suppression
      - 20        i. sIL-6R-IL-6
      - ii. IL-24
  - 4. Viruses that express proteins for combined tumor diagnosis and treatment
- 25        **C. Methods of modulating virus attenuation**
  - 1. Expression cassettes for modulation of attenuation
    - a. Characteristics of an expression cassette
      - i. Expression cassette promoters
      - ii. Insertion sites for expression cassettes
    - b. Insertion and/or removal of expression cassettes
    - 30        c. Modification of expression cassettes
      - i. Promoter modification
      - ii. Modification of open reading frame
  - 2. Transcription factor decoys
  - 3. Fine tuning attenuation - Combinations of insertions, deletions and/or modifications
  - 35        4. Assays for attenuated viruses
- D. Further modifications of viruses provided**
  - 1. Modification of viral genes
  - 2. Expression of additional heterologous genes
    - 40        a. Detectable gene product
    - b. Therapeutic gene product
    - c. Superantigen
    - d. Gene product to be harvested
    - e. Control of heterologous gene expression
- 45        **E. Methods for making a modified virus**
  - 1. Genetic modifications



- 16 -

- 5
2. Screening of modified viruses
- F. Viruses for use in the methods
1. Cytoplasmic Viruses
- a. Poxviruses
- i. Vaccinia Virus
- b. Other cytoplasmic viruses
2. Adenovirus, Herpes, Retroviruses
- 10
- G. Exemplary characteristics of the viruses provided
1. Attenuated
- a. Reduced toxicity
- b. Accumulate in tumor, not substantially in other organs
- c. Ability to elicit or enhance immune response to tumor cells
- 15
- d. Balance of pathogenicity and release of tumor antigens
2. Immunogenicity
3. Replication competent
- 20
4. Genetic variants
- H. Pharmaceutical Compositions, combinations and kits
1. Pharmaceutical compositions
2. Host cells
3. Combinations
- 25
4. Kits
- I. Therapeutic Methods
1. Administration
- a. Steps prior to administering the virus
- b. Mode of administration
- 30
- c. Dosages
- d. Number of administrations
- e. Co-administrations
- i. Administering a plurality of viruses
- ii. Therapeutic Compounds
- 35
- iii. Immunotherapies and biological therapies
- f. State of subject
2. Monitoring
- a. Monitoring viral gene expression
- b. Monitoring tumor size
- 40
- c. Monitoring antibody titer
- d. Monitoring general health diagnostics
- e. Monitoring coordinated with treatment
- J. Methods of producing gene products and antibodies
1. Production of recombinant proteins and RNA molecules
- 45
2. Production of antibodies
- K. Examples

- 17 -

**A. DEFINITIONS**

Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as is commonly understood by one of skill in the art to which the invention(s) belong. All patents, patent applications, published applications and publications, websites and other published materials referred to throughout the entire disclosure herein, unless noted otherwise, are incorporated by reference in their entirety. In the event that there are pluralities of definitions for terms herein, those in this section prevail. Where reference is made to a URL or other such identifier or address, it is understood that such identifiers can change and particular information on the internet can come and go, but equivalent information is known and can be readily accessed, such as by searching the internet and/or appropriate databases. Reference thereto evidences the availability and public dissemination of such information.

As used herein, "virus" refers to any of a large group of entities referred to as viruses. Viruses typically contain a protein coat surrounding an RNA or DNA core of genetic material, but no semipermeable membrane, and are capable of growth and multiplication only in living cells. Viruses for use in the methods provided herein include, but are not limited, to a poxvirus, adenovirus, herpes simplex virus, Newcastle disease virus, vesicular stomatitis virus, mumps virus, influenza virus, measles virus, reovirus, human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), hanta virus, myxoma virus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), lentivirus, and any plant or insect virus.

As used herein, the term "viral vector" is used according to its art-recognized meaning. It refers to a nucleic acid vector construct that includes at least one element of viral origin and can be packaged into a viral vector particle. The viral vector particles can be used for the purpose of transferring DNA, RNA or other nucleic acids into cells either *in vitro* or *in vivo*. Viral vectors include, but are not limited to, retroviral vectors, vaccinia vectors, lentiviral vectors, herpes virus vectors (e.g., HSV), baculoviral vectors, cytomegalovirus (CMV) vectors, papillomavirus vectors, simian virus (SV40) vectors, semliki forest virus vectors, phage vectors, adenoviral vectors, and adeno-associated viral (AAV) vectors.

As used herein, the term "modified" with reference to a gene refers to a deleted gene, a gene encoding a gene product having one or more truncations,

- 18 -

mutations, insertions or deletions, or a gene that is inserted (into the chromosome or on a plasmid, phagemid, cosmid, and phage) encoding a gene product, typically accompanied by at least a change in function of the modified gene product or virus.

As used herein, the term "modified virus" refers to a virus that is altered with respect to a parental strain of the virus. Typically modified viruses have one or more truncations, mutations, insertions or deletions in the genome of virus. A modified virus can have one or more endogenous viral genes modified and/or one or more intergenic regions modified. Exemplary modified viruses can have one or more heterologous nucleic acid sequences inserted into the genome of the virus. Modified viruses can contain one more heterologous nucleic acid sequences in the form of a gene expression cassette for the expression of a heterologous gene.

As used herein, modification of a heterologous nucleic acid molecule with respect to a virus containing a heterologous nucleic acid molecule refers to any alteration of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule including truncations, mutations, insertions, or deletions of the nucleic acid molecule. A deletion in a heterologous nucleic acid molecule can include all or a portion of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule. For example, if the heterologous nucleic acid molecule is a double stranded DNA molecule that is 5,000 base pairs in length, deletions of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule can include deletions of 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or more, 10 or more, 50 or more, 100 or more, 500 or more, 1,000 or more, or 5,000 base pairs of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule. Deletion of all or a part of the nucleic acid molecule can also include replacement of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule with another nucleic acid molecule. Modification of a heterologous nucleic acid molecule can also include alteration of the viral genome. For example, a deletion of all or a portion heterologous nucleic from the viral genome, for example by homologous recombination, may also include deletion of nucleic acid surrounding the deletion site that is part of the viral genome. Similarly, insertion of an additional heterologous nucleic acid molecule into the viral genome by homologous recombination, for example, may include deletion or all, or a part of a viral gene. When modification of a heterologous nucleic acid molecule is an insertion, an additional nucleic acid molecule can be inserted in the heterologous nucleic acid molecule or adjacent to the

- 19 -

nucleic acid molecule. Typically, insertions by homologous recombination involve replacement of all or a part of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule with another nucleic acid molecule.

As used herein, the term "therapeutic virus" refers to a virus that is  
5 administered for the treatment of a disease or disorder, such as cancer, a tumor and/or a metastasis or inflammation or wound or or diagnosis thereof and or both. The A therapeutic virus typically is modified, such as to attenuate it. Other modifications include one or more insertions, deletions, or mutations in the genome of the virus. Therapeutic viruses all can include modifications in one or more endogenous viral  
10 genes or one or more intergenic regions, which attenuate the toxicity of the virus, and can optionally express a heterologous therapeutic gene product and/or detectable protein. Therapeutic viruses can contain heterologous nucleic acid molecules, including one or more gene expression cassettes for the expression of the therapeutic gene product and/or detectable protein. Therapeutic viruses can be replication  
15 competent viruses (*e.g.*, oncolytic viruses) or replication-defective viruses.

As used herein, a virus that can be detected and used for diagnostics and is therapeutic is a theragnostic virus.

As used herein, the term, "therapeutic gene product" or "therapeutic polypeptide" refers to any heterologous protein expressed by the therapeutic virus that  
20 ameliorates the symptoms of a disease or disorder or ameliorates the disease or disorder.

As used herein, the phrase "immunoprivileged cells and tissues" refers to cells and tissues, such as solid tumors and wounded tissues, which are sequestered from the immune system.

25 As used herein, preferential accumulation refers to accumulation of a virus at a first location at a higher level than accumulation at a second location. Thus, a virus that preferentially accumulates in immunoprivileged tissue, such as a tumor, relative to normal tissues or organs refers to a virus that accumulates in immunoprivileged tissue, such as tumor, at a higher level, or concentration, than the virus accumulates in  
30 normal tissues or organs.

- 20 -

As used herein, to attenuate toxicity of a virus means to reduce or eliminate deleterious or toxic effects to a host upon administration of the virus compared to an un-attenuated virus. As used herein, a virus with low toxicity means that upon administration a virus does not accumulate in organs and tissues in the host to an extent that results in damage or harm to organs, or that impacts survival of the host to a greater extent than the disease being treated does. For the purposes herein, attenuation of toxicity is used interchangeably with attenuation of virulence and attenuation of pathogenicity.

As used herein, the term "toxicity" with reference to a virus refers to the ability of the virus to cause harm to the subject to which the virus has been administered.

As used herein virulence and pathogenicity with reference to a virus refers to the ability of the virus to cause disease or harm in the subject to which the virus has been administered. Hence, for the purposes herein the terms toxicity, virulence, and pathogenicity with reference to a virus are used interchangeably.

As used herein, a compound produced in a tumor or other immunoprivileged site refers to any compound that is produced in the tumor or tumor environment by virtue of the presence of an introduced virus, generally a recombinant virus, expressing one or more gene products. For example, a compound produced in a tumor can be, for example, an encoded polypeptide, such as a recombinant polypeptide (*e.g.*, a cell-surface receptor, a cytokine, a chemokine, an apoptotic protein, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimitotic oligopeptide, a toxin, a tumor antigen, a prodrug converting enzyme), an RNA (*e.g.*, ribozyme, RNAi, siRNA), or a compound that is generated by an encoded polypeptide and, in some examples, the cellular machinery of the tumor or immunoprivileged tissue or cells (*e.g.*, a metabolite, a converted prodrug).

As used herein, a delivery vehicle for administration refers to a lipid-based or other polymer-based composition, such as liposome, micelle, or reverse micelle, which associates with an agent, such as a virus provided herein, for delivery into a host animal.

- 21 -

As used herein, a disease or disorder refers to a pathological condition in an organism resulting from, for example, infection or genetic defect, and characterized by identifiable symptoms.

As used herein, treatment means any manner in which the symptoms of a  
5 condition, disorder or disease are ameliorated or otherwise beneficially altered. Treatment also encompasses any pharmaceutical use of the viruses described and provided herein.

As used herein, amelioration or alleviation of the symptoms of a particular disorder, such as by administration of a particular pharmaceutical composition, refers  
10 to any lessening, whether permanent or temporary, lasting or transient that can be attributed to or associated with administration of the composition.

As used herein, an effective amount of a virus or compound for treating a particular disease is an amount that is sufficient to ameliorate, or in some manner reduce the symptoms associated with the disease. Such an amount can be  
15 administered as a single dosage or can be administered according to a regimen, whereby it is effective. The amount can cure the disease but, typically, is administered in order to ameliorate the symptoms of the disease. Repeated administration can be required to achieve the desired amelioration of symptoms.

As used herein, an *in vivo* method refers to a method performed within the  
20 living body of a subject.

As used herein, a subject includes any animal for whom diagnosis, screening, monitoring or treatment is contemplated. Animals include mammals such as primates and domesticated animals. An exemplary primate is human. A patient refers to a subject such as a mammal, primate, human, or livestock subject afflicted with a  
25 disease condition or for which a disease condition is to be determined or risk of a disease condition is to be determined.

As used herein, the term "neoplasm" or "neoplasia" refers to abnormal new cell growth, and thus means the same as tumor, which can be benign or malignant. Unlike hyperplasia, neoplastic proliferation persists even in the absence of the original  
30 stimulus.

- 22 -

As used herein, neoplastic disease refers to any disorder involving cancer, including tumor development, growth, metastasis and progression.

As used herein, cancer is a term for diseases caused by or characterized by any type of malignant tumor, including metastatic cancers, lymphatic tumors, and blood  
5 cancers. Exemplary cancers include, but are not limited to: leukemia, lymphoma, pancreatic cancer, lung cancer, ovarian cancer, breast cancer, cervical cancer, bladder cancer, prostate cancer, glioma tumors, adenocarcinomas, liver cancer and skin cancer. Exemplary cancers in humans include a bladder tumor, breast tumor, prostate tumor, basal cell carcinoma, biliary tract cancer, bladder cancer, bone cancer, brain  
10 and CNS cancer (*e.g.*, glioma tumor), cervical cancer, choriocarcinoma, colon and rectum cancer, connective tissue cancer, cancer of the digestive system; endometrial cancer, esophageal cancer; eye cancer; cancer of the head and neck; gastric cancer; intra-epithelial neoplasm; kidney cancer; larynx cancer; leukemia; liver cancer; lung cancer (*e.g.* small cell and non-small cell); lymphoma including Hodgkin's and Non-  
15 Hodgkin's lymphoma; melanoma; myeloma, neuroblastoma, oral cavity cancer (*e.g.*, lip, tongue, mouth, and pharynx); ovarian cancer; pancreatic cancer, retinoblastoma; rhabdomyosarcoma; rectal cancer, renal cancer, cancer of the respiratory system; sarcoma, skin cancer; stomach cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer; uterine cancer, cancer of the urinary system, as well as other carcinomas and sarcomas.  
20 Malignant disorders commonly diagnosed in dogs, cats, and other pets include, but are not limited to, lymphosarcoma, osteosarcoma, mammary tumors, mastocytoma, brain tumor, melanoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, carcinoid lung tumor, bronchial gland tumor, bronchiolar adenocarcinoma, fibroma, myxochondroma, pulmonary sarcoma, neurosarcoma, osteoma, papilloma, retinoblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma,  
25 Wilm's tumor, Burkitt's lymphoma, microglioma, neuroblastoma, osteoclastoma, oral neoplasia, fibrosarcoma, osteosarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma, genital squamous cell carcinoma, transmissible venereal tumor, testicular tumor, seminoma, Sertoli cell tumor, hemangiopericytoma, histiocytoma, chloroma (*e.g.*, granulocytic sarcoma), corneal papilloma, corneal squamous cell carcinoma, hemangiosarcoma, pleural  
30 mesothelioma, basal cell tumor, thymoma, stomach tumor, adrenal gland carcinoma, oral papillomatosis, hemangioendothelioma and cystadenoma, follicular lymphoma,

- 23 -

intestinal lymphosarcoma, fibrosarcoma and pulmonary squamous cell carcinoma. In rodents, such as a ferret, exemplary cancers include insulinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, neuroma, pancreatic islet cell tumor, gastric MALT lymphoma and gastric adenocarcinoma. Neoplasias affecting agricultural livestock include leukemia, hemangiopericytoma and bovine ocular neoplasia (in cattle); preputial fibrosarcoma, ulcerative squamous cell carcinoma, preputial carcinoma, connective tissue neoplasia and mastocytoma (in horses); hepatocellular carcinoma (in swine); lymphoma and pulmonary adenomatosis (in sheep); pulmonary sarcoma, lymphoma, Rous sarcoma, reticulo-endotheliosis, fibrosarcoma, nephroblastoma, B-cell lymphoma and lymphoid leukosis (in avian species); retinoblastoma, hepatic neoplasia, lymphosarcoma (lymphoblastic lymphoma), plasmacytoid leukemia and swimbladder sarcoma (in fish), caseous lymphadenitis (CLA): chronic, infectious, contagious disease of sheep and goats caused by the bacterium *Corynebacterium pseudotuberculosis*, and contagious lung tumor of sheep caused by jaagsiekte.

As used herein, the term "malignant," as it applies to tumors, refers to primary tumors that have the capacity of metastasis with loss of growth control and positional control.

As used herein, metastasis refers to a growth of abnormal or neoplastic cells distant from the site primarily involved by the morbid process.

As used herein, proliferative disorders include any disorders involving abnormal proliferation of cells, such as, but not limited to, neoplastic diseases.

As used herein, a method for treating or preventing neoplastic disease means that any of the symptoms, such as the tumor, metastasis thereof, the vascularization of the tumors or other parameters by which the disease is characterized are reduced, ameliorated, prevented, placed in a state of remission, or maintained in a state of remission. It also means that the indications of neoplastic disease and metastasis can be eliminated, reduced or prevented by the treatment. Non-limiting examples of the indications include uncontrolled degradation of the basement membrane and proximal extracellular matrix, migration, division, and organization of the endothelial cells into new functioning capillaries, and the persistence of such functioning capillaries.



- 24 -

As used herein, the term "angiogenesis" is intended to encompass the totality of processes directly or indirectly involved in the establishment and maintenance of new vasculature (neovascularization), including, but not limited to, neovascularization associated with tumors and neovascularization associated with wounds.

5           As used herein, therapeutic agents are agents that ameliorate the symptoms of a disease or disorder or ameliorate the disease or disorder. Therapeutic agent, therapeutic compound, therapeutic regimen, or chemotherapeutic include conventional drugs and drug therapies, including vaccines, which are known to those skilled in the art and described elsewhere herein. Therapeutic agents include, but are  
10 not limited to, moieties that inhibit cell growth or promote cell death, that can be activated to inhibit cell growth or promote cell death, or that activate another agent to inhibit cell growth or promote cell death. Optionally, the therapeutic agent can exhibit or manifest additional properties, such as, properties that permit its use as an imaging agent, as described elsewhere herein. Therapeutic agents for the  
15 compositions, methods and uses provided herein can be, for example, an anti-cancer agent. Exemplary therapeutic agents include, for example, cytokines, growth factors, photosensitizing agents, radionuclides, toxins, anti-metabolites, signaling modulators, anti-cancer antibiotics, anti-cancer antibodies, angiogenesis inhibitors, radiation therapy, chemotherapeutic compounds, or a combination thereof.

20           As used herein, anti-cancer agents (used interchangeably with "anti-tumor or anti-neoplastic" agent) include any anti-cancer therapies, such as radiation therapy, surgery, hyperthermia or hyperthermia therapy, or anti-cancer compounds useful in the treatment of cancer. These include any agents, when used alone or in combination with other agent, that can alleviate, reduce, ameliorate, prevent, or place or maintain  
25 in a state of remission of clinical symptoms or diagnostic markers associated with neoplastic disease, tumors and cancer, and can be used in methods, combinations and compositions provided herein. Exemplary anti-cancer agents include, but are not limited to, the viruses provided herein used singly or in combination and/or in combination with other anti-cancer agents. Exemplary anti-cancer compounds  
30 include a cytokines, chemokines, growth factors, a photosensitizing agents, toxins, anti-cancer antibiotics, chemotherapeutic compounds, radionuclides, angiogenesis

- 25 -

inhibitors, signaling modulators, anti-metabolites, anti-cancer vaccines, anti-cancer oligopeptides, mitosis inhibitor proteins, antimetotic oligopeptides, anti-cancer antibodies, anti-cancer antibiotics, immunotherapeutic agents, bacteria and any combinations thereof.

5 Exemplary cytokines and growth factors include, but are not limited to, interleukins, such as, for example, interleukin-1, interleukin-2, interleukin-6 and interleukin-12, tumor necrosis factors, such as tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ), interferons such as interferon gamma (IFN- $\gamma$ ), granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factors (GM-CSF), angiogenins, and tissue factors.

10 Photosensitizing agents include, but are not limited to, for example, indocyanine green, toluidine blue, aminolevulinic acid, texaphyrins, benzoporphyrins, phenothiazines, phthalocyanines, porphyrins such as sodium porfimer, chlorins such as tetra(m-hydroxyphenyl)chlorin or tin(IV) chlorin e6, purpurins such as tin ethyl etiopurpurin, purpurinimides, bacteriochlorins, pheophorbides, pyropheophorbides or  
15 cationic dyes.

Radionuclides, which depending upon the radionuclide, amount and application can be used for diagnosis and/or for treatment. They include, but are not limited to, for example, a compound or molecule containing  $^{11}\text{C}$ Carbon,  $^{11}\text{F}$ Fluorine,  $^{13}\text{C}$ Carbon,  $^{15}\text{N}$ Nitrogen,  $^{18}\text{F}$ Fluorine,  $^{19}\text{F}$ Fluorine,  $^{32}\text{P}$ Phosphate,  $^{60}\text{Co}$ Cobalt,  $^{90}\text{Y}$ Yttrium,  $^{99}\text{Tc}$ Technetium,  $^{103}\text{Pd}$ Palladium,  $^{106}\text{Ru}$ Ruthenium,  $^{111}\text{In}$ Indium,  $^{117}\text{Lu}$ Lutetium,  $^{125}\text{I}$ Iodine,  $^{131}\text{I}$ Iodine,  $^{137}\text{Cs}$ Cesium,  $^{153}\text{Sm}$ Samarium,  $^{186}\text{Re}$ Rhenium,  $^{188}\text{Re}$ Rhenium,  $^{192}\text{Ir}$ Iridium,  $^{198}\text{Au}$ Gold,  $^{211}\text{At}$ Astatine,  $^{212}\text{Bi}$ Bismuth or  $^{213}\text{Bi}$ Bismuth.

Toxins include, but are not limited to, chemotherapeutic compounds such as, but not limited to, 5-fluorouridine, calicheamicin and maytansine.

25 Anti-metabolites include, but are not limited to, methotrexate, 5-fluorouracil, 6-mercaptopurine, cytosine arabinoside, hydroxyurea, and 20- chlorodeoxyadenosine.

Signaling modulators include, but are not limited to, for example, inhibitors of macrophage inhibitory factor, toll-like receptor agonists and stat 3 inhibitors.

Anti-cancer antibiotics include, but are not limited to, anthracyclines such as  
30 doxorubicin hydrochloride (adriamycin), idarubicin hydrochloride, daunorubicin hydrochloride, aclarubicin Hydrochloride, epirubicin hydrochloride, and purarubicin

- 26 -

hydrochloride, enomycin, phenomycin, pleomycins such as pleomycin and peplomycin sulfate, mitomycins such as mitomycin C, actinomycins such as actinomycin D, zinostatinistimalamer, and polypeptides such as neocarzinostatin.

Anti-cancer antibodies include, but are not limited to, Rituximab, ADEPT, 5 Trastuzumab (Herceptin), Tositumomab (Bexxar), Cetuximab (Erbix), Ibritumomab (Zevalin), Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H), Epratuzumab (Lymphocide), Gemtuzumab ozogamicin (Mylotarg), Bevacimab (Avastin), Tarceva (Erlotinib), SUTENT (sunitinib malate), Panorex (Edrecolomab), RITUXAN (Rituximab), Zevalin (90Y-ibritumomab tiuxetan), Mylotarg (Gemtuzumab Ozogamicin) and Campath 10 (Alemtuzumab).

Angiogenesis inhibitors include, but are not limited to, collagenase inhibitors such as metalloproteinases and tetracyclines such as minocycline, naturally occurring peptides such as endostatin and angiostatin, fungal and bacterial derivatives, such as fumagillin derivatives like TNP-470, aptamer antagonist of VEGF, batimastat, 15 Captopril, cartilage derived inhibitor (CDI), genistein, interleukin 12, Lavendustin A, medroxyprogesterone acetate, recombinant human platelet factor 4(rPF4), taxol, D-glucosaminoglycan sulfate (Tecogalan(=SP-PG, DS-4152)), thalidomide, thrombospondin.

Radiation therapy includes, but is not limited to, photodynamic therapy, 20 radionuclides, radioimmunotherapy and proton beam treatment.

Chemotherapeutic compounds include, but are not limited to platinum; platinum analogs (*e.g.*, platinum coordination complexes) such as cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-S; anthracenediones; vinblastine; alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclophosphamide; alkyl 25 sulfonates such as busulfan, improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, triethylenephosphoramide, triethylenethiophosphoramide and trimethylolomelamine nitrogen mustards such as chiorambucil, chlornaphazine, cholophosphamide, 30 estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard;

- 27 -

nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, anthramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, carabycin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, 5 mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti-metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, 10 pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine; androgens such as calusterone, dromostanolone propionate, epitioestanol, mepitioestane, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, 15 trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; substituted ureas; hydroxyurea; lentinan; lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; 20 podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; anti-cancer polysaccharides; polysaccharide-K; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2, 2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; cytosine arabinoside; cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids, such as paclitaxel and doxetaxel; chlorambucil; 25 gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; methylhydrazine derivatives; and pharmaceutically 30 acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included in this definition are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on

- 28 -

tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone and toremifene (Fareston); adrenocortical suppressants; and antiandrogens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Such chemotherapeutic compounds that can be used herein include compounds whose toxicities preclude use of the compound in general systemic chemotherapeutic methods.

As used herein, an anti-cancer oligopeptide or an anti-tumor oligopeptide is short polypeptide that has the ability to slow or inhibit tumor growth and/or metastasis. Anti-cancer oligopeptide typically have high affinity for and specificity to tumors enabling them to target tumors. Such oligopeptides include receptor-interacting compounds, inhibitors of protein-protein interactions, enzyme inhibitors, and nucleic acid-interacting compounds. As used herein an antimitotic oligopeptide is an oligopeptide that inhibits cell division. An antimitotic oligopeptide is an exemplary anti-cancer oligopeptide. Exemplary antimitotic oligopeptides include, but are not limited to, tubulysin, phomopsin, hemiasterlin, taltobulin (HTI-286, 3), and cryptophycin.

As used herein, a prodrug is a compound that, upon *in vivo* administration, is metabolized or otherwise converted to the biologically, pharmaceutically or therapeutically active form of the compound. To produce a prodrug, the pharmaceutically active compound is modified such that the active compound is regenerated by metabolic processes. The prodrug can be designed to alter the metabolic stability or the transport characteristics of a drug, to mask side effects or toxicity, to improve the flavor of a drug or to alter other characteristics or properties of a drug. By virtue of knowledge of pharmacodynamic processes and drug metabolism *in vivo*, those of skill in this art, once a pharmaceutically active compound is known, can design prodrugs of the compound (see, *e.g.*, Nogrady (1985) Medicinal Chemistry A Biochemical Approach, Oxford University Press, New York, pages 388-392). Prodrugs include, but are not limited to, 5-fluorocytosine, gancyclovir, 6-methylpurine deoxyriboside, cephalosporin-doxorubicin, 4-[(2-

- 29 -

chloroethyl)(2-mesuloxyethyl)amino]benzoyl-L-glutamic acid, indole-3-acetic acid, 7-ethyl-10-[4-(1-piperidino)-1-piperidino]carbonyloxycampothecin, bis-(2-chloroethyl)amino-4-hydroxyphenylaminomethanone 28, 1-chloromethyl-5-hydroxy-1,2-dihydro-3H-benz[e]indole, epirubicin-glucoronide, 5'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine, cytosine arabinoside, and linamarin.

As used herein, a compound conjugated to a moiety refers to a complex that includes a compound bound to a moiety, where the binding between the compound and the moiety can arise from one or more covalent bonds or non-covalent interactions such as hydrogen bonds, or electrostatic interactions. A conjugate also can include a linker that connects the compound to the moiety. Exemplary compounds include, but are not limited to, nanoparticles and siderophores. Exemplary moieties, include, but are not limited to, detectable moieties and therapeutic agents.

As used herein, nanoparticle refers to a microscopic particle whose size is measured in nanometers. Often such particles in nanoscale are used in biomedical applications acting as drug carriers or imaging agents. Nanoparticles can be conjugated to other agents, including, but not limited to detectable/diagnostic agents or therapeutic agents.

As used herein, a detectable label or detectable moiety or diagnostic moiety (also imaging label, imaging agent, or imaging moiety) refers to an atom, molecule or composition, wherein the presence of the atom, molecule or composition can be directly or indirectly measured.

As used herein, a detectable moiety or an imaging moiety refer to moieties used to image a virus in any of the methods provided herein. Imaging (detectable) moieties include, for example, chemiluminescent moieties, bioluminescent moieties, fluorescent moieties, radionuclides, and metals.

As used herein, a detection agent or an imaging agent refer to any molecule, compound, or polypeptide used to image a virus in any of the methods provided herein. Detection agents or imaging agents can contain, for example, a detectable moiety or can be a substrate, such as a luciferin, that produces a detectable signal following modification, such as by chemical modification by a luciferase.

- 30 -

As used herein, detect, detected and detecting refer generally to any manner of discovering or determining the presence of a signal, such as visual inspection, fluorescence spectroscopy, absorption, reflectance measurement, flow cytometry, magnetic resonance methods such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), ultrasound, X-rays, gamma rays (after annihilation of a positron and an electron in PET scanning), tomographic methods including computed tomography (CT), computed axial tomography (CAT), electron beam computed tomography (EBCT), high resolution computed tomography (HRCT), hypocycloidal tomography, positron emission tomography (PET), single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), spiral computed tomography and ultrasonic tomography. Direct detection of a detectable label refers to, for example, measurement of a physical phenomenon, such as energy or particle emission or absorption of the moiety itself, such as by X-ray or MRI. Indirect detection refers to measurement of a physical phenomenon, such as energy or particle emission or absorption, of an atom, molecule or composition that binds directly or indirectly to the detectable moiety. In a non-limiting example of indirect detection, a detectable label can be biotin, which can be detected by binding to avidin. Non-labeled avidin can be administered systemically to block non-specific binding, followed by systemic administration of labeled avidin. Thus, included within the scope of a detectable label or detectable moiety is a bindable label or bindable moiety, which refers to an atom, molecule or composition, wherein the presence of the atom, molecule or composition can be detected as a result of the label or moiety binding to another atom, molecule or composition. Exemplary diagnostic agents include, for example, metals such as colloidal gold, iron, gadolinium, and gallium-67, fluorescent moieties, and radionuclides. Exemplary fluorescent moieties and radionuclides are provided elsewhere herein.

As used herein, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) refers to the use of a nuclear magnetic resonance spectrometer to produce electronic images of specific atoms and molecular structures in solids, especially human cells, tissues, and organs. MRI is non-invasive diagnostic technique that uses nuclear magnetic resonance to produce cross-sectional images of organs and other internal body structures. The

- 31 -

subject lies inside a large, hollow cylinder containing a strong electromagnet, which causes the nuclei of certain atoms in the body (such as, for example,  $^1\text{H}$ ,  $^{13}\text{C}$  and  $^{19}\text{F}$ ) to align magnetically. The subject is then subjected to radio waves, which cause the aligned nuclei to flip; when the radio waves are withdrawn the nuclei return to their original positions, emitting radio waves that are then detected by a receiver and translated into a two-dimensional picture by computer. For some MRI procedures, contrast agents such as gadolinium are used to increase the accuracy of the images.

As used herein, an X-ray refers to a relatively high-energy photon, or a stream of such photons, having a wavelength in the approximate range from 0.01 to 10 nanometers. X-rays also refer to photographs taken with x-rays.

As used herein, nucleic acids include DNA, RNA and analogs thereof, including peptide nucleic acids (PNA) and mixtures thereof. Nucleic acids can be single or double-stranded. Nucleic acids can encode for example gene products, such as, for example, polypeptides, regulatory RNAs, siRNAs, and functional RNAs.

As used herein, primer refers to an oligonucleotide containing two or more deoxyribonucleotides or ribonucleotides, typically more than three, from which synthesis of a primer extension product can be initiated. Typically a primer contains a free 3' hydroxy moiety. Experimental conditions conducive to synthesis of a gene product include the presence of nucleoside triphosphates and an agent for polymerization and extension, such as DNA polymerase, and a suitable buffer, temperature, and pH. When referring to probes or primers, which are optionally labeled, such as with a detectable label, such as a fluorescent or radiolabel, single-stranded molecules are provided. Such molecules are typically of a length such that their target is statistically unique or of low copy number (typically less than 5, generally less than 3) for probing or priming a library. Generally a probe or primer contains at least 14, 16 or 30 contiguous nucleotides of sequence complementary to or identical to a gene of interest. Probes and primers can be 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 or more, 20 or more, 30 or more, 50 or more, 100 or more nucleic acids long.

As used herein, a sequence complementary to at least a portion of an RNA, with reference to antisense oligonucleotides, means a sequence of nucleotides having sufficient complementarity to be able to hybridize with the RNA, generally under



- 32 -

moderate or high stringency conditions, forming a stable duplex; in the case of double-stranded antisense nucleic acids, a single strand of the duplex DNA (*i.e.*, dsRNA) can thus be tested, or triplex formation can be assayed. The ability to hybridize depends on the degree of complementarity and the length of the antisense nucleic acid. Generally, the longer the hybridizing nucleic acid, the more base mismatches with an encoding RNA it can contain and still form a stable duplex (or triplex, as the case can be). One skilled in the art can ascertain a tolerable degree of mismatch by use of standard procedures to determine the melting point of the hybridized complex.

As used herein, a heterologous nucleic acid (also referred to as exogenous nucleic acid or foreign nucleic acid) refers to a nucleic acid that is not normally produced *in vivo* by an organism or virus from which it is expressed or that is produced by an organism or a virus but is at a different locus, expressed differently, or that mediates or encodes mediators that alter expression of endogenous nucleic acid, such as DNA, by affecting transcription, translation, or other regulatable biochemical processes. Heterologous nucleic acid is often not endogenous to a cell or virus into which it is introduced, but has been obtained from another cell or virus or prepared synthetically. Heterologous nucleic acid can refer to a nucleic acid molecule from another cell in the same organism or another organism, including the same species or another species. Heterologous nucleic acid, however, can be endogenous, but is nucleic acid that is expressed from a different locus or altered in its expression or sequence (*e.g.*, a plasmid). Thus, heterologous nucleic acid includes a nucleic acid molecule not present in the exact orientation or position as the counterpart nucleic acid molecule, such as DNA, is found in a genome. Generally, although not necessarily, such nucleic acid encodes RNA and proteins that are not normally produced by the cell or virus or in the same way in the cell in which it is expressed. Any nucleic acid, such as DNA, that one of skill in the art recognizes or considers as heterologous, exogenous, or foreign to the cell in which the nucleic acid is expressed is herein encompassed by heterologous nucleic acid.

- 33 -

As used herein, a heterologous protein or heterologous polypeptide (also referred to as exogenous protein, exogenous polypeptide, foreign protein or foreign polypeptide) refers to a protein that is not normally produced *in vivo* by an organism.

As used herein, operative linkage of heterologous nucleic acids to regulatory  
5 and effector sequences of nucleotides, such as promoters, enhancers, transcriptional and translational stop sites; and other signal sequences refers to the relationship between such nucleic acid, such as DNA, and such sequences of nucleotides. For example, operative linkage of heterologous DNA to a promoter refers to the physical relationship between the DNA and the promoter such that the transcription of such  
10 DNA is initiated from the promoter by an RNA polymerase that specifically recognizes, binds to, and transcribes the DNA. Thus, operatively linked or operationally associated refers to the functional relationship of a nucleic acid, such as DNA, with regulatory and effector sequences of nucleotides, such as promoters, enhancers, transcriptional and translational stop sites, and other signal sequences. For  
15 example, operative linkage of DNA to a promoter refers to the physical and functional relationship between the DNA and the promoter such that the transcription of such DNA is initiated from the promoter by an RNA polymerase that specifically recognizes, binds to, and transcribes the DNA. In order to optimize expression and/or transcription, it can be necessary to remove, add or alter 5' untranslated portions of the  
20 clones to eliminate extra, potentially inappropriate, alternative translation initiation (*i.e.*, start) codons or other sequences that can interfere with or reduce expression, either at the level of transcription or translation. In addition, consensus ribosome binding sites can be inserted immediately 5' of the start codon and can enhance expression (see, *e.g.*, Kozak *J. Biol. Chem.* 266: 19867-19870 (1991); Shine and  
25 Delgarno *Nature* 254(5495): 34-38 (1975)). The desirability of (or need for) such modification can be empirically determined.

As used herein, a promoter, a promoter region or a promoter element or regulatory region or regulatory element refers to a segment of DNA or RNA that controls transcription of the DNA or RNA to which it is operatively linked. The  
30 promoter region includes specific sequences that are involved in RNA polymerase recognition, binding and transcription initiation. In addition, the promoter includes

- 34 -

sequences that modulate recognition, binding and transcription initiation activity of RNA polymerase (*i.e.*, binding of one or more transcription factors). These sequences can be *cis* acting or can be responsive to *trans* acting factors. Promoters, depending upon the nature of the regulation, can be constitutive or regulated. Regulated

5 promoters can be inducible or environmentally responsive (*e.g.* respond to cues such as pH, anaerobic conditions, osmoticum, temperature, light, or cell density). Many such promoter sequences are known in the art. See, for example, U.S. Pat. Nos. 4,980,285; 5,631,150; 5,707,928; 5,759,828; 5,888,783; 5,919,670, and, Sambrook, *et al.*, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Press

10 (1989).

As used herein, a native promoter is a promoter that is endogenous to the organism or virus and is unmodified with respect to its nucleotide sequence and its position in the viral genome as compared to a wild-type organism or virus.

As used herein, a heterologous promoter refers to a promoter that is not

15 normally found in the wild-type organism or virus or that is at a different locus as compared to a wild-type organism or virus. A heterologous promoter is often not endogenous to a cell or virus into which it is introduced, but has been obtained from another cell or virus or prepared synthetically. A heterologous promoter can refer to a promoter from another cell in the same organism or another organism, including the

20 same species or another species. A heterologous promoter, however, can be endogenous, but is a promoter that is altered in its sequence or occurs at a different locus (*e.g.*, at a different location in the genome or on a plasmid). Thus, a heterologous promoter includes a promoter not present in the exact orientation or position as the counterpart promoter is found in a genome.

25 A synthetic promoter is a heterologous promoter that has a nucleotide sequence that is not found in nature. A synthetic promoter can be a nucleic acid molecule that has a synthetic sequence or a sequence derived from a native promoter or portion thereof. A synthetic promoter can also be a hybrid promoter composed of different elements derived from different native promoters.

30 As used herein a "gene expression cassette" or "expression cassette" is a nucleic acid construct, containing nucleic acid elements that are capable of effecting

- 35 -

expression of a gene in hosts that are compatible with such sequences. Expression cassettes include at least promoters and optionally, transcription termination signals. Typically, the expression cassette includes a nucleic acid to be transcribed operably linked to a promoter. Additional factors helpful in effecting expression can also be used as described herein. Expression cassettes can contain genes that encode, for example, a therapeutic gene product or a detectable protein or a selectable marker gene,

As used herein, replacement of a promoter with a stronger promoter refers to removing a promoter from a genome and replacing it with a promoter that effects an increased the level of transcription initiation relative to the promoter that is replaced. Typically, a stronger promoter has an improved ability to bind polymerase complexes relative to the promoter that is replaced. As a result, an open reading frame that is operably linked to the stronger promoter has a higher level of gene expression. Similarly, replacement of a promoter with a weaker promoter refers to removing a promoter from a genome and replacing it with a promoter that decreases the level of transcription initiation relative to the promoter that is replaced. Typically, a weaker promoter has a lessened ability to bind polymerase complexes relative to the promoter that is replaced. As a result, an open reading frame that is operably linked to the weaker promoter has a lower level of gene expression.

As used herein, production by recombinant means by using recombinant DNA methods means the use of the well known methods of molecular biology for expressing proteins encoded by cloned DNA.

As used herein, vector (or plasmid) refers to discrete elements that are used to introduce heterologous nucleic acid into cells for either expression or replication thereof. The vectors typically remain episomal, but can be designed to effect integration of a gene or portion thereof into a chromosome of the genome. Selection and use of such vectors are well known to those of skill in the art. An expression vector includes vectors capable of expressing DNA that is operatively linked with regulatory sequences, such as promoter regions, that are capable of effecting expression of such DNA fragments. Thus, an expression vector refers to a recombinant DNA or RNA construct, such as a plasmid, a phage, recombinant virus

- 36 -

or other vector that, upon introduction into an appropriate host cell, results in expression of the cloned DNA. Appropriate expression vectors are well known to those of skill in the art and include those that are replicable in eukaryotic cells and/or prokaryotic cells and those that remain episomal or those which integrate into the host cell genome. Vectors can be used in the generation of a recombinant genome by  
5 integration or homologous recombination, such as in the generation of a recombinant virus as described elsewhere herein.

As used herein, genetic therapy or gene therapy involves the transfer of heterologous nucleic acid, such as DNA or RNA, into certain cells, target cells, of a mammal, particularly a human, with a disorder or conditions for which such therapy is sought. As used herein, genetic therapy or gene therapy can involve the transfer of heterologous nucleic acid, such as DNA, into a virus, which can be transferred to a mammal, particularly a human, with a disorder or conditions for which such therapy is sought. The nucleic acid, such as DNA, is introduced into the selected target cells,  
15 such as directly or indirectly, in a manner such that the heterologous nucleic acid, such as DNA, is expressed and a therapeutic product encoded thereby is produced. Alternatively, the heterologous nucleic acid, such as DNA, can in some manner mediate expression of DNA that encodes the therapeutic product, or it can encode a product, such as a peptide or RNA that is in some manner a therapeutic product, or  
20 which mediates, directly or indirectly, expression of a therapeutic product. Genetic therapy also can be used to deliver nucleic acid encoding a gene product that replaces a defective gene or supplements a gene product produced by the mammal or the cell in which it is introduced. The introduced nucleic acid can encode a therapeutic compound. The heterologous nucleic acid, such as DNA, encoding the therapeutic  
25 product can be modified prior to introduction into the cells of the afflicted host in order to enhance or otherwise alter the product or expression thereof. Genetic therapy also can involve delivery of an inhibitor or repressor or other modulator of gene expression.

As used herein, a therapeutically effective product for gene therapy is a product that is encoded by heterologous nucleic acid, typically DNA, or an RNA product such as dsRNA, RNAi, including siRNA, that upon introduction of the  
30

- 37 -

nucleic acid into a host, a product is expressed that ameliorates or eliminates the symptoms, manifestations of an inherited or acquired disease or that cures the disease. Also included are biologically active nucleic acid molecules, such as RNAi and antisense nucleic acids.

5 As used herein, an agent or compound that modulates the activity of a protein or expression of a gene or nucleic acid either decreases or increases or otherwise alters the activity of the protein or, in some manner, up- or down-regulates or otherwise alters expression of the nucleic acid in a cell.

As used herein, recitation that amino acids of a polypeptide "correspond to" amino  
10 acids in a disclosed sequence, such as amino acids set forth in the Sequence listing, refers to amino acids identified upon alignment of the polypeptide with the disclosed sequence to maximize identity or homology (where conserved amino acids are aligned) using a standard alignment algorithm, such as the GAP algorithm. By aligning the sequences of polypeptides, one skilled in the art can identify  
15 corresponding residues, using conserved and identical amino acid residues as guides.

As used herein, "amino acids" are represented by their full name or by their known, three-letter or one-letter abbreviations (Table 1). The nucleotides which occur in the various nucleic acid fragments are designated with the standard single-letter designations used routinely in the art.

20

Table 1 – Table of Correspondence

SYMBOL		AMINO ACID
1-Letter	3-Letter	
Y	Tyr	tyrosine
G	Gly	glycine
F	Phe	phenylalanine
M	Met	methionine
A	Ala	alanine
S	Ser	serine
I	Ile	isoleucine
L	Leu	leucine
T	Thr	threonine
V	Val	valine
P	Pro	proline
K	Lys	lysine
H	His	histidine
Q	Gln	glutamine

- 38 -

SYMBOL		
1-Letter	3-Letter	AMINO ACID
E	Glu	glutamic acid
Z	Glx	Glu and/or Gln
W	Trp	tryptophan
R	Arg	arginine
D	Asp	aspartic acid
N	Asn	asparagine
B	Asx	Asn and/or Asp
C	Cys	cysteine
X	Xaa	Unknown or other

As used herein, the terms "homology" and "identity" are used interchangeably, but homology for proteins can include conservative amino acid changes. In general, to identify corresponding positions, the sequences of amino acids are aligned so that the highest order match is obtained (see, e.g., Computational Molecular Biology, Lesk, A.M., ed., Oxford University Press, New York, 1988; Biocomputing: Informatics and Genome Projects, Smith, D.W., ed., Academic Press, New York, 1993; Computer Analysis of Sequence Data, Part I, Griffin, A.M., and Griffin, H.G., eds., Humana Press, New Jersey, 1994; Sequence Analysis in Molecular Biology, von Heinje, G., Academic Press, 1987; and Sequence Analysis Primer, Gribskov, M. and Devereux, J., eds., M Stockton Press, New York, 1991; Carillo *et al.* (1988) *SIAM J Applied Math* 48:1073).

As use herein, "sequence identity" refers to the number of identical amino acids (or nucleotide bases) in a comparison between a test and a reference polypeptide or polynucleotide. Homologous polypeptides refer to a pre-determined number of identical or homologous amino acid residues. Homology includes conservative amino acid substitutions as well identical residues. Sequence identity can be determined by standard alignment algorithm programs used with default gap penalties established by each supplier. Homologous nucleic acid molecules refer to a pre-determined number of identical or homologous nucleotides. Homology includes substitutions that do not change the encoded amino acid (*i.e.*, "silent substitutions") as well identical residues. Substantially homologous nucleic acid molecules hybridize typically at moderate stringency or at high stringency all along the length of the nucleic acid or along at least about 70%, 80% or 90% of the full-length nucleic acid molecule of interest.

- 39 -

Also contemplated are nucleic acid molecules that contain degenerate codons in place of codons in the hybridizing nucleic acid molecule. (For determination of homology of proteins, conservative amino acids can be aligned as well as identical amino acids; in this case, percentage of identity and percentage homology vary). Whether any two

5 nucleic acid molecules have nucleotide sequences (or any two polypeptides have amino acid sequences) that are at least 80%, 85%, 90%, 95%, 96%, 97%, 98% or 99% "identical" can be determined using known computer algorithms such as the "FAST A" program, using for example, the default parameters as in Pearson *et al. Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 2444 (1988) (other programs include the GCG program package

10 (Devereux, J., *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Research* 12(I): 387 (1984)), BLASTP, BLASTN, FASTA (Atschul, S.F., *et al.*, *J. Molec. Biol.* 215:403 (1990); Guide to Huge Computers, Martin J. Bishop, ed., Academic Press, San Diego (1994), and Carillo *et al. SIAM J Applied Math* 48: 1073 (1988)). For example, the BLAST function of the National Center for Biotechnology Information database can be used to determine

15 identity. Other commercially or publicly available programs include DNASTar "MegAlign" program (Madison, WI) and the University of Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group (UWG) "Gap" program (Madison WI)). Percent homology or identity of proteins and/or nucleic acid molecules can be determined, for example, by comparing sequence information using a GAP computer program (*e.g.*, Needleman *et al. J. Mol. Biol.* 48: 443 (1970), as revised by Smith and Waterman (*Adv. Appl. Math.* 2: 482 (1981)). Briefly, a GAP program defines similarity as the number of aligned symbols (*i.e.*, nucleotides or amino acids) which are similar, divided by the total number of symbols in the shorter of the two sequences. Default parameters for the

20 GAP program can include: (1) a unary comparison matrix (containing a value of 1 for identities and 0 for non identities) and the weighted comparison matrix of Gribskov *et al. Nucl. Acids Res.* 14: 6745 (1986), as described by Schwartz and Dayhoff, eds., Atlas of Protein Sequence and Structure, National Biomedical Research Foundation, pp. 353-358 (1979); (2) a penalty of 3.0 for each gap and an additional 0.10 penalty for each symbol in each gap; and (3) no penalty for end gaps. Therefore, as used

25 herein, the term "identity" represents a comparison between a test and a reference polypeptide or polynucleotide. In one non-limiting example, "at least 90% identical

30



- 40 -

to" refers to percent identities from 90 to 100% relative to the reference polypeptides. Identity at a level of 90% or more is indicative of the fact that, assuming for exemplification purposes a test and reference polynucleotide length of 100 amino acids are compared, no more than 10% (*i.e.*, 10 out of 100) of amino acids in the test polypeptide differs from that of the reference polypeptides. Similar comparisons can be made between a test and reference polynucleotides. Such differences can be represented as point mutations randomly distributed over the entire length of an amino acid sequence or they can be clustered in one or more locations of varying length up to the maximum allowable, *e.g.*, 10/100 amino acid difference (approximately 90% identity). Differences are defined as nucleic acid or amino acid substitutions, insertions or deletions. At the level of homologies or identities above about 85-90%, the result should be independent of the program and gap parameters set; such high levels of identity can be assessed readily, often without relying on software.

The term substantially identical or homologous or similar varies with the context as understood by those skilled in the relevant art and generally means at least 60% or 70%, preferably means at least 80%, more preferably at least 90%, and most preferably at least 95% , 96%, 97%, 98%, 99% or greater identity. As used herein, substantially identical to a product means sufficiently similar so that the property of interest is sufficiently unchanged so that the substantially identical product can be used in place of the product.

As used herein, substantially pure means sufficiently homogeneous to appear free of readily detectable impurities as determined by standard methods of analysis, such as thin layer chromatography (TLC), gel electrophoresis and high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), used by those of skill in the art to assess such purity, or sufficiently pure such that further purification would not detectably alter the physical and chemical properties, such as enzymatic and biological activities, of the substance. Methods for purification of the compounds to produce substantially chemically pure compounds are known to those of skill in the art. A substantially chemically pure compound can, however, be a mixture of stereoisomers or isomers. In such instances, further purification might increase the specific activity of the compound.

As used herein equivalent, when referring to two sequences of nucleic acids, means that the two sequences in question encode the same sequence of amino acids or equivalent proteins. When equivalent is used in referring to two proteins or peptides or other molecules, it means that the two proteins or peptides have substantially the same amino acid sequence with only amino acid substitutions (such as, but not limited to, conservative changes) or structure and the any changes do not substantially alter the activity or function of the protein or peptide. When equivalent refers to a property, the property does not need to be present to the same extent (*e.g.*, two peptides can exhibit different rates of the same type of enzymatic activity), but the activities are usually substantially the same. Complementary, when referring to two nucleotide sequences, means that the two sequences of nucleotides are capable of hybridizing, typically with less than 25%, 15% or 5% mismatches between opposed nucleotides. If necessary, the percentage of complementarity will be specified. Typically the two molecules are selected such that they will hybridize under conditions of high stringency.

As used herein, a receptor refers to a molecule that has an affinity for a ligand. Receptors can be naturally-occurring or synthetic molecules. Receptors also can be referred to in the art as anti-ligands. As used herein, the receptor and anti-ligand are interchangeable. Receptors can be used in their unaltered state or bound to other polypeptides, including as homodimers. Receptors can be attached to, covalently or noncovalently, or in physical contact with, a binding member, either directly or indirectly via a specific binding substance or linker. Examples of receptors, include, but are not limited to: antibodies, cell membrane receptors surface receptors and internalizing receptors, monoclonal antibodies and antisera reactive with specific antigenic determinants (such as on viruses, cells, or other materials), drugs, polynucleotides, nucleic acids, peptides, cofactors, lectins, sugars, polysaccharides, cells, cellular membranes, and organelles.

As used herein, bind, bound and binding refer to the binding between atoms or molecules with a  $K_d$  in the range of  $10^{-2}$  to  $10^{-15}$  mole/L, generally,  $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-15}$ ,  $10^{-7}$  to  $10^{-15}$  and typically  $10^{-8}$  to  $10^{-15}$  (and/or a  $K_a$  of  $10^5$ - $10^{12}$ ,  $10^7$ - $10^{12}$ ,  $10^8$ - $10^{12}$  L/mole).

As used herein, luminescence refers to the detectable electromagnetic (EM)

- 42 -

radiation, generally, ultraviolet (UV), infrared (IR) or visible EM radiation that is produced when the excited product of an exergonic chemical process reverts to its ground state with the emission of light. Chemiluminescence is luminescence that results from a chemical reaction. Bioluminescence is chemiluminescence that results from a chemical reaction using biological molecules (or synthetic versions or analogs thereof) as substrates and/or enzymes. Fluorescence is luminescence in which light of a visible color is emitted from a substance under stimulation or excitation by light or other forms radiation such as ultraviolet (UV), infrared (IR) or visible EM radiation.

As used herein, chemiluminescence refers to a chemical reaction in which energy is specifically channeled to a molecule causing it to become electronically excited and subsequently to release a photon thereby emitting visible light. Temperature does not contribute to this channeled energy. Thus, chemiluminescence involves the direct conversion of chemical energy to light energy.

As used herein, bioluminescence, which is a type of chemiluminescence, refers to the emission of light by biological molecules, particularly proteins. The essential condition for bioluminescence is molecular oxygen, either bound or free in the presence of an oxygenase, a luciferase, which acts on a substrate, a luciferin. Bioluminescence is generated by an enzyme or other protein (luciferase) that is an oxygenase that acts on a substrate luciferin (a bioluminescence substrate) in the presence of molecular oxygen and transforms the substrate to an excited state, which, upon return to a lower energy level releases the energy in the form of light.

As used herein, the substrates and enzymes for producing bioluminescence are generically referred to as luciferin and luciferase, respectively. When reference is made to a particular species thereof, for clarity, each generic term is used with the name of the organism from which it derives such as, for example, click beetle luciferase or firefly luciferase.

As used herein, luciferase refers to oxygenases that catalyze a light emitting reaction. For instance, bacterial luciferases catalyze the oxidation of flavin mononucleotide (FMN) and aliphatic aldehydes, which reaction produces light. Another class of luciferases, found among marine arthropods, catalyzes the oxidation

- 43 -

of Cypridina (Vargula) luciferin and another class of luciferases catalyzes the oxidation of Coleoptera luciferin.

Thus, luciferase refers to an enzyme or photoprotein that catalyzes a bioluminescent reaction (a reaction that produces bioluminescence). The luciferases, such as firefly and Gaussia and *Renilla* luciferases are enzymes which act catalytically and are unchanged during the bioluminescence generating reaction. The luciferase photoproteins, such as the aequorin photoprotein to which luciferin is non-covalently bound, are changed, such as by release of the luciferin, during bioluminescence generating reaction. The luciferase is a protein, or a mixture of proteins (*e.g.*, bacterial luciferase), that occurs naturally in an organism or a variant or mutant thereof, such as a variant produced by mutagenesis that has one or more properties, such as thermal stability, that differ from the naturally-occurring protein. Luciferases and modified mutant or variant forms thereof are well known. For purposes herein, reference to luciferase refers to either the photoproteins or luciferases.

Thus, reference, for example, to *Renilla* luciferase refers to an enzyme isolated from member of the genus *Renilla* or an equivalent molecule obtained from any other source, such as from another related copepod, or that has been prepared synthetically. It is intended to encompass *Renilla* luciferases with conservative amino acid substitutions that do not substantially alter activity. Conservative substitutions of amino acids are known to those of skill in this art and can be made generally without altering the biological activity of the resulting molecule. Those of skill in this art recognize that, in general, single amino acid substitutions in non-essential regions of a polypeptide do not substantially alter biological activity (see, *e.g.*, Watson *et al.* Molecular Biology of the Gene, 4th Edition, 1987, The Benjamin/Cummings Pub. co., p.224).

As used herein, bioluminescence substrate refers to the compound that is oxidized in the presence of a luciferase and any necessary activators and generates light. These substrates are referred to as luciferins herein, are substrates that undergo oxidation in a bioluminescence reaction. These bioluminescence substrates include any luciferin or analog thereof or any synthetic compound with which a luciferase interacts to generate light. Typical substrates include those that are oxidized in the

- 44 -

presence of a luciferase or protein in a light-generating reaction. Bioluminescence substrates, thus, include those compounds that those of skill in the art recognize as luciferins. Luciferins, for example, include firefly luciferin, Cypridina (also known as Vargula) luciferin (coelenterazine), bacterial luciferin, as well as synthetic analogs of these substrates or other compounds that are oxidized in the presence of a luciferase in a reaction the produces bioluminescence.

As used herein, capable of conversion into a bioluminescence substrate refers to being susceptible to chemical reaction, such as oxidation or reduction, which yields a bioluminescence substrate. For example, the luminescence producing reaction of bioluminescent bacteria involves the reduction of a flavin mononucleotide group (FMN) to reduced flavin mononucleotide (FMNH<sub>2</sub>) by a flavin reductase enzyme. The reduced flavin mononucleotide (substrate) then reacts with oxygen (an activator) and bacterial luciferase to form an intermediate peroxy flavin that undergoes further reaction, in the presence of a long-chain aldehyde, to generate light. With respect to this reaction, the reduced flavin and the long chain aldehyde are bioluminescence substrates.

As used herein, a bioluminescence generating system refers to the set of reagents required to conduct a bioluminescent reaction. Thus, the specific luciferase, luciferin and other substrates, solvents and other reagents that can be required to complete a bioluminescent reaction form a bioluminescence system. Thus a bioluminescence generating system refers to any set of reagents that, under appropriate reaction conditions, yield bioluminescence. Appropriate reaction conditions refer to the conditions necessary for a bioluminescence reaction to occur, such as pH, salt concentrations and temperature. In general, bioluminescence systems include a bioluminescence substrate, luciferin, a luciferase, which includes enzymes luciferases and photoproteins and one or more activators. A specific bioluminescence system can be identified by reference to the specific organism from which the luciferase derives; for example, the *Renilla* bioluminescence system includes a *Renilla* luciferase, such as a luciferase isolated from *Renilla* or produced using recombinant methods or modifications of these luciferases. This system also includes the particular activators necessary to complete the bioluminescence reaction, such as

- 45 -

oxygen and a substrate with which the luciferase reacts in the presence of the oxygen to produce light.

As used herein, a fluorescent protein (FP) refers to a protein that possesses the ability to fluoresce (*i.e.*, to absorb energy at one wavelength and emit it at another wavelength). For example, a green fluorescent protein (GFP) refers to a polypeptide  
5 that has a peak in the emission spectrum at 510 nm or about 510 nm. A variety of FPs that emit at various wavelengths are known in the art. Exemplary FPs include, but are not limited to, a green fluorescent protein (GFP), yellow fluorescent protein (YFP), orange fluorescent protein (OFP), cyan fluorescent protein (CFP), blue fluorescent  
10 protein (BFP), red fluorescent protein (RFP), far-red fluorescent protein, or near-infrared fluorescent protein. Extending the spectrum of available colors of fluorescent proteins to blue, cyan, orange yellow and red variants, provides a method for multicolor tracking of fusion proteins.

As used herein, *Aequorea* GFP refers to GFPs from the genus *Aequorea* and to  
15 mutants or variants thereof. Such variants and GFPs from other species, such as *Anthozoa* reef coral, *Anemonia* sea anemone, *Renilla* sea pansy, *Galaxea* coral, *Acropora* brown coral, *Trachyphyllia* and *Pectiniidae* stony coral and other species are well known and are available and known to those of skill in the art. Exemplary GFP variants include, but are not limited to BFP, CFP, YFP and OFP. Examples of  
20 florescent proteins and their variants include GFP proteins, such as Emerald (InVitrogen, Carlsbad, CA), EGFP (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.), Azami-Green (MBL International, Woburn, MA), Kaede (MBL International, Woburn, MA), ZsGreen1 (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.) and CopGFP (Evrogen/Axxora, LLC, San Diego, CA); CFP proteins, such as Cerulean (Rizzo, *Nat Biotechnol.* 22(4):445-9 (2004)), mCFP  
25 (Wang *et al.*, *PNAS U S A.* 101(48):16745-9 (2004)), AmCyan1 (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.), MiCy (MBL International, Woburn, MA), and CyPet (Nguyen and Daugherty, *Nat Biotechnol.* 23(3):355-60 (2005)); BFP proteins such as EBFP (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.); YFP proteins such as EYFP (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.), YPet (Nguyen and Daugherty, *Nat Biotechnol.* 23(3):355-60 (2005)), Venus (Nagai *et al.*, *Nat.*  
30 *Biotechnol.* 20(1):87-90 (2002)), ZsYellow (Clontech, Palo Alto, Calif.), and mCitrine (Wang *et al.*, *PNAS U S A.* 101(48):16745-9 (2004)); OFP proteins such as

- 46 -

cOFP (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA), mKO (MBL International, Woburn, MA), and mOrange; and others (Shaner NC, Steinbach PA, and Tsien RY., *Nat Methods*. 2(12):905-9 (2005)).

As used herein, red fluorescent protein, or RFP, refers to the *Discosoma* RFP (DsRed) that has been isolated from the corallimorph *Discosoma* (Matz *et al.*, *Nature Biotechnology* 17: 969-973 (1999)), and red or far-red fluorescent proteins from any other species, such as *Heteractis* reef coral and *Actinia* or *Entacmaea* sea anemone, as well as variants thereof. RFPs include, for example, *Discosoma* variants, such as mRFP1, mCherry, tdTomato, mStrawberry, mTangerine (Wang *et al.*, *PNAS U S A*. 101(48):16745-9 (2004)), DsRed2 (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA), and DsRed-T1 (Bevis and Glick, *Nat. Biotechnol.*, 20: 83-87 (2002)), *Anthomedusa* J-Red (Evrogen) and *Anemonia* AsRed2 (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA). Far-red fluorescent proteins include, for example, *Actinia* AQ143 (Shkrob *et al.*, *Biochem J.* 392(Pt 3):649-54 (2005)), *Entacmaea* eqFP611 (Wiedenmann *et al. Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 99(18):11646-51 (2002)), *Discosoma* variants such as mPlum and mRaspberry (Wang *et al.*, *PNAS U S A*. 101(48):16745-9 (2004)), and *Heteractis* HcRed1 and t-HcRed (Clontech, Palo Alto, CA).

As used herein the term assessing or determining is intended to include quantitative and qualitative determination in the sense of obtaining an absolute value for the activity of a product, and also of obtaining an index, ratio, percentage, visual or other value indicative of the level of the activity. Assessment can be direct or indirect.

As used herein, activity refers to the *in vivo* activities of a compound or viruses on physiological responses that result following *in vivo* administration thereof (or of a composition or other mixture). Activity, thus, encompasses resulting therapeutic effects and pharmaceutical activity of such compounds, compositions and mixtures. Activities can be observed in *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* systems designed to test or use such activities.

As used herein, a vaccine refers to a composition which, upon administration to a subject, elicits an immune response in a subject to which it is administered and which protects the immunized subject against subsequent challenge by the

- 47 -

immunizing agent or an immunologically cross-reactive agent. A vaccine can be used to enhance the immune response against a pathogen, such as a virus, that expresses the immunological agent and/or has already infected the subject. Protection can be complete or partial (*i.e.*, a reduction in symptoms or infection as compared with an unvaccinated subject). Typically a vaccine is administered to a subject that is a mammal. An immunologically cross-reactive agent can be, for example, the whole protein (*e.g.*, tumor antigen) from which a subunit peptide used as the immunogen is derived. Alternatively, an immunologically cross-reactive agent can be a different protein which is recognized in whole or in part by the antibodies elicited by the immunizing agent. Exemplary vaccines can be modified vaccinia viruses that express an immunologically cross-reactive agent.

As used herein, a "pharmaceutically acceptable carrier" refers to any carrier, diluent, excipient, wetting agent, buffering agent, suspending agent, lubricating agent, adjuvant, solid binder, vehicle, delivery system, emulsifier, disintegrant, absorbent, preservative, surfactant, colorant, flavorant, or sweetener, preferably non-toxic, that are suitable for use in a pharmaceutical composition.

As used herein, complex refers generally to an association between two or more species regardless of the nature of the interaction between the species (*i.e.*, ionic, covalent, or electrostatic).

As used herein, "a combination" refers to any association between two or among more items or elements. Exemplary combinations include, but are not limited to, two or more pharmaceutical compositions, a composition containing two or more active ingredients, such as two viruses, or a virus and a chemotherapeutic compound, two or more viruses, a virus and a therapeutic agent, a virus and an imaging agent, a virus and a plurality therapeutic and/or imaging agents, or any association thereof. Such combinations can be packaged as kits.

As used herein, a composition refers to any mixture. It can be a solution, a suspension, an emulsion, liquid, powder, a paste, aqueous, non-aqueous or any combination of such ingredients.



- 48 -

As used herein, fluid refers to any composition that can flow. Fluids thus encompass compositions that are in the form of semi-solids, pastes, solutions, aqueous mixtures, gels, lotions, creams and other such compositions.

As used herein, a kit is a packaged combination, optionally, including  
5 instructions for use of the combination and/or other reactions and components for such use.

For clarity of disclosure, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description is divided into the subsections that follow.

## **B. VIRUSES FOR TREATMENT AND DIAGNOSIS**

10 Provided herein are viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use. Also provided elsewhere herein are methods for making and using such viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use. The viruses provided herein are typically attenuated. Attenuated viruses have a decreased capacity to cause disease in a host. The decreased capacity  
15 can result from any of a variety of different modifications to the ability of a virus to be pathogenic. For example, a virus can have reduced toxicity, reduced ability to accumulate in non-tumorous organs or tissue, reduced ability to cause cell lysis or cell death, or reduced ability to replicate compared to the non-attenuated form thereof. The attenuated viruses provided herein, however, retain at least some capacity to replicate and to cause immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells to leak  
20 or lyse, undergo cell death, or otherwise cause or enhance an immune response to immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells. Such characteristics of the viruses provided are described in detail elsewhere herein.

The viruses provided herein can accumulate in immunoprivileged cells or immunoprivileged tissues, including tumors and/or metastases, and also including  
25 wounded tissues and cells. While the viruses provided herein can typically be cleared from the subject to whom the viruses are administered by activity of the subject's immune system, viruses can nevertheless accumulate, survive and proliferate in immunoprivileged cells and tissues such as tumors because such immunoprivileged areas are sequestered from the host's immune system. Accordingly, the methods  
30 provided herein, as applied to tumors and/or metastases, and therapeutic methods

- 49 -

relating thereto, can readily be applied to other immunoprivileged cells and tissues, including wounded cells and tissues.

Among the viruses provided herein are cytoplasmic viruses, which do not require entry of viral nucleic acid molecules in to the nucleus of the host cell during the viral life cycle. Exemplary cytoplasmic viruses provided herein are viruses of the poxvirus family, including orthopoxviruses. Exemplary of poxviruses provided herein are vaccinia viruses. Vaccinia virus possesses a variety of features for use in cancer gene therapy and vaccination, including broad host and cell type range, a large carrying capacity for foreign genes and high sequence homology among different strains for designing and generating modified viruses in other strains. Techniques for production of modified vaccinia strains by genetic engineering are well established (Moss (1993) *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 3: 86-90; Broder and Earl (1999) *Mol. Biotechnol.* 13: 223-245; Timiryasova *et al.* (2001) *Biotechniques* 31: 534-540). A variety of vaccinia virus strains are available, including Western Reserve (WR), Copenhagen, Tashkent, Tian Tan, Lister, Wyeth, IHD-J, and IHD-W, Brighton, Ankara, MVA, Dairen I, LIPV, LC16M8, LC16MO, LIVP, WR 65-16, Connaught, New York City Board of Health. Exemplary of vaccinia viruses provided herein are Lister strain or LIVP vaccinia viruses.

The viruses provided herein are modified from their wild type form. Modifications can include any of a variety of changes, and include changes to the genome of the virus. Exemplary nucleic acid modifications include truncations, insertions, deletions and mutations. In an exemplary modification, a viral gene can be modified by truncation, insertion, deletion or mutation. Modifications of the viruses provided herein can result in a modification of virus characteristics, including those provided herein such as pathogenicity, toxicity, ability to preferentially accumulate in tumor, ability to lyse cells or cause cell death, ability to elicit an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenicity and replication competence.

Provided herein are vaccinia viruses with insertions, mutations or deletions, as provided in the Examples and described elsewhere herein. Exemplary insertions, mutations or deletions are those that result in an attenuated vaccinia virus relative to the wild type strain. For example, vaccinia virus insertions, mutations or deletions

- 50 -

can decrease pathogenicity of the vaccinia virus, for example, by reducing the toxicity, reducing the infectivity, reducing the ability to replicate, or reducing the number of non-tumor organs or tissues to which the vaccinia virus can accumulate. Other exemplary insertions, mutations or deletions include, but are not limited to, those that increase antigenicity of the virus, those that permit detection or imaging, those that alter attenuation of the virus, and those that alter infectivity. Modifications can be made, for example, in genes that are involved in nucleotide metabolism, host interactions and virus formation.

Any of a variety of insertions, mutations or deletions of the vaccinia virus known in the art can be used herein, including insertions, mutations or deletions of: the thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene, the hemagglutinin (*HA*) gene, and *F14.5L* gene, among others provided elsewhere herein. The vaccinia viruses provided herein also can contain two or more insertions, mutations or deletions. Thus, included are vaccinia viruses containing two or more insertions, mutations or deletions of the loci provided herein or other loci known in the art.

Viruses provided herein can contain one or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules inserted into the genome of the virus. A heterologous nucleic acid molecule can contain an open reading frame or can be a non-coding sequence. In some cases, the heterologous nucleic acid replaces all or a portion of a viral gene. The viral gene can be replaced with homologous gene from another virus or a different gene. For example, vaccinia viruses provided herein can be modified by replacement of the *A34R* gene with another *A34R* gene from a different strain in order to increase the EEV form of the virus. In one example, the *A34R* gene from the Lister strain of vaccinia can be replaced with *A34R* gene from the IHD-J strain of vaccinia virus (see, *e.g.*, Examples 1, 2; strain GLV-1i69).

The heterologous nucleic acid can be operably linked to a promoter for expression of an open reading frame. A heterologous nucleic acid that is operably linked to a promoter is also called an expression cassette. Hence, viruses provided herein can have the ability to express one or more heterologous genes. Gene expression can include expression of a protein encoded by a gene and/or expression of an RNA molecule encoded by a gene. In some embodiments, the viruses provided

- 51 -

herein can express exogenous genes at levels high enough that permit harvesting products of the exogenous genes from the tumor. Expression of heterologous genes can be controlled by a constitutive promoter, or by an inducible promoter. Exogenous genes expressed can include genes encoding a therapeutic gene product, genes  
5 encoding a detectable gene product such as a gene product that can be used for imaging, genes encoding a gene product to be harvested, genes encoding an antigen for tumor therapy or for antibody to be harvested (*e.g.*, vaccination). The viruses provided herein can be used for expressing genes *in vivo* and *in vitro*.

The heterologous gene expressed by the viruses provided herein can be  
10 controlled by a regulatory sequence. Suitable regulatory sequences which, for example, are functional in a mammalian host cell are well known in the art. In one example, the regulatory sequence can contain a natural or synthetic promoter. In another embodiment, the regulatory sequence contains a poxvirus promoter, such as a vaccinia virus promoter. Strong late promoters can be used to achieve high levels of  
15 expression of the foreign genes. Early and intermediate-stage promoters can also be used. In one embodiment, the promoters contain early and late promoter elements, for example, the vaccinia virus early/late promoter P7.5k, vaccinia late promoter P11k, a synthetic early/late vaccinia PSEL promoter (Patel *et al.*, (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 9431-9435; Davison and Moss, (1989) *J Mol Biol* 210: 749-769; Davison *et al.* (1990) *Nucleic Acids Res.* 18: 4285-4286; Chakrabarti *et al.* (1997),  
20 *BioTechniques* 23: 1094-1097). As described in the Examples and elsewhere herein, the viruses provided can exhibit differences in characteristics, such as attenuation, as a result of using a stronger promoter versus a weaker promoter. For example, in vaccinia, synthetic early/late and late promoters are relatively strong promoters,  
25 whereas vaccinia synthetic early, P7.5k early/late, P7.5k early, and P28 late promoters are relatively weaker promoters (see *e.g.*, Chakrabarti *et al.* (1997) *BioTechniques* 23(6) 1094-1097).

The viruses provided herein can express one or more genes whose products are useful for tumor therapy. For example, a virus can express a proteins cause cell  
30 death or whose products cause an anti-tumor immune response. Such genes can be considered therapeutic genes. A variety of therapeutic gene products, such as toxic or

- 52 -

apoptotic proteins, or siRNA, are known in the art, and can be used with the viruses provided herein. The therapeutic genes can act by directly killing the host cell, for example, as a channel-forming or other lytic protein, or by triggering apoptosis, or by inhibiting essential cellular processes, or by triggering an immune response against the cell, or by interacting with a compound that has a similar effect, for example, by converting a less active compound to a cytotoxic compound. Exemplary proteins useful for tumor therapy include, but are not limited to, tumor suppressors, toxins, cytostatic proteins, and costimulatory molecules, such as cytokines and chemokines among others provided elsewhere herein and known in the art.

10           The viruses provided herein can be based on modifications to the Lister strain of vaccinia virus (*e.g.*, L1VP). The modifications of the Lister strain provided herein can also be adapted to other vaccinia viruses (*e.g.*, Western Reserve (WR), Copenhagen, Tashkent, Tian Tan, Lister, Wyeth, IHD-J, and IHD-W, Brighton, Ankara, MVA, Dairen I, L1PV, LC16M8, LC16MO, L1VP, WR 65-16, Connaught, New York City Board of Health). The modifications of the Lister strain provided  
15           herein can also be adapted to other viruses, including, but not limited to, viruses of the poxvirus family, adenoviruses, herpes viruses and retroviruses.

Exemplary vaccinia viruses provided herein were derived from vaccinia virus strain GLV-1h68 (also named RVGL21, SEQ ID NO: 1). GLV-1h68, which has been  
20           described in U.S. Pat. Pub. No. 2005-0031643, contains DNA insertions gene loci of the vaccinia virus L1VP strain (a vaccinia virus strain, originally derived by adapting the Lister strain (ATCC Catalog No. VR-1549) to calf skin (Institute of Viral Preparations, Moscow, Russia, Al'tshtein *et al.*, (1983) Dokl. Akad. Nauk USSR 285:696-699)). GLV-1h68 contains expression cassettes encoding detectable marker  
25           proteins in the *F14.5L* (also designated in L1VP as *F3*) gene locus, thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene locus, and hemagglutinin (*HA*) gene locus. An expression cassette containing a *Ruc-GFP* cDNA molecule (a fusion of DNA encoding *Renilla* luciferase and DNA encoding GFP) under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$  ( $(P_{SEL})Ruc-GFP$ ) was inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus; an expression cassette  
30           containing a DNA molecule encoding beta-galactosidase under the control of the vaccinia early/late promoter  $P_{7.5k}$  ( $(P_{7.5k})LacZ$ ) and DNA encoding a rat transferrin

- 53 -

receptor positioned in the reverse orientation for transcription relative to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$  ( $(P_{SEL})rTrfR$ ) was inserted into the *TK* gene locus (the resulting virus does not express transferrin receptor protein since the DNA molecule encoding the protein is positioned in the reverse orientation for transcription relative to the promoter in the cassette); and an expression cassette containing a DNA molecule encoding  $\beta$ -glucuronidase under the control of the vaccinia late promoter  $P_{11k}$  ( $(P_{11k})gusA$ ) was inserted into the *HA* gene locus.

#### 1. Viruses with altered infectivity

Provided herein are modifications of vaccinia viruses that alter the ability of the viruses to infect and replicate within tumors. Infectivity can be enhanced by modification of viral coat proteins that are involved in cellular infection or are targeted by the host immune system. Coat proteins, such as that A34R protein, affect sensitivity of the virus to complement and/or antibody neutralization.. Exemplary modifications in coat proteins include mutations or replacement of viral coat proteins, which can increase production of resistant viral forms in by host cell. Also provided herein are modifications that increase or decrease the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus. Exemplary modifications include insertion and/or deletion of gene expression cassettes or replacement of genes with non-coding heterologous nucleic acid, which increase or decrease the number of transcriptional/translational units carried by the virus.

##### a. Viruses with modified viral proteins

##### i. Increase in the Vaccinia EEV form by replacement of A34R

Vaccinia virus replicates in cells and produces both intracellular virus (IMV, intracellular mature virus; IEV, intracellular enveloped virus) and extracellular virus (EEV, extracellular enveloped virus; CEV, cell-associated extracellular virus) (Smith *et al.* (1998) *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 440: 395-414). IMV represents approximately 99% of virus yield following replication by wild-type vaccinia virus strains. The IMV virus form is relatively stable in the outside environment, and is primarily responsible for spread between individuals; however, IMV virus does not spread efficiently within the infected host due to inefficient release from cells and sensitivity to complement and/or antibody neutralization. By contrast, the EEV form is released into the

- 54 -

extracellular milieu and typically represents only approximately 1% of the viral yield (Smith *et al.* (1998) *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 440: 395-414). EEV is responsible for viral spread within the infected host and is relatively easily degraded outside of the host. In addition, the EEV form has developed several mechanisms to inhibit its neutralization within the bloodstream. EEV is relatively resistant to complement (Vanderplasschen *et al.* (1998) *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 95(13): 7544-9) due to the incorporation of host cell inhibitors of complement into its outer membrane coat and secretion of vaccinia virus complement control protein (VCP) into local extracellular environment. In addition, EEV is relatively resistant to neutralizing antibody effects compared to IMV (Smith *et al.* (1997) *Immunol Rev.* 159: 137-54; Vanderplasschen *et al.* (1997) *J Gen Virol.* 78 ( Pt 8): 2041-8). EEV is released at earlier time points following infection (*e.g.*, 4-6 hours) than is IMV (which is only released during/after cell death), and therefore, spread of the EEV form is faster (Blasco *et al.* (1993) *J Virol.* 67(6):3319-25).

The EEV form of vaccinia virus has naturally acquired features for rapid and efficient spread through solid tumors locally and to regional or distant tumor sites. Since EEV is relatively resistant to complement effects and to antibody-mediated neutralization, when it is grown in a cell type from the same species, this virus form will have enhanced stability and retain activity longer in the blood following intravascular administration (Smith *et al.* (1998) *Adv Exp Med Biol.* 440: 395-414; Vanderplasschen *et al.*, (1998) *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* (13):7544-9). This is particularly important for repeat administration once neutralizing antibody levels have increased and anti-cancer therapies require repeat administration. Therefore, increasing the the EEV form of vaccinia, and other poxviruses, results in enhanced systemic efficacy. Polypeptides involved in the modulation of the EEV form of a povirus include, but are not limited to, A34R and B5R. A mutation at codon 151 of A34R from a lysine to an aspartic acid K151D mutation renders the A34R protein less able to tether the EEV form to the cell membrane. B5R is an EEV-membrane bound polypeptide that can bind complement. The total deletion of A43R can lead to increased EEV release, but markedly reduced infectivity of the viruses, while the

- 55 -

K151D mutation increases EEV release while maintaining infectivity of the released viruses.

The ability of vaccinia viruses provided herein to infect and replicate within tumors can be enhanced by increasing the extracellular enveloped form of the virus (EEV). The methods provided herein for modulating the attenuation of a virus can be combined with any known method for increasing the EEV form of the virus. For example, vaccinia viruses provided herein can be modified by replacement of the *A34R* gene with another *A34R* gene from a different strain. In one example, the *A34R* gene from the Lister strain of vaccinia can be replaced with *A34R* gene from the IHD-J strain of vaccinia virus (see *e.g.*, Examples 1, 2; strain GLV-1i69). *A34R* gene from the IHD-J strain contains a mutation that increases the percentage of EEV form of the virus. In another example, the *A34R* gene of the vaccinia viruses provided herein can also be mutated to increase the amount of EEV particles released.

#### ii. Deletion of A35R

Modification of viral proteins can also be employed to attenuate the viruses. Deletion of genes encoding viral proteins, such as A35R, can decrease the toxicity of vaccinia strains (Roper, R.L. (2006) *J. Virol.* 80(1) 306-313). The *A35R* deletion can attenuate toxicity of the virus when injected into mice without affecting viral properties, such as viral plaque size, viral replication, host range or viral infectivity/spread. Provided herein are viruses that have the A35R gene deleted (see *e.g.*, Examples 1, 16; strains GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89).

#### b. Viruses with multiple genome insertions and/or deletions

As described in the Examples, viruses provided herein can exhibit differences in characteristics, such as attenuation, as a result of inserting one or more expression cassettes into the viral genome, removing one or more expression cassettes from the viral genome, or replacing one or more expression cassettes in the viral genome. For example, a decrease in attenuation was observed when one or more expression cassettes was removed from a viral genome, such as the viral genome of the recombinant vaccinia L1VP strain GLV-1h68. In some examples, vaccinia viruses provided herein can have one or more expression cassettes removed from a virus and replaced with a heterologous non-coding nucleic acid molecule (see, *e.g.*, strains



- 56 -

GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h85, and GLV-1h86). In other examples, vaccinia viruses provided herein can have one or more expression cassettes removed from a virus and replaced with a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that encodes a polypeptide (see, *e.g.*, strains GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109).

Vaccinia viruses are provided herein that differ in the level of attenuation exhibited by the virus *in vivo* and *in vitro*. As described in the Examples and elsewhere herein, the level of attenuation was modified by altering the number of expression cassettes contained in the virus or by modifying one or more expression cassettes contained in the virus by removal or replacement. Such modifications can increase or decrease the transcriptional or translation load on the virus, resulting in an altered level of attenuation.

Vaccinia viruses provided herein can have one or more expression cassettes removed from GLV-1h68 and replaced with a heterologous non-coding DNA molecule. Exemplary viruses provided include GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h85, and GLV-1h86. GLV-1h70 contains ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP* inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus, ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR* and ( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* inserted into the *TK* gene locus, and a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *HA* gene locus in place of ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. GLV-1h71 contains a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus in place of ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR* and ( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* inserted into the *TK* gene locus, and ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA* inserted into the *HA* gene locus. GLV-1h72 contains ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP* inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus, a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *TK* gene locus in place of ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR* and ( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*, and  $P_{11k}$ *gusA* inserted into the *HA* gene locus. GLV-1h73 contains a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus in place of ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR* and ( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* inserted into the *TK* gene locus, and a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *HA* gene locus in place of ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. GLV-1h74 contains a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus in place of ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *TK* gene locus in place

- 57 -

of (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR* and (P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, and a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *HA* gene locus in place of (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. GLV-1h85 contains a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus in place of (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*, a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *TK* gene locus in place of (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR* and (P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, and  
5 (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA* inserted into the *HA* gene locus. GLV-1h86 contains (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP* inserted into the *F14.5L* gene locus, a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *TK* gene locus in place of (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR* and (P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, and a non-coding DNA molecule inserted into the *HA* gene locus in place of (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*.

## 2. Viruses that express proteins for tumor imaging

10 The viruses provided herein can express one or more genes whose products are detectable or whose products can provide a detectable signal. A variety of detectable gene products, such as detectable proteins are known in the art, and can be used with the viruses provided herein. Detectable proteins include receptors or other proteins that can specifically bind a detectable compound, proteins that can emit a  
15 detectable signal such as a fluorescence signal, or enzymes that can catalyze a detectable reaction or catalyze formation of a detectable product.

A variety of DNA sequences encoding proteins that can emit a detectable signal or that can catalyze a detectable reaction, such as luminescent or fluorescent proteins, are known and can be used in the virus and methods provided herein.  
20 Exemplary detectable gene products are described else where herein and include, but are not limited to firefly luciferase (de Wet *et al.* (1987) *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 7: 725-737), *Renilla* luciferase from *Renilla reniformis* (Lorenz *et al.* (1991) *PNAS USA* 88 : 4438-4442), click beetle luciferase (CBG99; Wood *et al.* (1989) *Science* 244(4905): 700-2), green fluorescent protein from *Aequorea victoria* (Prasher *et al.* (1987) *Gene* 111: 229-233) and red fluorescent from the corallimorph *Discosoma* (Matz *et al.* (1999) *Nature Biotechnology* 17: 969-973). Additional detectable proteins include reporter proteins, such as *E. coli*  $\beta$  galactosidase (*LacZ*),  $\beta$  glucuronidase (*gusA*),  
25 xanthineguanine phosphoribosyltransferase (XGPRT).

In some examples, two or more detectable proteins are fused together to  
30 produce a single polypeptide. Provided herein are viruses that contain a gene

- 58 -

encoding a Renilla luciferase fused to a green fluorescent protein, Ruc-GFP.

Exemplary viruses include, but are not limited to, GLV-1h68, GLV-1i69, GLV-1j87, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h86, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-  
5 1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109. These viruses contain an insertion of an expression cassette into the *F14.5L* gene locus, where the expression cassette encodes Ruc-GFP under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter P<sub>SEL</sub>.

In some examples, two or more detectable proteins are produced from a single  
10 transcript that produces two separate polypeptides during translation. Provided herein are viruses that contain a DNA encoding a click beetle luciferase (CBG99) and monomeric red fluorescent protein (mRFP1) connected through a picornavirus 2A element (e.g., GLV-1h84). During translation, the two proteins are cleaved into two individual proteins at the picornavirus 2A element (Osborn *et al.*, *Mol. Ther.* 12: 569-  
15 74, 2005). GLV-1h84 contains an insertion of an expression cassette into the *F14.5L* gene locus, where the expression cassette encodes Ruc-GFP under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter P<sub>SEL</sub>.

A variety of gene products, such as proteins, that can specifically bind a detectable compound are known in the art, including receptors (e.g., transferrin  
20 receptor), metal binding proteins (e.g., ferritin), ligand binding proteins, and antibodies. Any of a variety of detectable compounds can be used, and can be imaged by any of a variety of known imaging methods. Exemplary compounds include receptor ligands and antigens for antibodies. The ligand can be labeled according to the imaging method to be used. Exemplary imaging methods include any of a variety  
25 magnetic resonance methods, such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), and also include any of a variety of tomographic methods, such as positron emission tomography (PET). An exemplary virus provided herein that expresses a protein that can bind a detectable compound is a vaccinia virus that expresses a ferritin. GLV-1h82 and GLV-1h83 contain an  
30 insertion of an expression cassette into the HA gene locus where the expression cassette encodes a ferritin from *E. coli* under the control of a vaccinia synthetic

- 59 -

early/late promoter P<sub>SEL</sub>. An exemplary virus provided herein that expresses a protein that can bind a detectable compound is a vaccinia virus that expresses a transferrin receptor. GLV-1h82 additionally contains an insertion of an expression cassette into the *TK* gene locus where the expression cassette encodes a transferrin receptor under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter P<sub>SEL</sub>.

### 3. Viruses that express proteins for tumor treatment

Viruses provided herein can express one or more therapeutic gene products. Such proteins can inhibit tumor growth or whose products cause an anti-tumor immune response. Among the vaccinia viruses provided herein are vaccinia viruses that express protein for inhibition of angiogenesis and/or suppression of tumor cell growth. Particular viruses that express therapeutic gene products Lister strain vaccinia viruses. Exemplary Lister strain vaccinia viruses are provided here and described elsewhere herein.

#### a. Proteins for inhibiting angiogenesis

Among the vaccinia viruses provided herein are vaccinia viruses that express protein for inhibition of blood vessel formation. Inhibition of angiogenesis promotes inhibition of tumor growth by inhibiting vascularization of the tumor needed to for the expansion of the tumor mass.

##### i. hk5

In one example, viruses provided herein are modified to express the plasminogen K5 domain. Plasminogen kringle 5 is a potent angiogenesis inhibitor, which has been shown to induce apoptosis of endothelial cells and inhibit their migration. Human plasminogen kringle 5 has also been shown to induce apoptosis of tumor cells (Davidson *et al.* (2005) *Cancer Res.* 65: 4663-4672). Exemplary vaccinia viruses that express the plasminogen K5 domain under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early-late promoter are provided herein and described in further detail in the Examples (*e.g.*, GLV-1h71).

##### ii. tTF-RGD

In one example, viruses provided herein are modified to express a fusion protein containing a truncated human tissue factor protein fused to an RGD peptide (tTF-RGD). The fusion protein binds selectively to tumor vessel endothelial cells

- 60 -

via the RGD petide portion. The tissue factor is able to activate blood clotting once bound to the tumor vessel endothelial cells, which intum inhibits neovascularization of the tumor. Vaccinia viruses provided herein can effect tumor localized expression of tTF-RGD for the inhibiton of tumor vascularization. Exemplary vaccinia viruses  
5 that express tTF-RGD under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early promoter, vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter or vaccinia synthetic late promoter are provided herein and described in further detail in the Examples (*e.g.*, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105 and GLV-1h106).

### iii. anti-VEGF scAb

10 In one example, viruses provided herein are modified to express a fusion protein containing a single chain anti-VEGF antibody fused to an FLAG peptide (G6-FLAG). Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF) functions as a major inducer of angiogenesis. Monoclonal antibodies directed against VEGF can inhibit tumor growth in mice and is effective in inhibiting tumor growth the treatment of cancer  
15 patients. Single-chain Ab fragments (scFvs or scAb) derived from anti-VEGF antibodies are also potent inhibitors of vascularization have been shown to reduce the growth of usbcutaneous tumors in nude mice (Vitaliti *et al.* (2000) *Cancer Research* 60, 4311-4314). Vaccinia viruses provided herein can effect tumor localized expression of scAb VEGF antibodies for the inhibiton of tumor vascularization.  
20 Exemplary vaccinia viruses that express G6-FLAG under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early promoter, vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter or vaccinia synthetic late promoter are provided herein and described in further detail in the Examples (*e.g.*, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109).

### c. Proteins for tumor growth suppression

#### 25 i. sIL-6R-IL-6

In one example, viruses provided herein are modified to express a fusion protein containing an IL-6 fused to an IL-6 receptor (sIL-6R/IL-6). The sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion polypeptide is an effective in suppressor of tumor cell growth (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Nos. 7,112,436; U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 2007-0172455; Özbek *et al.*  
30 (2001) *Oncogene* 20(8): 972-979). Vaccinia viruses provided herein can effect tumor localized expression of sIL-6R-IL-6 for the inhibiton of tumor cell growth.

- 61 -

Exemplary vaccinia viruses that express sIL-6R-IL-6 under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early promoter, vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter or vaccinia synthetic late promoter are provided herein and described in further detail in the Examples (*e.g.*, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91 and GLV-1h92).

5

**ii. IL-24**

In one example, viruses provided herein are modified to express interleukin-24 (IL-24). IL-24, also called, mda-7 or melanoma differentiation gene is a potent inhibitor of tumor cell growth (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 5,710,137 and U.S. Patent Application Serial No. 2006-0134801). Vaccinia viruses provided herein can effect tumor localized expression of IL-24 for the inhibition of tumor cell growth.

10

Exemplary vaccinia viruses that express IL-24 under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early promoter, vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter or vaccinia synthetic late promoter are provided herein and described in further detail in the Examples (*e.g.*, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97 and GLV-1h98).

15

**4. Viruses that express proteins for combined tumor diagnosis and treatment**

Provided herein are viruses that express a detectable protein and therapeutic protein. For example, viruses provided herein can express a detectable protein, such as Ruc-GFP fusion protein, and therapeutic protein, such as protein for tumor therapy. Exemplary tumor therapeutic proteins expressed by viruses provided herein included, but are not limited to, proteins that stimulate the host immune response (*e.g.*, IL-6 and IL-24) and a proteins that inhibit angiogenesis (*e.g.*, tTF-RGD and anti-VEGF Abs). In some examples the detectable protein is Ruc-GFP and the therapeutic protein is sIL-6R-IL-6 fusion protein (*e.g.*, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91 and GLV-1h92). In other examples, the detectable protein is Ruc-GFP and the therapeutic protein is IL-24 (*e.g.*, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97 and GLV-1h98). In other examples, the detectable protein is Ruc-GFP and the therapeutic protein is tTF-RGD fusion protein (*e.g.*, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105 and GLV-1h106). In other examples, the detectable protein is Ruc-GFP and the therapeutic protein is anti-VEGF scAb (G6)-FLAG fusion protein (*e.g.*, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h109 and GLV-1h109).

30

- 62 -

Viruses that express both a detectable protein and therapeutic protein can be used to detect and treat tumors. Such viruses can also be employed to monitor tumor growth/regression over the course of treatment, to monitor the efficacy of a particular tumor treatment regimen or to monitor the efficacy of combinations of tumor  
5 treatments. The viruses can be modified express two or more therapeutic proteins to assess the efficacy of a combination of therapies.

### C. METHODS FOR MODULATING VIRUS ATTENUATION

Provided herein are viruses, and methods for making and using such viruses for therapeutic and diagnostic use. The methods provided herein include modulating  
10 the level of attenuation of a virus. The methods and examples provided herein illustrate that attenuation can be modified by increasing or decreasing the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus. For example, increasing the number of genes that the virus expresses can cause competition for viral transcription and/or translation factors, which can result in changes in expression of endogenous  
15 viral genes. Such changes can affect viral processes involved in viral replication, thus contributing to the attenuation of the virus. For example, viral processes, such as viral DNA replication, transcription of other viral genes, viral mRNA production, viral protein synthesis, or virus particle assembly and maturation, can be affected. Insertion of gene expression cassettes that require binding of host factors for efficient  
20 transcription can be used to compete the transcription and/or translation factors away from the endogenous viral promoters and transcripts. For example, insertion of gene expression cassettes that contain vaccinia strong late promoters into vaccinia virus can be used to attenuate expression of endogenous vaccinia late genes.

Previous methods of altering attenuation of a virus that do not eliminate viral  
25 gene expression have relied on modifications of the native viral gene promoter or enhancer regions to decrease expression of a particular viral gene. In adenovirus, for example, decreasing the gene expression of a selected gene region, the E4 transcription unit, has been shown to decrease viral replication (Fang *et al.* (1997) *J. Virol.* 71(6):4798-4803). Replacement of the promoter for the E4 transcription unit,  
30 which encodes several different proteins involved in DNA replication, late-gene expression, and host gene shutoff, with a synthetic GAL4-responsive promoter led to

- 63 -

an attenuation of the virus. Other studies in simian immunodeficiency virus (SIV) have shown that exchange of the promoter enhancer region with that of cytomegalovirus immediate early promoter (CMV-IE) resulted in an attenuated virus (Blancou *et al.* (2004) *J. Virol.* 78(3) 1080-1092). Modifying the attenuation in this system, however, is limited, since the options for replacement of the promoter region are reduced to a single promoter or promoters that maintain the proper timing of expression of the viral gene. Inducible promoters can be employed for gene expression; however, depending on the inducible system chosen, the expression of the essential gene(s) *in vivo* requires administration of the inducing agent to the host, which could be toxic. Furthermore, in order to achieve greater levels of attenuation of the virus, additional genes need to be selected for modification either by mutation or promoter replacement. Hence, adjusting the level of attenuation in such a system is difficult without modifying additional viral genes. Selection of proper combination of genes for modification is time-consuming and requires extensive experimentation. For example, selection of additional genes for promoter replacement requires that the decreased expression of a particular gene is known to affect attenuation of the virus. In the absence of experimentation, the attenuating effect of decreased expression is difficult to predict.

Provided herein are methods to attenuate a virus without the need to select for individual viral genes to be modified. One of the advantages to the methods provided herein is that attenuation of the virus does not require selecting various combinations of viral genes to be tested in order to achieve a desired level of attenuation. Instead, the methods provide a predictable and systematic way of attenuating a virus by generating incremental decreases in viral gene expression by insertion of one or more gene expression cassettes that increase the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus. Therefore, the methods provide a way to alter viral gene expression without the need to select specific viral genes for modification.

The methods provided herein can be used to increase or decrease the attenuation of a virus. In some embodiments, it can be desirable to generate a more attenuated virus. A more attenuated virus can be less toxic to the host or be more suitable for particular routes of administration (*e.g.*, systemic versus intratumoral). In



- 64 -

other embodiments, it can be desirable to generate a less attenuated virus. A less attenuated virus can be more therapeutically effective (e.g., cause more tumor cell death) or be more suitable for particular routes of administration.

Any virus can be modified in accordance with the methods provided herein to  
5 modulate attenuation, including but not limited to poxviruses, herpesviruses, adenoviruses, adeno-associated viruses, lentiviruses, retroviruses, rhabdoviruses, papillomaviruses, vesicular stomatitis virus, measles virus, Newcastle disease virus, picornavirus, sindbis virus, papillomavirus, parvovirus s, reovirus, coxsackievirus, influenza virus, mumps virus, poliovirus, and semliki forest virus. In a particular  
10 embodiment, the virus that is modified is a vaccinia virus. Methods for the generation of recombinant viruses using recombinant DNA techniques are well known in the art (e.g., see U.S. Pat. No. 4,769,330, 4,603,112, 4,722,848, 4,215,051, 5,110,587, 5,174,993, 5,922,576, 6,319,703, 5,719,054, 6,429,001, 6,589,531, 6,573,090, 6,800,288, 7,045,313, He *et al.* (1998) *PNAS U S A.* 95(5): 2509-2514. Racaniello *et al.*, (1981) *Science* 214: 916-919). Methods for the generation of recombinant  
15 vaccinia viruses for the methods can also be found in the Examples provided herein.

The methods provided herein include selection of attenuated viruses for therapy and diagnosis. Exemplary uses for the viruses provided herein or generated by the methods provided herein include, but are not limited to therapy and diagnosis  
20 of conditions, such as neoplastic disease and other proliferative disorders and inflammatory disorders. The virus mediated treatment methods provided herein include administration of viruses to hosts and accumulation of the viruses in the targeted cell or tissue, such as in a tumor which can result in lysing of the tumor cells or leaking of tumor antigens, whereby an immune response against released or leaked  
25 antigens is mounted. As a result, the tissues or cells in which the virus accumulates are inhibited.

In addition to the gene therapeutic methods of cancer treatment, live attenuated viruses can be used for vaccination, such as in cancer vaccination or antitumor immunity. Immunization, for example, against a tumor can include a  
30 tumor-specific T-cell-mediated response through virally-delivered antigens or cytokines. To do so, the viruses can be specifically targeted to the tumor tissues, with

- 65 -

minimal infection to any other key organs and also can be modified or provided to produce the antigens and/or cytokines.

**1. Expression cassettes for modulation of attenuation**

Provided herein are methods for modulating the level of attenuation of a virus by increasing or decreasing the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus. According to the methods provided, attenuation can be modified by insertion, removal and/or modification of heterologous DNA molecules in the viral genome. The methods provided herein for modulating the level of attenuation include insertion of one or more heterologous gene expression cassettes, deletion of one or more gene expression cassettes, or modification one or more existing gene expression cassettes.

**a. Characteristics of an expression cassette**

The heterologous DNA molecules for use in the methods provided are generally in the form of gene expression cassettes that contain a promoter operably linked to an open reading frame. For the methods provided herein, the open reading frame typically encodes a non-therapeutic gene, such as detectable protein, a protein capable of producing a detectable signal or other protein that does not produce a therapeutic effect. Exemplary non-therapeutic proteins include, but are not limited to, proteins such as luciferases, fluorescent, or other detectable proteins as described elsewhere herein.

Although the methods provided herein for attenuation of a virus typically use an expression cassette that encodes a non-therapeutic protein, the use of a gene expression cassette that encodes a therapeutic protein is not excluded. For example, an expression cassette that encodes a therapeutic protein can be employed to enhance the attenuating effects of the expression cassette or to provide a therapeutic effect for treatment of a disease or condition.

In some embodiments, the expression cassette is transcribed by the virus, but is not translated. Such cassettes can be employed to provide transcriptional load on the virus. For example, expression cassettes can contain genes that do not encode a polypeptide (*e.g.*, tRNA, rRNA, siRNA). In other examples, expression cassettes contain genes that are in the opposite orientation of the promoter. Hence, expression of such cassettes produces an RNA transcript that is not translated. Alternatively, the

- 66 -

expression cassette does not produce a transcript but still can attenuate viral transcription by binding to viral transcription factors.

In some alternative embodiments the expression cassette can contain an open reading frame but lack a promoter. For example, an expression cassette containing an open reading frame can be inserted into the viral genome and be transcribed from an endogenous viral promoter or translated as part of a longer polypeptide. Exemplary of such insertions are insertions into positive strand RNA viral genomes where several genes are translated into a single polypeptide. Insertion of an open reading frame in a positive strand RNA virus increases the number of genes that are translated and thus increases the length of the polypeptide that is translated. As a result, there can be increased load on the viral translation machinery, leading to an attenuation of the virus. In another example, an open reading frame can be inserted into a negative strand RNA virus, such as vesicular stomatitis virus (VSV), which transcribes long mRNA transcripts encoding several genes. Insertion of an open reading frame in a negative strand RNA virus increases the number of genes that are transcribed and thus increases the length of the transcript and the number of genes that can be translated. As a result there can be increased load on the viral transcription and translation machinery. Positioning of an inserted open reading frame within a VSV genome also has been shown to affect the level of attenuation of the virus (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,777,220). One or more open reading frames can thus be positioned within the viral genome to generate the desired level of attenuation.

**i. Expression cassette promoters**

Competition of promoters for transcription factors as a mechanism of controlling gene expression that has been observed in studies of both endogenous and transient eukaryotic transcription and viral transcription (see *e.g.*, Raju *et al.* (1991) *J. Virol.* 65(5) 2501-2510; Latchman *et al.* (1989) *Nucl. Acids Res.* 17(21) 8533-8541; Hsue and Masters (1999) *J. Virol.* 73(7): 6128-6135; Foley *et al.* (1992) *Genes & Dev.* 6:730-744; Keegan *et al.*, (1986) *Science* 231:699-704). For the methods provided herein, promoter competition that involves competition for transcription factors can be for either viral or host proteins that contribute to viral replication and production of viral particles.

- 67 -

Exemplary promoters useful in the methods provided herein include any promoter useful for driving the expression of the open reading frame of the expression cassette. The promoters can be any eukaryotic or viral promoter that functions within the cell to be infected. Choice of a promoter for the use in an expression cassette

5 depends on a variety of factors, including, for example, the characteristics of the virus (*i.e.*, cytoplasmic or nuclear, RNA or DNA, segmented or non-segmented, positive sense or negative sense genome), the timing of expression desired, and the strength of expression desired. For example, vaccinia viruses, which are cytoplasmic DNA viruses, employ promoters that are active in the cytoplasm of the infected cell. Such

10 promoters typically use mostly viral factors for DNA replication and transcription, though some host factors, such as YY1 and TBP, are transported from the nucleus to the cytoplasm to aid in viral replication (see *e.g.*, Davison and Moss (1989) *J. Mol. Biol.* 210: 749-769; Davison and Moss (1989) *J. Mol. Biol.* 210: 771-784; Weir and Moss (1987) *J. Virol.* 61(1): 75-80; Broyles *et al.* (1999) *J. Biol. Chem.* 274(50)

15 35662-35667 ; Broyles (2003) *J. Gen. Virol.* 84:2293-2903 ; Knutson *et al.* (2006) *J. Virol.* 80 (14) 6784-6793). Hence, promoters for use in an expression cassette for modulating the attenuation of a vaccinia virus include, but are not limited to, vaccinia and other poxviruses' (*e.g.* cowpox, ectromelia, monkeypox, camelpox, variola, canarypox, fowlpox, myxoma, rabbit fibroma, goatpox, sheeppox, sealpox, swinepox,

20 tanapox, yaba monkey tumor, and molluscum contagiosum) natural promoters and synthetic promoters. Exemplary vaccinia natural promoters include, but are not limited to, 7.5K, H5R, TK, P28, P11k, C11R, G8R, F17R, I3L, I8R, A1L, A2L, A3L, H1L, H3L, H5L, H6R, H8R, D1R, D4R, D5R, D9R, D11L, D12L, D13L, M1L, N2L, P4b or K1L. Another non-limiting exemplary poxvirus natural promoter includes

25 cowpox ATI (A-type inclusion body). Exemplary vaccinia synthetic promoters include, but are not limited to, a synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>), a synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>), a synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>) and chimeric promoters between early and late poxviral promoters (see *e.g.*, Chakrabarti *et al.* (1997) *BioTechniques* 23(6) 1094-1097; Patel *et al.*, (1988) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85, 9431-9435;

30 Davison and Moss (1990) *Nuc. Acids Res.* 18(14): 4285-4286; Hammond *et al.* (1997) *J. Virol. Meth.* 66: 135-138; Kumar and Boyle (1990) *Virology* 179: 151-158).

- 68 -

Davison and Moss (1989) *J. Mol. Biol.* 210: 749-769; Davison and Moss (1989) *J. Mol. Biol.* 210: 771-784; Baldick *et al.* (1992) *J. Virol.* 66: 4710-4719.).

In some embodiments, it can be desirable to choose promoters provided expressed at a particular time points in the viral life cycle. For example, promoters  
5 useful in the methods provided herein for modulating the attenuation of a virus, such as a vaccinia virus, can be an early promoter, an intermediate promoter, or late promoter. In other embodiments it can be useful to use a promoter that is active throughout the viral life cycle. Exemplary promoters in vaccinia virus that are expressed throughout the life cycle include tandem arrangements of vaccinia early  
10 and intermediate or late promoters (see *e.g.* Wittek *et al.* (1980) *Cell* 21: 487-493; Broyles and Moss (1986) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 83: 3141-3145; Ahn *et al.* (1990) *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 10: 5433-5444; Broyles and Pennington (1990) *J. Virol.* 64: 5376-5382). An exemplary vaccinia early promoter is a synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>), which typically initiate gene expression from 0-3 hours post infection.  
15 Exemplary vaccinia late promoters include, but are not limited to, a vaccinia *l1k* promoter (P<sub>11k</sub>) and a synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>), which typically initiate gene expression 2-3 hours post-infection. Exemplary vaccinia early/late promoters that express throughout the vaccinia life cycle include, but are not limited to, a 7.5K promoter (P<sub>7.5k</sub>) and a synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>).

20 In some embodiments, it can be desirable to choose a promoter of a particular relative strength. Hence, promoter potency can be used to influence the degree of competition between the inserted heterologous expression cassettes and endogenous genes. For example, in vaccinia, synthetic early/late P<sub>SEL</sub> and many late promoters (*e.g.*, P<sub>11k</sub> and P<sub>SL</sub>) are relatively strong promoters, whereas vaccinia synthetic early,  
25 P<sub>SE</sub>, P<sub>7.5k</sub> early/late, P<sub>7.5k</sub> early, and P<sub>28</sub> late promoters are relatively weaker promoters (see *e.g.*, Chakrabarti *et al.* (1997) *BioTechniques* 23(6) 1094-1097). In some embodiments, a stronger promoter is employed in an expression cassette to provide better competition for viral factors and thus generate a more attenuated virus. In other  
30 embodiments, a weaker promoter is employed in an expression cassette to provide a less attenuating effect. In some embodiments, where more than one heterologous expression cassette is inserted into a viral genome, combinations of promoters that

## ii. Insertion sites for expression cassettes

region or in a coding region for a gene that is nonessential for viral replication. For example, in vaccinia virus, sites for insertions of heterologous DNA molecules can be in intergenic regions, non-coding regions, and or nonessential genes or gene regions including, but not limited to, thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene, hemagglutinin (*HA*) gene, *F14.5L* (see, e.g., U.S. Patent Pub. No. 2005-0031643), *VGF* gene (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. Pub. No. 2003-0031681), *Hind III F*, *F13L*, or *Hind III M* (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. No. 6,548,068); a hemorrhagic region or an A type inclusion body region (ATI) (see, e.g., U.S. Pat. Nos. 6,265,189 and 6,596,279); *A33R*, *A34R*, *A36R* or *B5R* genes (see, e.g., Katz *et al.*, (2003) *J. Virology* 77:12266-12275); *SalF7L* (see, e.g., Moore *et al.*, (1992) *EMBO J.* 11:1973-1980); *N1L* (see, e.g., Kotwal *et al.* (1989) *Virology* 171:579-587); *M1 lambda* (see, e.g., Child *et al.* (1990) *Virology*. 174:625-629); *HR*, *HindIII-MK*, *HindIII-MKF*, *HindIII-CNM*, *RR*, or *BamF* (see, e.g., Lee *et al.* (1992) *J Virol.* 66:2617-2630); *C21L* (see, e.g., Isaacs *et al.* (1992) *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 89:628-632), host range region genes *K1L* and *C7L*, *A35R* (see e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 6,265,189, 7,045,313; U.S. Patent Pub. Nos. 2005-0244428, 2006-0159706; Coupar *et al. J. Gen. Virol.* (2000) 81: 431-439; Smith *et al.* (1993) *Vaccine* 11(1): 43-53). If more than one gene expression cassette is inserted, the insertions can be at the same insertion site or different insertion sites. Alternatively, the heterologous nucleic acid molecules can be inserted into an essential gene, and a cell line for packaging of the virus could be use for the production of the virus.

30 Mutation of nonessential vaccinia genes can also contribute to increased  
attenuation of the virus. Thus, insertion of heterologous expression cassettes into a

- 70 -

nonessential gene, such as the *TK* gene, can attenuate the virus in two aspects: by gene mutation and by added transcriptional and/or translational load. For the methods provided herein, mutation of nonessential genes is not required; however, one or more nonessential gene can be modified to enhance the attenuating effects of the gene expression cassette. The attenuation of the virus can be subsequently lessened (*i.e.*, the virus exhibits increased replication) by removing the expression cassette and replacing it with noncoding sequence so that the gene remains inactive. Thus, removal or replacement of a gene expression cassette decreases the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus, resulting in a decrease in attenuation of the virus. As supported in the Examples, replacement of a gene expression cassette from the *HA* gene, the *TK* gene, the *F14.5L* locus, or a combination thereof, can lead to increased replication of the virus both *in vitro* and *in vivo*.

**b. Insertion or removal of expression cassettes**

An increase in the number of gene expression cassettes in the viral genome can lead to a competition for the transcriptional and/or translational machinery of the virus since the factors needed to transcribe and translate the gene expression cassette are also needed by the virus for expression of endogenous viral genes. Hence, increasing the number of heterologous expression cassettes in the viral genome can increase the transcriptional and translational load on the virus. As a result, expression of viral proteins needed in the production new viral particles is decreased, thus generating a more attenuated virus. Exemplary mechanisms of competition include, but are not limited to, inhibition of transcription initiation by binding a transcription factor or binding limiting amounts of polymerase, limiting nucleotide pools for transcription, binding a termination factor, which can tie up the polymerase, binding limiting amounts of ribosomes or translation factors, and limiting tRNA pools and translation termination factors.

In some embodiments, a virus to be modified contains one or more heterologous gene expression cassettes. According to the methods provided herein, removal of a gene expression cassette from such a virus can decrease the transcriptional and/or translational load on the virus. This can result in less competition for expression viral genes, and thus producing a less attenuated virus. In

- 71 -

some embodiments, the gene expression cassette to be removed occurs within a viral gene. Typically, removal of the gene expression cassette does not restore the function of the viral gene. In a particular embodiment, the gene expression cassette is removed from the viral genome and replaced with a non-coding sequence.

- 5           Insertion and removal of expression cassettes can be carried out using any known method in the art for modification of a viral genome. In vaccinia, for example, well-known techniques for insertion or removal of heterologous nucleic acid molecules by homologous recombination are available. Typically, the methods involve generating a shuttle plasmid vector, containing the expression cassette flanked
- 10 by vaccinia virus DNA. The shuttle vector is then transfected into cells that have been infected with the target vaccinia virus. Homologous recombination occurs between the shuttle vector and the vaccinia virus genome at a low frequency to generate the modified virus with the inserted expression cassette. Shuttle vectors for use in the methods provided herein for modification of a vaccinia virus or for
- 15 construction of new shuttle vectors for modification of a vaccinia virus include any known shuttle vector in the art including, but not limited to, pGS20, pSC59, pMJ601, pSC65 (SEQ ID NO: 30), pSC11, pMCO2, pCF11, PTKgptF1s, pMC1107, pNCVVhaT (SEQ ID NO: 4), pNCVVf14.5IT(SEQ ID NO: 11), pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ ID NO: 17), and other newly made vectors provided herein among others.
- 20 Exemplary shuttle vectors for use in the methods herein are also provided in the Examples.

### **c.       Modification of expression cassettes**

- In some embodiments, where a virus to be modified contains one or more heterologous gene expression cassettes, a gene expression cassette can be modified to
- 25 increase or decrease the transcriptional and/or translational competition for expression of viral genes. Expression cassettes can be modified, for example, by modification of the promoter or other non-coding portion of the expression cassette or by modification of the open reading frame of the expression cassette.

#### **i.       Promoter modification**

- 30 Promoters of expression cassettes can be modified by exchanging the promoter for a different promoter to alter the level of attenuation caused by the



- 72 -

expression cassette. Modifications of an expression cassette in a virus include exchanging the promoter region of the expression cassette or exchanging the gene expression cassette with another gene expression cassette with a different promoter. The change in promoter can, for example, alter the level of transcription and/or translation of the expression cassette or alter the timing of expression of the gene(s) encoded by the expression cassette. Exemplary changes in a promoter include increasing or decreasing the strength of the promoter or exchanging the promoter such that the gene(s) encoded by the open reading frame is expressed at different time in the viral life cycle. Stronger promoters in an expression cassette typically can provide better competition for viral factors and thus generate a more attenuated virus, whereas weaker promoters provide lesser amount of competition compared to stronger promoters and thus generate a lesser degree of attenuation.

#### ii. Modification of open reading frame

Expression cassettes can also be modified, for example, by altering the open reading frame (ORF) of the expression cassette. The ORF can be modified to modulate the level of attenuation generated by the expression cassette. The ORF of the expression cassette can be exchanged for another ORF or a modified ORF, the entire gene expression cassette can also be exchanged with another cassette with a different ORF or a modified ORF. Exemplary modifications to an ORF include, but are not limited to, altering the length of the ORF, the genes encoded by the ORF, or the number of genes encoded by the ORF. The length of the ORF can be modified such that a longer mRNA is transcribed or a longer polypeptide is translated. For example, the ORF can be modified by increasing the length of the existing coding sequence or substituting the ORF for a longer ORF. RNA viruses, such as VSV and New Castle Disease Virus (NDV), for example, are particularly sensitive to length of inserted ORFs since transcription of the viral genome involves production of long mRNA transcripts encoding multiple genes (see *e.g.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,713,066, Barr *et al.* (2002) *Biochim. et Biophys. Acta* 1577:337-353; Krishnamurthy *et al.* (2000) *Virology* 278(1):168-182).

The ORF can also be modified to generate more than one polypeptide. ORFs that encode more than one polypeptide can generate a fusion protein of the two

- 73 -

polypeptides or can include internal ribosome binding sites (IRES) that separate the coding sequences for production of the two or more separate polypeptides.

Alternatively, the ORF can include an intervening coding sequence that allows cleavage of the two polypeptides post-translationally. For example, the picornavirus 2A element can be inserted in between and in frame with two coding sequences, such that the two polypeptides are proteolytically cleaved by the host or by a virally encoded factor (see *e.g.*, Osborn *et al.* (2005) *Mol Ther.* 12(3):569-74). An exemplary virus provided herein that employs a gene expression cassette containing the picornavirus 2A element separating the genes encoding click beetle luciferase and red fluorescent protein is GLV-1h84.

ORFs can also be modified to reduce the level of attenuation. For example, an ORF of an expression cassette can be shortened, substituted for shorter ORF, or deleted. Alternatively, an ORF can be exchanged for a non-coding sequence or a coding sequence that is in the reverse orientation to the promoter, resulting in removal of a translational unit from the virus. Hence, the level of attenuation can be decreased by decreasing the translational load caused by translation of the ORF of the expression cassette.

## 2. Transcription factor decoys

In one embodiment, the heterologous DNA molecule that can be inserted into the viral genome contains one or more binding sites for transcription factors needed for viral transcription, but is not operably linked to an open reading frame. For example, the DNA sequence can be a promoter sequence that is not operably linked to an open reading frame. The heterologous DNA can act as a decoy that can bind to viral transcription factors or host transcription factors involved in viral transcription.

The use of decoys in the form of oligonucleotides has been used successfully to inhibit eukaryotic and viral transcription (see *e.g.* U.S. Patent Nos. 5,712,384, 5,683,985, and 6,821,956; U.S. Patent Pub. No. 2004-0127446; Michienzi *et al.* *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 99(22): 14047-14052; Tomita *et al.* (2004) *Internatl. J. Mol. Med.* 13: 629-636; Cho-Chung *et al.* (2000) *Mol. Cell. Biochem.* 212(1-2): 29-34; Seki *et al.* (2006) *Mol. Cancer Ther.* 5: 985-994). In the methods provided herein, insertion of heterologous DNA into a viral genome can lead to a competition for the

- 74 -

transcriptional machinery of the virus since the factors that bind to the inserted sequence are needed by the virus for expression of endogenous viral genes. Hence, increasing the number heterologous binding sites for factors needed for viral transcription can result in a decrease in production of viral proteins needed to produce new viral particles, thus generating a more attenuated virus.

### 3. Fine tuning attenuation - Combinations of insertions, deletions, or modifications

The steps provided herein for modulating a virus to increase or decrease the attenuation of the virus can be repeated to achieve a desired level of attenuation. For example, additional modification of the virus can be carried out to improve the level of attenuation desired. The level of attenuation can be assessed *in vitro* or *in vivo*, and a determination can be made whether additional modification of the virus is preferred. The virus can then be modified by insertion, removal and/or modification or additional expression cassettes or be further modified as discussed below.

Combinations of insertions, deletions, or modifications of expression cassettes can be carried out to achieve the desired level of attenuation. In a particular embodiment, a heterologous nucleic acid molecule is inserted, removed and/or modified in the viral genome. In a further embodiment, two or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules are inserted, removed and/or modified in the viral genome. If two or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules are inserted, removed and/or modified in the viral genome, one or more nucleic acid molecules can be inserted while one or more nucleic acid molecules is removed. Similarly, one or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules can be inserted while one or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules modified. Further, one or more nucleic acid molecules can be removed while one or more nucleic acid molecules is modified. The heterologous nucleic acid molecules can contain an open reading frame, lack an open reading frame, or be a combination of both.

### 4. Assays for attenuated viruses

Methods for assessing the level of attenuation of a virus by *in vitro* and *in vivo* methods are known in the art and include, but are not limited to, methods such as plaque assays and mouse models of viral pathogenicity. Exemplary methods for

- 75 -

studying vaccinia early, intermediate, and late transcription can be found in Broyles *et al.* Methods Mol Biol. (2004) 269:135-142 and Wright *et al.* Methods Mol. Biol. (2004) 269:143-150. Method for assaying for viral RNA transcripts and proteins include, but are not limited to, well-known techniques as RNA hybridization and blotting techniques and immunohistochemistry.

#### **D. FURTHER MODIFICATIONS**

Viruses provided herein and viruses produced by the methods provided herein can be further modified by any known method for modifying a virus. Furthermore, viruses provided herein and viruses produced by the methods provided herein can be further modified to attenuate the virus. Hence, the methods provided herein can be combined with any known method for modifying a virus. Furthermore, the methods provided herein can be combined with any known method for modulating the attenuation of a virus. For example, such methods include modification of one or more viral genes, such as by a point mutation, a deletion mutation, an interruption by an insertion, a substitution, or a mutation of the viral gene promoter or enhancer regions. Modifications in a viral gene can be introduced into the virus prior to the execution of the methods of modulating attenuation provided herein. Alternatively, modifications can be introduced into the virus following the execution of the methods of modulating attenuation provided herein. Modifications in a viral gene can be combined with the methods provided herein or used to modify the viruses provided to either increase or decrease the attenuation of the virus. Further modifications of a virus that are combined with the methods provided herein or used to modify the viruses provided, however, are not required to affect the attenuation of the virus.

Further modifications of the viruses provided can enhance one or more characteristics of the virus. Such characteristics can include, but are not limited to, attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, increased ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, increased immunogenicity, increased or decreased replication competence, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the modified viruses have an ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells without aggressively killing the tumor cells. In other embodiments, the viruses can be

- 76 -

modified to express one or more detectable genes, including genes that can be used for imaging. In other embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express one or more genes for harvesting the gene products and/or for harvesting antibodies against the gene products.

- 5           Conventional methods for attenuation of a virus include mutation in viral virulence genes, such as by a point mutation, a deletion mutation, an interruption mutation, or modification of the virulence gene promoter or enhancer regions. The methods provided herein for increasing or decreasing the attenuation of a virus typically do not require modification viral genes. Modification of viral genes,  
10           however can be combined with the methods provided to alter the level of attenuation.

**1.       Modification of viral genes**

- Methods for modifying a virus include modifications in one or more viral genes. Modification can include those that inactivate viral gene or abolish or decrease the activity of a viral gene product. Such modifications in a viral gene can alter the  
15           viral processes, such as, for example, viral infectivity, viral DNA replication, viral protein synthesis, virus particle assembly and maturation, and viral particle release. Exemplary viral genes for modification include, but are not limited to, viral surface antigens (*e.g.* proteins that mediate viral attachment to host cell receptors), viral proteases, and viral enzymes involved in viral replication and transcription of viral  
20           genes (*e.g.*, polymerases, replicases and helicases). Modifications in such genes can decrease the overall replication of the virus and production of viral particles thus resulting in a more attenuated virus.

- In another embodiment, a viral surface antigen gene can be modified to produce a chimeric protein such that the heterologous epitope is expressed on the  
25           surface of the virus. Viruses expressing such chimeric proteins are thus useful as vaccines for use in generating an immune response in the host subject. Exemplary epitopes include but are not limited to tumor antigens, viral and bacterial antigens. Many exemplary antigens are known in the art, and include, for example, those listed and/or described in Novellino *et al.* (2005) *Cancer Immunol Immunother.* 54(3):187-  
30           207; Eisenberger *et al.* (2006) *Hematol Oncol Clin North Am.* 20(3):661-87. In one embodiment, insertion of a heterologous epitope into the viral gene can affect the

- 77 -

level of attenuation of the virus. In an alternative embodiment, the level of attenuation of the virus is unaffected by insertion of a heterologous epitope into the viral gene.

## 2. Expression of additional heterologous genes

5 Viruses provided herein and viruses generated using the methods provided herein can be further modified to express one or more additional heterologous genes. Gene expression can include expression of a protein encoded by a gene and/or expression of an RNA molecule encoded by a gene. In some embodiments, the viruses can express heterologous genes at levels high enough that permit harvesting  
10 products of the heterologous gene from the tumor.

Expression of heterologous genes can be controlled by a constitutive promoter, or by an inducible promoter. Expression can also be influenced by one or more proteins or RNA molecules expressed by the virus. An exemplary inducible promoter system can include a chimeric transcription factor comprising a yeast GAL4  
15 DNA-binding domain fused to a ligand binding domain derived from a progesterone receptor and to the activation domain of the herpes simplex virus protein VP16, and a synthetic promoter containing a series of GAL4 recognition sequences upstream of the adenovirus major late E1B TATA box, linked to one or more heterologous genes; in this exemplary system, administration of mifepristone (RU486) to a subject can  
20 result in induction of the heterologous genes. Other exemplary inducible promoter systems include, but are not limited to, a tetracycline-repressed regulated system, ecdysone-regulated system, and rapamycin-regulated system (Agha-Mohammadi and Lotze (2000) *J. Clin. Invest.* 105(9): 1177-1183). Heterologous genes expressed can include genes encoding a therapeutic gene product, genes encoding a detectable gene  
25 product, such as a gene product that can be used for imaging, genes encoding a gene product to be harvested, genes encoding an antigen of an antibody to be harvested or to elicit an immune response. The viruses provided herein can be used for expressing genes *in vivo* and *in vitro*. Exemplary proteins include reporter proteins (*E. coli*  $\beta$ -galactosidase,  $\beta$ -glucuronidase, xanthineguanine phosphoribosyltransferase), proteins  
30 facilitating detection, such as a detectable protein or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal, (luciferase, fluorescent proteins, transferrin receptor, for example),

- 78 -

proteins useful for tumor therapy (pseudomonas A endotoxin, diphtheria toxin, p53, Arf, Bax, tumor necrosis factor-alpha, HSV TK, *E. coli* purine nucleoside phosphorylase, angiostatin, endostatin, cytokines, or chemokines) and other proteins.

**a. Detectable gene product**

5 Viruses provided herein and viruses generated using the methods provided herein can express one or more genes whose products are detectable or whose products can provide a detectable signal. A variety of detectable gene products, such as detectable proteins are known in the art, and can be used with the viruses provided herein. Detectable proteins include receptors or other proteins that can specifically  
10 bind a detectable compound, proteins that can emit a detectable signal such as a fluorescence signal, and enzymes that can catalyze a detectable reaction or catalyze formation of a detectable product.

In some embodiments, the virus expresses a gene encoding a protein that can emit a detectable signal or that can catalyze a detectable reaction. A variety of DNA  
15 sequences encoding proteins that can emit a detectable signal or that can catalyze a detectable reaction, such as luminescent or fluorescent proteins, are known and can be used in the viruses and methods provided herein. Exemplary genes encoding light-emitting proteins include genes from bacterial luciferase from *Vibrio harveyi* (Belas *et al.*, *Science* 218 (1982), 791-793), bacterial luciferase from *Vibrio fischerii* (Foran and Brown, *Nucleic acids Res.* 16 (1988), 177), firefly luciferase (de Wet *et al.*, *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 7 (1987), 725-737), aequorin from *Aequorea victoria* (Prasher *et al.*, *Biochem.* 26 (1987), 1326-1332), Renilla luciferase from *Renilla reniformis* (Lorenz *et al.*, *PNAS USA* 88 (1991), 4438-4442) and green fluorescent protein from *Aequorea victoria* (Prasher *et al.*, *Gene* 111: 229-233 (1987)). The *luxA* and *luxB* genes of  
25 bacterial luciferase can be fused to produce the fusion gene (*Fab<sub>2</sub>*), which can be expressed to produce a fully functional luciferase protein (Escher *et al.*, *PNAS* 86: 6528-6532 (1989)). Transformation and expression of these genes in viruses can permit detection of viral infection, for example, using a low light and/or fluorescence imaging camera. In some embodiments, luciferases expressed by viruses can require  
30 exogenously added substrates such as decanal or coelenterazine for light emission. In other embodiments, viruses can express a complete *lux* operon, which can include

- 79 -

proteins that can provide luciferase substrates such as decanal. For example, viruses containing the complete *lux* operon sequence, when injected intraperitoneally, intramuscularly, or intravenously, allowed the visualization and localization of microorganisms in live mice indicating that the luciferase light emission can penetrate the tissues and can be detected externally (Contag *et al.* (1995) *Mol. Microbiol.* 18: 593-603).

In other embodiments, the virus can express a gene that can bind a detectable compound or that can form a product that can bind a detectable compound. A variety of gene products, such as proteins, that can specifically bind a detectable compound are known in the art, including receptors, metal binding proteins (*e.g.*, siderophores, ferritins, transferrin receptors), ligand binding proteins, and antibodies. Any of a variety of detectable compounds can be used, and can be imaged by any of a variety of known imaging methods. Exemplary compounds include receptor ligands and antigens for antibodies. The ligand can be labeled according to the imaging method to be used. Exemplary imaging methods include any of X-rays, a variety magnetic resonance methods such as magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) and magnetic resonance spectroscopy (MRS), and also include any of a variety of tomographic methods including computed tomography (CT), computed axial tomography (CAT), electron beam computed tomography (EBCT), high resolution computed tomography (HRCT), hypocycloidal tomography, positron emission tomography (PET), single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), spiral computed tomography and ultrasonic tomography.

Labels appropriate for X-ray imaging are known in the art, and include, for example, Bismuth (III), Gold (III), Lanthanum (III) or Lead (II); a radioactive ion, such as <sup>67</sup>Copper, <sup>67</sup>Gallium, <sup>68</sup>Gallium, <sup>111</sup>Indium, <sup>113</sup>Indium, <sup>123</sup>Iodine, <sup>125</sup>Iodine, <sup>131</sup>Iodine, <sup>197</sup>Mercury, <sup>203</sup>Mercury, <sup>186</sup>Rhenium, <sup>188</sup>Rhenium, <sup>97</sup>Rubidium, <sup>103</sup>Rubidium, <sup>99</sup>Technetium or <sup>90</sup>Yttrium; a nuclear magnetic spin-resonance isotope, such as Cobalt (II), Copper (II), Chromium (III), Dysprosium (III), Erbium (III), Gadolinium (III), Holmium (III), Iron (II), Iron (III), Manganese (II), Neodymium (III), Nickel (II), Samarium (III), Terbium (III), Vanadium (II) or Ytterbium (III); or rhodamine or fluorescein.



Labels appropriate for magnetic resonance imaging are known in the art, and include, for example, gadolinium chelates and iron oxides. Use of chelates in contrast agents is known in the art. Labels appropriate for tomographic imaging methods are known in the art, and include, for example,  $\beta$ -emitters such as  $^{11}\text{C}$ ,  $^{13}\text{N}$ ,  $^{15}\text{O}$  or  $^{64}\text{Cu}$  or (b)  $\gamma$ -emitters such as  $^{123}\text{I}$ . Other exemplary radionuclides that can, be used, for example, as tracers for PET include  $^{55}\text{Co}$ ,  $^{67}\text{Ga}$ ,  $^{68}\text{Ga}$ ,  $^{60}\text{Cu(II)}$ ,  $^{67}\text{Cu(II)}$ ,  $^{57}\text{Ni}$ ,  $^{52}\text{Fe}$  and  $^{18}\text{F}$  (e.g.,  $^{18}\text{F}$ -fluorodeoxyglucose (FDG)). Examples of useful radionuclide-labeled agents are  $^{64}\text{Cu}$ -labeled engineered antibody fragment (Wu *et al.* (2002) *PNAS USA* 97: 8495-8500),  $^{64}\text{Cu}$ -labeled somatostatin (Lewis *et al.* (1999) *J. Med. Chem.* 42: 1341-1347),  $^{64}\text{Cu}$ -pyruvaldehyde-bis (N4methylthiosemicarbazone)( $^{64}\text{Cu}$ -PTSM) (Adonai *et al.* (2002) *PNAS USA* 99: 3030-3035),  $^{52}\text{Fe}$ -citrate (Leenders *et al.* (1994) *J. Neural. Transm. Suppl.* 43: 123-132),  $^{52}\text{Fe}/^{52\text{m}}\text{Mn}$ -citrate (Calonder *et al.* (1999) *J. Neurochem.* 73: 2047-2055) and  $^{52}\text{Fe}$ -labeled iron (III) hydroxide-sucrose complex (Beshara *et al.* (1999) *Br. J. Haematol.* 104: 288-295, 296-302).

In some examples dual imaging *in vitro* and/or *in vivo* can be used to detect two or more detectable gene products, gene products that produce a detectable signal, gene products that can bind a detectable compound, or gene products that can bind other molecules to form a detectable product. In some examples, the two or more gene products are expressed by different viruses, whereas in other examples the two or more gene products are produced by the same virus. For example, a virus can express a gene product that emits a detectable signal and also express a gene product that catalyzes a detectable reaction. In other examples, a virus can express one or more gene products that emit a detectable signal, one or more gene products that catalyze a detectable reaction, one or more gene products that can bind a detectable compound or that can form a detectable product, or any combination thereof. Any combination of such gene products can be expressed by the viruses provided herein and can be used in combination with any of the methods provided herein. Imaging of such gene products can be performed, for example, by various imaging methods as described herein and known in the art (e.g., fluorescence imaging, MRI, PET, among may other methods of detection). Imaging of gene products can also be performed using the same method, whereby gene products are distinguished by their properties,

- 81 -

such as by differences in wavelengths of light emitted. For example, a virus can express more than one fluorescent protein that differs in the wavelength of light emitted (*e.g.*, a GFP and an RFP). In another non-limiting example, an RFP can be expressed with a luciferase. In yet other non-limiting examples, a fluorescent gene product can be expressed with a gene product, such as a ferritin or a transferrin receptor, used for magnetic resonance imaging. A virus expressing two or more detectable gene products or two or more viruses expressing two or more detectable gene products can be imaged *in vitro* or *in vivo* using such methods. In some embodiments the two or more gene products are expressed as a single polypeptide, such as a fusion protein. For example a fluorescent protein can be expressed as a fusion protein with a luciferase protein.

**b. Therapeutic gene product**

Viruses provided herein and viruses generated using the methods provided herein can express one or more genes whose products cause cell death or whose products cause an anti-tumor immune response; such genes can be considered therapeutic genes. A variety of therapeutic gene products, such as toxic or apoptotic proteins, or siRNA, are known in the art, and can be used with the viruses provided herein. The therapeutic genes can act by directly killing the host cell, for example, as a channel-forming or other lytic protein, or by triggering apoptosis, or by inhibiting essential cellular processes, or by triggering an immune response against the cell, or by interacting with a compound that has a similar effect, for example, by converting a less active compound to a cytotoxic compound. A large number of therapeutic proteins that can be expressed for tumor treatment are known in the art, including, but not limited to, tumor suppressors, toxins, cytostatic proteins, and costimulatory molecules such as cytokines and chemokines. Costimulatory molecules for the methods provided herein include any molecules which are capable of enhancing immune responses to an antigen/pathogen *in vivo* and/or *in vitro*. Costimulatory molecules also encompass any molecules which promote the activation, proliferation, differentiation, maturation, or maintenance of lymphocytes and/or other cells whose function is important or essential for immune responses. An exemplary, non-limiting list of therapeutic proteins includes WT1, p53, p16, Rb, BRCA1, cystic fibrosis

- 82 -

transmembrane regulator (CFTR), Factor VIII, low density lipoprotein receptor, beta-galactosidase, alpha-galactosidase, beta-glucocerebrosidase, insulin, parathyroid hormone, alpha-1-antitrypsin, rsCD40L, Fas-ligand, TRAIL, TNF, antibodies, microcin E492, diphtheria toxin, *Pseudomonas* exotoxin, *Escherichia coli* Shiga toxin, *Escherichia coli* Verotoxin 1, and hyperforin. Exemplary cytokines include, but are not limited to, chemokines and classical cytokines, such as the interleukins, including for example, interleukin-1, interleukin-2, interleukin-6 and interleukin-12, tumor necrosis factors, such as tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ), interferons such as interferon gamma (IFN- $\gamma$ ), granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factor (GM-CSF) and exemplary chemokines including, but not limited to CXC chemokines such as IL-8 GRO $\alpha$ , GRO $\beta$ , GRO $\gamma$ , ENA-78, LDGF-PBP, GCP-2, PF4, Mig, IP-10, SDF-1 $\alpha/\beta$ , BUNZO/STRC33, I-TAC, BLC/BCA-1; CC chemokines such as MIP-1 $\alpha$ , MIP-1 $\beta$ , MDC, TECK, TARC, RANTES, HCC-1, HCC-4, DC-CK1, MIP-3 $\alpha$ , MIP-3 $\beta$ , MCP-1, MCP-2, MCP-3, MCP-4, Eotaxin, Eotaxin-2/MPIF-2, I-309, MIP-5/HCC-2, MPIF-1, 6Ckine, CTACK, MEC; lymphotactin; and fractalkine. Exemplary other costimulatory molecules include immunoglobulin superfamily of cytokines, such as B7.1, B7.2.

In other embodiments, the viruses can express a protein that converts a less active compound into a compound that causes tumor cell death. Exemplary methods of conversion of such a prodrug compound include enzymatic conversion and photolytic conversion. A large variety of protein/compound pairs are known in the art, and include, but are not limited to, Herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase/ganciclovir, Herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase/(E)-5-(2-bromovinyl)-2'-deoxyuridine (BVDU), varicella zoster thymidine kinase/ganciclovir, varicella zoster thymidine kinase/BVDU, varicella zoster thymidine kinase/(E)-5-(2-bromovinyl)-1-beta-D-arabinofuranosyluracil (BVaraU), cytosine deaminase/5-fluorouracil, cytosine deaminase/5-fluorocytosine, purine nucleoside phosphorylase/6-methylpurine deoxyriboside, beta lactamase/cephalosporin-doxorubicin, carboxypeptidase G2/4-[(2-chloroethyl)(2-mesuloxymethyl)amino] benzoyl-L-glutamic acid (CMDA), carboxypeptidase A/methotrexate-phenylamine, cytochrome P450/acetaminophen, cytochrome P450-2B1/cyclophosphamide, cytochrome P450-4B1/2-aminoanthracene,

- 83 -

4-ipomeanol, horseradish peroxidase/indole-3-acetic acid, nitroreductase/CB1954, rabbit carboxylesterase/7-ethyl-10-[4-(1-piperidino)-1-piperidino]carbonyloxycamptothecin (CPT-11), mushroom tyrosinase/bis-(2-chloroethyl)amino-4-hydroxyphenylaminomethanone 28, beta galactosidase/1-chloromethyl-5-hydroxy-1,2-dihydro-3H-benz[e]indole, beta glucuronidase/epirubicin glucuronide, thymidine phosphorylase/5'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine, deoxycytidine kinase/cytosine arabinoside, and linamerase/linamarin.

In another embodiment, the therapeutic gene product can be an siRNA molecule. The siRNA molecule can be directed against expression of a tumor-promoting gene, such as, but not limited to, an oncogene, growth factor, angiogenesis promoting gene, or a receptor. The siRNA molecule also can be directed against expression of any gene essential for cell growth, cell replication or cell survival. The siRNA molecule also can be directed against expression of any gene that stabilizes the cell membrane or otherwise limits the number of tumor cell antigens released from the tumor cell. Design of an siRNA can be readily determined according to the selected target of the siRNA; methods of siRNA design and down-regulation of genes are known in the art, as exemplified in U.S. Pat. Pub. No. 2003-0198627.

In another embodiment, the therapeutic gene product can be a viral attenuation factor. Antiviral proteins or peptides can be expressed by the viruses provided herein. Expression of antiviral proteins or peptides can control viral pathogenicity. Exemplary viral attenuation factors include, but are not limited to, virus-specific antibodies, mucins, thrombospondin, and soluble proteins such as cytokines, including, but not limited to TNF $\alpha$ , interferons (for example IFN $\alpha$ , IFN $\beta$ , or IFN $\gamma$ ) and interleukins (for example IL-1, IL-12 or IL-18).

In another embodiment, the therapeutic gene product can be a protein ligand, such as antitumor oligopeptide. Antitumor oligopeptides are short protein peptides with high affinity and specificity to tumors. Such oligopeptides could be enriched and identified using tumor-associated phage libraries (Akita *et al.* (2006) *Cancer Sci.* 97(10):1075-1081). These oligopeptides have been shown to enhance chemotherapy (U.S. Patent No. 4,912,199). The oligopeptides can be expressed by the viruses provided herein. Expression of the oligopeptides can elicit anticancer activities on

- 84 -

their own or in combination with other chemotherapeutic agents. An exemplary group of antitumor oligopeptides is antimetabolic peptides, including, but not limited to, tubulysin (Khalil *et al.* (2006) *Chembiochem.* 7(4):678-683), phomopsin, hemiasterlin, taltobulin (HTI-286, 3), and cryptophycin. Tubulysin is from  
5 myxobacteria and can induce depletion of cell microtubules and trigger the apoptotic process. The antimetabolic peptides can be expressed by the viruses provided herein and elicit anticancer activities on their own or in combination with other therapeutic modalities.

In another embodiment, the therapeutic gene product can be a protein that  
10 sequesters molecules or nutrients needed for tumor growth. For example, the virus can express one or more proteins that bind iron, transport iron, or store iron, or a combination thereof. Increased iron uptake and/or storage by expression of such proteins not only, increases contrast for visualization and detection of a tumor or tissue in which the virus accumulates, but also depletes iron from the tumor  
15 environment. Iron depletion from the tumor environment removes a vital nutrient from the tumors, thereby deregulating iron homeostasis in tumor cells and delaying tumor progression and/or killing the tumor.

Additionally, iron, or other labeled metals, can be administered to a tumor-bearing subject, either alone, or in a conjugated form. An iron conjugate can include,  
20 for example, iron conjugated to an imaging moiety or a therapeutic agent. In some cases, the imaging moiety and therapeutic agent are the same, *e.g.*, a radionuclide. Bacterial cell internalization of iron in the tumor, wound, area of inflammation or infection allows the internalization of iron alone, a supplemental imaging moiety, or a therapeutic agent (which can deliver cytotoxicity specifically to tumor cells or deliver  
25 the therapeutic agent for treatment of the wound, area of inflammation or infection). These methods can be combined with any of the other methods provided herein.

### c. Superantigen

The viruses provided herein can be modified to express one or more superantigens. Superantigens are antigens that can activate a large immune response,  
30 often brought about by a large response of T cells. A variety of superantigens are known in the art including, but not limited to, diphtheria toxin, staphylococcal

- 85 -

enterotoxins (SEA, SEB, SEC1, SEC2, SED, SEE and SEH), Toxic Shock Syndrome Toxin 1, Exfoliating Toxins (EXft), Streptococcal Pyrogenic Exotoxin A, B and C (SPE A, B and C), Mouse Mammary Tumor Virus proteins (MMTV), Streptococcal M proteins, Clostridial Perfringens Enterotoxin (CPET), *Listeria monocytogenes* antigen p60, and mycoplasma arthritis superantigens.

Since many superantigens also are toxins, if expression of a virus of reduced toxicity is desired, the superantigen can be modified to retain at least some of its superantigenicity while reducing its toxicity, resulting in a compound such as a toxoid. A variety of recombinant superantigens and toxoids of superantigens are known in the art, and can readily be expressed in the viruses provided herein. Exemplary toxoids include toxoids of diphtheria toxin, as exemplified in U.S. Pat. No. 6,455,673 and toxoids of Staphylococcal enterotoxins, as exemplified in U.S. Pat. Pub. No. 20030009015.

**d. Gene product to be harvested**

Exemplary genes expressible by a virus provided herein for the purpose of harvesting include human genes. An exemplary list of genes includes the list of human genes and genetic disorders authored and edited by Dr. Victor A. McKusick and his colleagues at Johns Hopkins University and elsewhere, and developed for the World Wide Web by NCBI, the National Center for Biotechnology Information. Online Mendelian Inheritance in Man, OMIM<sup>TM</sup>, Center for Medical Genetics, Johns Hopkins University (Baltimore, Md.) and National Center for Biotechnology Information, National Library of Medicine (Bethesda, Md.), and those available in public databases, such as PubMed and GenBank (see, for example, genes provided in the website [ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?db=OMIM](http://ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/entrez/query.fcgi?db=OMIM)).

**e. Control of heterologous gene expression**

In one embodiment, expression the therapeutic compound can be controlled by a regulatory sequence. Suitable regulatory sequences which, for example, are functional in a mammalian host cell are well known in the art. In one example, the regulatory sequence contains a poxvirus promoter. In another embodiment, the regulatory sequence can contain a natural or synthetic vaccinia virus promoter. Exemplary vaccinia early, intermediate, and late stage promoters include, for

- 86 -

example, vaccinia P<sub>7.5k</sub> early/late promoter, vaccinia P<sub>EL</sub> early/late promoter, vaccinia P<sub>13</sub> early promoter, vaccinia P<sub>11k</sub> late promoter, and vaccinia promoters listed elsewhere herein. Exemplary synthetic promoters include, for example, P<sub>SE</sub> synthetic early promoter, P<sub>SEL</sub> synthetic early/late promoter, P<sub>SL</sub> synthetic late promoter, 5 vaccinia synthetic promoters listed elsewhere herein (Patel *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 9431-9435 (1988); Davison and Moss, *J Mol Biol* 210: 749-769 (1989); Davison *et al.*, *Nucleic Acids Res.* 18: 4285-4286 (1990); Chakrabarti *et al.*, *BioTechniques* 23: 1094-1097 (1997)). Combinations of different promoters can be used to express different gene products in the same virus or two different viruses. In 10 one embodiment, different therapeutic or detectable gene products are expressed from different promoters, such as two different vaccinia synthetic promoters.

#### **E. METHODS FOR MAKING A MODIFIED VIRUS**

The viruses provided herein can be formed by standard methodologies well known in the art for modifying viruses. Briefly, the methods include introducing into 15 viruses one or more genetic modifications, followed by screening the viruses for properties reflective of the modification or for other desired properties.

##### **1. Genetic Modifications**

Standard techniques in molecular biology can be used to generate the modified viruses provided herein. Such techniques include various nucleic acid manipulation 20 techniques, nucleic acid transfer protocols, nucleic acid amplification protocols, and other molecular biology techniques known in the art. For example, point mutations can be introduced into a gene of interest through the use of oligonucleotide mediated site-directed mutagenesis. Alternatively, homologous recombination can be used to introduce a mutation or exogenous sequence into a target sequence of interest. In an 25 alternative mutagenesis protocol, point mutations in a particular gene can also be selected for using a positive selection pressure. See, *e.g.*, Current Techniques in Molecular Biology, (Ed. Ausubel, *et al.*). Nucleic acid amplification protocols include but are not limited to the polymerase chain reaction (PCR). Use of nucleic acid tools such as plasmids, vectors, promoters and other regulating sequences, are well known 30 in the art for a large variety of viruses and cellular organisms. Nucleic acid transfer protocols include calcium chloride transformation/transfection, electroporation,

- 87 -

liposome mediated nucleic acid transfer, N-[1-(2,3-Dioloyloxy)propyl]-N,N,N-trimethylammonium methylsulfate mediated transformation, and others. Further a large variety of nucleic acid tools are available from many different sources including ATCC, and various commercial sources. One skilled in the art will be readily able to  
5 select the appropriate tools and methods for genetic modifications of any particular virus according to the knowledge in the art and design choice.

Any of a variety of modifications can be readily accomplished using standard molecular biological methods known in the art. The modifications will typically be one or more truncations, deletions, mutations or insertions of the viral genome. In  
10 one embodiment, the modification can be specifically directed to a particular sequence. The modifications can be directed to any of a variety of regions of the viral genome, including, but not limited to, a regulatory sequence, to a gene-encoding sequence, or to a sequence without a known role. Any of a variety of regions of viral genomes that are available for modification are readily known in the art for many  
15 viruses, including the viruses specifically listed herein. As a non-limiting example, the loci of a variety of vaccinia genes provided herein and elsewhere exemplify the number of different regions that can be targeted for modification in the viruses provided herein. In another embodiment, the modification can be fully or partially random, whereupon selection of any particular modified virus can be determined  
20 according to the desired properties of the modified the virus. These methods include, for example, *in vitro* recombination techniques, synthetic methods and *in vivo* recombination methods as described, for example, in Sambrook *et al.*, Molecular Cloning: A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition, Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, cold Spring Harbor NY (1989), and in the Examples disclosed herein.

25 In some embodiments, the virus can be modified to express an exogenous gene. Exemplary exogenous gene products include proteins and RNA molecules. The modified viruses can express a detectable gene product, a therapeutic gene product, a gene product for manufacturing or harvesting, or an antigenic gene product for antibody harvesting. The characteristics of such gene products are described  
30 herein and elsewhere. In some embodiments of modifying an organism to express an exogenous gene, the modification can also contain one or more regulatory sequences



- 88 -

to regulate expression of the exogenous gene. As is known in the art, regulatory sequences can permit constitutive expression of the exogenous gene or can permit inducible expression of the exogenous gene. Further, the regulatory sequence can permit control of the level of expression of the exogenous gene. In some examples, inducible expression can be under the control of cellular or other factors present in a tumor cell or present in a virus-infected tumor cell. In other examples, inducible expression can be under the control of an administrable substance, including IPTG, RU486 or other known induction compounds. Any of a variety of regulatory sequences are available to one skilled in the art according to known factors and design preferences. In some embodiments, such as gene product manufacture and harvesting, the regulatory sequence can result in constitutive, high levels of gene expression. In some embodiments, such as anti-(gene product) antibody harvesting, the regulatory sequence can result in constitutive, lower levels of gene expression. In tumor therapy embodiments, a therapeutic protein can be under the control of an internally inducible promoter or an externally inducible promoter.

In other embodiments, organ or tissue-specific expression can be controlled by regulatory sequences. In order to achieve expression only in the target organ, for example, a tumor to be treated, the foreign nucleotide sequence can be linked to a tissue specific promoter and used for gene therapy. Such promoters are well known to those skilled in the art (see *e.g.*, Zimmermann *et al.*, *Neuron* 12: 11-24 (1994); Vidal *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 9: 833-840 (1990); Mayford *et al.*, *Cell* 81: 891-904 (1995); and Pinkert *et al.*, *Genes & Dev.* 1: 268-76 (1987)).

In some embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express two or more proteins, where any combination of the two or more proteins can be one or more detectable gene products, therapeutic gene products, gene products for manufacturing or harvesting, or antigenic gene products for antibody harvesting. In one embodiment, a virus can be modified to express a detectable protein and a therapeutic protein. In another embodiment, a virus can be modified to express two or more gene products for detection or two or more therapeutic gene products. For example, one or more proteins involved in biosynthesis of a luciferase substrate can be expressed along with luciferase. When two or more exogenous genes are introduced, the genes

- 89 -

can be regulated under the same or different regulatory sequences, and the genes can be inserted in the same or different regions of the viral genome, in a single or a plurality of genetic manipulation steps. In some embodiments, one gene, such as a gene encoding a detectable gene product, can be under the control of a constitutive promoter, while a second gene, such as a gene encoding a therapeutic gene product, can be under the control of an inducible promoter. Methods for inserting two or more genes in to a virus are known in the art and can be readily performed for a wide variety of viruses using a wide variety of exogenous genes, regulatory sequences, and/or other nucleic acid sequences.

10 Methods of producing recombinant viruses are known in the art. Provided herein for exemplary purposes are methods of producing a recombinant vaccinia virus. A recombinant vaccinia virus with an insertion in the *F14.5L* gene (NotI site of LIVP) can be prepared by the following steps: (a) generating (i) a vaccinia shuttle plasmid containing the modified *F14.5L* gene inserted at restriction site X and (ii) a dephosphorylated wt VV (VGL) DNA digested at restriction site X; (b) transfecting host cells infected with PUV-inactivated helper VV (VGL) with a mixture of the constructs of (i) and (ii) of step a; and (c) isolating the recombinant vaccinia viruses from the transfectants. One skilled in the art knows how to perform such methods, for example by following the instructions given in co-pending U.S. Application Nos. 10/872,156 and 11/238,025; see also Timiryasova *et al.* (*Biotechniques* 31: 534-540 (2001)). In one embodiment, restriction site X is a unique restriction site. A variety of suitable host cells also are known to the person skilled in the art and include many mammalian, avian and insect cells and tissues which are susceptible for vaccinia virus infection, including chicken embryo, rabbit, hamster and monkey kidney cells, for example, HeLa cells, RK<sub>13</sub>, CV-1, Vero, BSC40 and BSC-1 monkey kidney cells.

## 2. Screening of modified viruses

Modified viruses can be screened for any desired characteristics, including the characteristics described herein such as attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, increased ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, increased immunogenicity, increased or decreased replication competence, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof.

- 90 -

For example, the modified viruses can be screened for the ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells without aggressively killing the tumor cells. In another example, the viruses can be screened for expression of one or more detectable genes, including genes that can be used for imaging, or for expression of one or more genes for manufacture or harvest of the gene products and/or for harvest of antibodies  
5 against the gene products.

Any of a variety of known methods for screening for such characteristics can be performed, as demonstrated in the Examples provided herein. One exemplary method for screening for desired characteristics includes, but is not limited to,  
10 monitoring growth, replication and/or gene expression (including expression of an exogenous gene) in cell culture or other *in vitro* medium. The cell culture can be from any organism, and from any tissue source, and can include tumorous tissues. Other exemplary methods for screening for desired characteristics include, but are not limited to, administering a virus to animal, including non-human animals such as a  
15 mouse, monkey or ape, and optionally also including humans, and monitoring the virus, the tumor, and or the animal; monitoring can be performed by *in vivo* imaging of the virus and/or the tumor (*e.g.*, low light imaging of viral gene expression or ultrasonic tumor imaging), external monitoring of the tumor (*e.g.*, external measurement of tumor size), monitoring the animal (*e.g.*, monitoring animal weight,  
20 blood panel, antibody titer, spleen size, or liver size). Other exemplary methods for screening for desired characteristics include, but are not limited to, harvesting a non-human animal for the effects and location of the virus and expression by the virus, including methods such as harvesting a variety of organs including a tumor to determine presence of the virus and/or gene expression by the virus in the organs or  
25 tumor, harvesting of organs associated with an immune response or viral clearance such as the spleen or liver, harvesting the tumor to determine tumor size and viability of tumor cells, harvesting antibodies or antibody producing cells. Such screening and monitoring methods can be used in any of a variety of combinations, as is known in art. In one embodiment, a virus can be screened by administering the virus to an  
30 animal such as a non-human animal or a human, followed by monitoring by *in vivo* imaging. In another embodiment, a virus can be screened by administering the virus

- 91 -

to an animal such as a non-human animal, monitoring by *in vivo* imaging, and then harvesting the animal. Thus, provided herein are methods for screening a virus for desired characteristics by administering the virus to an animal such as an animal with a tumor, and monitoring the animal, tumor (if present), and/or virus in the animal for one or more characteristics. Also provided herein are methods for screening a virus for desired characteristics by administering the virus to a non-human animal such as a non-human animal with a tumor, harvesting the animal, and assaying the animal's organs, antibody titer, and/or tumor (if present) for one or more characteristics.

Provided herein are methods for screening a virus for attenuated pathogenicity or reduced toxicity, where the pathogenicity or toxicity can be determined by a variety of techniques, including, but not limited to, assessing the health state of the subject, measuring the body weight of a subject, blood or urine analysis of a subject, and monitoring tissue distribution of the virus within the subject; such techniques can be performed on a living subject *in vivo*, or can be performed post mortem. Methods also can include the ability of the viruses to lyse cells or cause cell death, which can be determined *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

When a subject drops below a threshold body weight, the virus can be considered pathogenic to the subject. Exemplary thresholds can be a drop of about 5% or more, a drop of about 10% or more, or a drop of about 15% or more in body weight relative to a reference. A body weight reference can be selected from any of a variety of references used in the art; for example, a body weight reference can be the weight of the subject prior to administration of the virus, the body weight reference can be a control subject having the same condition as the test subject (e.g., normal or tumor-injected), where the change in weight of the control is compared to the change in weight of the test subject for the time period after administration of the virus.

Blood or urine analysis of the subject can indicate level of immune response, level of toxins in the subject, or other levels of stress to cells, tissues or organs of the subject such as kidneys, pancreas, liver and spleen. Levels increased above established threshold levels can indicate pathogenicity of the virus to the subject. Threshold levels of components of blood or urine for indicating viral pathogenicity

- 92 -

are well known in the art, and any such thresholds can be selected herein according to the desired tolerance of pathogenicity or toxicity of the virus.

Tissue distribution of a virus in a subject can indicate pathogenicity or toxicity of the virus. In one embodiment, tissue distribution of a virus that is not pathogenic or toxic can be mostly in tumor relative to other tissues or organs. Microorganisms  
5 located mostly in tumor can accumulate, for example, at least about 2-fold greater, at least about 5-fold greater, at least about 10-fold greater, at least about 100-fold greater, at least about 1,000-fold greater, at least about 10,000-fold greater, at least about 100,000-fold greater, or at least about 1,000,000-fold greater, than the viruses  
10 accumulate in any other particular organ or tissue.

Provided herein are methods for screening a virus for tissue distribution or accumulation, where the tissue distribution can be determined by a variety of techniques, including, but not limited to, harvesting a non-human subject, *in vivo* imaging a detectable gene product in subject. Harvesting can be accomplished by  
15 euthanizing the non-human subject, and determining the accumulation of viruses in tumor and, optionally, the accumulation in one or more additional tissues or organs. The accumulation can be determined by any of a variety of methods, including, but not limited to, detecting gene products such as detectable gene products (*e.g.*, GFP or beta galactosidase), histological or microscopic evaluation of tissue, organ or tumor  
20 samples, or measuring the number of plaque or colony forming units present in a tissue, organ or tumor sample. In one embodiment, the desired amount of tissue distribution of a virus can be mostly in tumor relative to other tissues or organs. Microorganisms located mostly in tumor can accumulate, for example, at least about  
25 2-fold greater, at least about 5-fold greater, at least about 10-fold greater, at least about 100-fold greater, at least about 1,000-fold greater, at least about 10,000-fold greater, at least about 100,000-fold greater, or at least about 1,000,000-fold greater, than the viruses accumulate in any other particular organ or tissue.

Also provided herein are methods of screening for viruses that can elicit an immune response, where the immune response can be against the tumor cells or  
30 against the viruses. A variety of methods for measuring the ability to elicit an immune response are known in the art, and include measuring an overall increase in

- 93 -

immune activity in a subject, measuring an increase in anti-virus or anti-tumor antibodies in a subject, testing the ability of a virus-treated (typically a non-human) subject to prevent later infection/tumor formation or to rapidly eliminate viruses or tumor cells. Methods also can include the ability of the viruses to lyse cells or cause cell death, which can be determined *in vivo* or *in vitro*.

Also provided herein are methods for determining increased or decreased replication competence, by monitoring the speed of replication of the viruses. Such measurements can be performed *in vivo* or *in vitro*. For example, the speed of replication in a cell culture can be used to determine replication competence of a virus. In another example, the speed of replication in a tissue, organ or tumor in a subject can be used to measure replication competence. In some embodiments, decreased replication competence in non-tumor tissues and organs can be the characteristic to be selected in a screen. In other embodiments, increased replication competence in tumors can be the characteristic to be selected in a screen.

Also provided herein are methods for determining the ability of a virus to express genes, such as exogenous gene. Such methods can be performed *in vivo* or *in vitro*. For example, the viruses can be screened on selective plates for the ability to express a gene that permits survival of the virus or permits the virus to provide a detectable signal, such as turning X-gal blue. Such methods also can be performed *in vivo*, where expression can be determined, for example, by harvesting tissues, organs or tumors a non-human subject or by *in vivo* imaging of a subject.

Also provided herein are methods for determining the ability of a virus to express genes toward which the subject can develop antibodies, including exogenous genes toward which the subject can develop antibodies. Such methods can be performed *in vivo* using any of a variety of non-human subjects. For example, gene expression can be determined, for example, by bleeding a non-human subject to which a virus has been administered, and assaying the blood (or serum) for the presence of antibodies against the virus-expressed gene, or by any other method generally used for polyclonal antibody harvesting, such as production bleeds and terminal bleeds.

- 94 -

Also provided herein are methods for screening a virus that has two or more characteristics provided herein, including screening for attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, increased ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, increased immunogenicity, increased or  
5 decreased replication competence, ability to express exogenous proteins, and ability to elicit antibody production against a virally expressed gene product. A single monitoring technique, such as *in vivo* imaging, can be used to verify two or more characteristics, or a variety of different monitoring techniques can be used, as can be determined by one skilled in the art according to the selected characteristics and  
10 according to the monitoring techniques used.

Mouse models of different types of human and non-human animal cancers can be employed to assess the properties of the modified viruses. Tumors can be established by implantation of different tumor cell types. Exemplary human tumor xenograft models in mice include, but are not limited to, human lung carcinoma  
15 (A549 cells, ATCC No. CCL-185); human breast tumor (GI-101A cells, Rathinavelu *et al.*, *Cancer Biochem. Biophys.*, 17:133-146 (1999)); human ovarian carcinoma (OVCAR-3 cells, ATCC No. HTB-161); human pancreatic carcinoma (PANC-1 cells, ATCC No. CRL-1469 and MIA PaCa-2 cells, ATCC No. CRL-1420); DU145 cells (human prostate cancer cells, ATCC No. HTB-81); human prostate cancer (PC-3  
20 cells, ATCC# CRL-1435); colon carcinoma (HT-29 cells); human melanoma (888-MEL cells, 1858-MEL cells or 1936-MEL cells; *see e.g.* Wang *et al.*, (2006) *J. Invest. Dermatol.* 126:1372-1377); and human fibrosarcoma (HT-1080 cells, ATCC No. CCL-121). Exemplary rat tumor xenograft models in mice include, but are not limited to, glioma tumor (C6 cells; ATCC No. CCL-107). Exemplary mouse tumor  
25 homograft models include, but are not limited to, mouse melanoma (B16-F10 cells; ATCC No. CRL-6475). Exemplary cat tumor xenograft models in mice include, but are not limited to, feline fibrosarcoma (FC77.T cells; ATCC No. CRL-6105). Exemplary dog tumor tumor xenograft models in mice include, but are not limited to, canine osteosarcoma (D17 cells; ATCC No. CCL-183).

30 **F. VIRUSES FOR USE IN THE METHODS**

- 95 -

The viruses provided herein and viruses for the use in the method provided typically have one or more of the characteristics provided herein. For example, viruses provided herein can have attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor, ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenic, replication competent, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof. The viruses can be RNA or DNA viruses. The viruses can be cytoplasmic viruses, such as poxviruses, or can be nuclear viruses such as adenoviruses. The viruses provided herein can have as part of their life cycle lysis of the host cell's plasma membrane. Alternatively, the viruses provided herein can have as part of their life cycle exit of the host cell by non-lytic pathways such as budding or exocytosis. The viruses provided herein can cause a host organism to develop an immune response to virus-infected tumor cells as a result of lysis or apoptosis induced as part of the viral life cycle. The viruses provided herein also can be genetically engineered to cause a host organism to develop an immune response to virus-infected tumor cells as a result of lysis or apoptosis, regardless of whether or not lysis or apoptosis is induced as part of the viral life cycle. In some embodiments, the viruses provided herein can cause the host organism to mount an immune response against tumor cells without lysing or causing cell death of the tumor cells.

One skilled in the art can select from any of a variety of viruses, according to a variety of factors, including, but not limited to, the intended use of the virus, such as a diagnostic and/or therapeutic use (*e.g.*, tumor therapy or diagnosis, vaccination, antibody production, or heterologous protein production), the host organism, and the type of tumor.

The methods provided herein for increasing or decreasing the attenuation of a virus are typically applied to a virus that is used for a diagnostic or therapeutic use in a subject (*i.e.*, a therapeutic virus). A therapeutic virus for the methods provided herein can exhibit one or more desired characteristics for use as a therapeutic agent, such as, for example attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor, ability to activate



- 96 -

an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenic, replication competent, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof.

### 1. Cytoplasmic Viruses

The viruses provided herein can be cytoplasmic viruses, where the life cycle of the virus does not require entry of viral nucleic acid molecules in to the nucleus of the host cell. A variety of cytoplasmic viruses are known, including, but not limited to, pox viruses, African swine flu family viruses, and various RNA viruses such as picornaviruses, caliciviruses, togaviruses, coronaviruses and rhabdoviruses. In some embodiments, viral nucleic acid molecules do not enter the host cell nucleus throughout the viral life cycle. In other embodiments, the viral life cycle can be performed without use of host cell nuclear proteins. In other embodiments, the virulence or pathogenicity of the virus can be modulated by modulating the activity of one or more viral proteins involved in viral replication.

#### a. Poxviruses

In one embodiment, the virus provided herein is selected from the poxvirus family. Mechanisms for the control of transcription are conserved across the members of the poxvirus family (Broyles *et al. J. Gen. Virol* (2003) 84: 2293-2303). Poxviruses include Chordopoxviridae such as orthopoxvirus, parapoxvirus, avipoxvirus, capripoxvirus, leporipoxvirus, suipoxvirus, molluscipoxvirus and yatapoxvirus, as well as Entomopoxvirinae such as entomopoxvirus A, entomopoxvirus B, and entomopoxvirus A. Chordopoxviridae are vertebrate poxviruses and have similar antigenicities, morphologies and host ranges; thus, any of a variety of such poxviruses can be used herein. One skilled in the art can select a particular genera or individual chordopoxviridae according to the known properties of the genera or individual virus, and according to the selected characteristics of the virus (*e.g.*, pathogenicity, ability to elicit an immune response, preferential tumor localization), the intended use of the virus, the tumor type and the host organism. Exemplary chordopoxviridae genera are orthopoxvirus and avipoxvirus.

Avipoxviruses are known to infect a variety of different birds and have been administered to humans. Exemplary avipoxviruses include canarypox, fowlpox,

- 97 -

juncopox, mynahpox, pigeonpox, psittacinepox, quailpox, peacockpox, penguinpox, sparrowpox, starlingpox, and turkeypox viruses.

Orthopoxviruses are known to infect a variety of different mammals including rodents, domesticated animals, primates and humans. Several orthopoxviruses have a  
5 broad host range, while others have narrower host range. Exemplary orthopoxviruses include buffalopox, camelpox, cowpox, ectromelia, monkeypox, raccoon pox, skunk pox, tatera pox, uasin gishu, vaccinia, variola, and volepox viruses. In some embodiments, the orthopoxvirus selected can be an orthopoxvirus known to infect humans, such as cowpox, monkeypox, vaccinia, or variola virus. Optionally, the  
10 orthopoxvirus known to infect humans can be selected from the group of orthopoxviruses with a broad host range, such as cowpox, monkeypox, or vaccinia virus.

#### i. Vaccinia Virus

One exemplary orthopoxvirus presented in the methods provided herein is  
15 vaccinia virus. A variety of vaccinia virus strains are available, including Western Reserve (WR), Copenhagen, Tashkent, Tian Tan, Lister, Wyeth, IHD-J, and IHD-W, Brighton, Ankara, MVA, Dairen I, LIPV, LC16M8, LC16MO, LIVP, WR 65-16, Connaught, New York City Board of Health. Exemplary vaccinia viruses are Lister or LIVP vaccinia viruses. In one embodiment, the Lister strain can be an attenuated  
20 Lister strain, such as the LIVP (Lister virus from the Institute of Viral Preparations, Moscow, Russia) strain, which was produced by further attenuation of the Lister strain. The LIVP strain was used for vaccination throughout the world, particularly in India and Russia, and is widely available. In another embodiment, the viruses and methods provided herein can be based on modifications to the Lister strain of vaccinia  
25 virus. Lister (also referred to as Elstree) vaccinia virus is available from any of a variety of sources. For example, the Elstree vaccinia virus is available at the ATCC under Accession Number VR-1549. The Lister vaccinia strain has high transduction efficiency in tumor cells with high levels of gene expression.

Any known vaccinia virus, or modifications thereof that correspond to those  
30 provided herein or known to those of skill in the art to reduce toxicity of a vaccinia

- 98 -

virus. Generally, however, the mutation will be a multiple mutant and the virus will be further selected to reduce toxicity.

Vaccinia virus possesses a variety of features for use in cancer gene therapy and vaccination. It has a broad host and cell type range. Vaccinia is a cytoplasmic virus, thus, it does not insert its genome into the host genome during its life cycle. The linear dsDNA viral genome of vaccinia virus is approximately 200 kb in size, encoding a total of approximately 200 potential genes. The vaccinia virus genome has a large carrying capacity for foreign genes, where up to 25 kb of exogenous DNA fragments (approximately 12% of the vaccinia genome size) can be inserted. The genomes of several of the vaccinia strains have been completely sequenced, and many essential and nonessential genes identified. Due to high sequence homology among different strains, genomic information from one vaccinia strain can be used for designing and generating modified viruses in other strains. Finally, the techniques for production of modified vaccinia strains by genetic engineering are well established (Moss, *Curr. Opin. Genet. Dev.* 3: 86-90 (1993); Broder and Earl, *Mol. Biotechnol.* 13: 223-245 (1999); Timiryasova *et al.*, *Biotechniques* 31: 534-540 (2001)).

Historically, vaccinia virus was used to immunize against smallpox infection. More recently, modified vaccinia viruses are being developed as vaccines to combat a variety of diseases. Attenuated vaccinia virus can trigger a cell-mediated immune response. Strategies such as prime/boost vaccination, vaccination with nonreplicating vaccinia virus or a combination of these strategies, have shown promising results for the development of safe and effective vaccination protocols. Mutant vaccinia viruses from previous studies exhibit a variety of shortcomings, including a lack of efficient delivery of the viral vehicle to the desired tissue only (*e.g.*, specific accumulation in a tumors), a lack of safety because of possible serious complications (*e.g.*, in young children, eczema vaccinatum and encephalitis, and in adults disseminated or progressive vaccinia can result if the individual is severely immunodeficient).

During the vaccinia life cycle, transcription of vaccinia genes occurs in three stages: early, intermediate, and late, which correspond to the stages of viral replication and virion assembly. Progression through each stage occurs by coordinated involvement of viral and host proteins. Early stage gene expression

- 99 -

depends on viral transcription factors located within the virion core, whereas late gene expression requires the cooperation of host proteins and viral factors, including newly expressed viral transcription factors. Exemplary of poxvirus early genes include those that encode proteins involved in evasion of host defenses, DNA replication,  
5 nucleotide biosynthesis, and intermediate gene transcription. Exemplary intermediate and late genes include those that encode factors needed for late gene expression and proteins involved in virion morphogenesis and assembly. In addition, several vaccinia genes are continuously transcribed throughout infection.

Increases in promoter competition can be generated by competition for  
10 endogenous vaccinia transcription, but can also involve host factors as well. Studies have shown the involvement of host cellular proteins in the intermediate and late stages of vaccinia viral transcription. For example, reconstitution experiments for studying vaccinia intermediate transcription in vitro indicated the requirement for one or more cellular factors located in the nuclear fraction, and additionally, in the  
15 cytoplasm of infected cells (Rosales et al. (1994) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 91:3794-3798). Ribonucleoproteins, such as A2/B1 and RBM3 were also found to activate transcription vaccinia late promoters (Wright *et al.* (2001) *J. Biol. Chem.* 276:40680-40686, Dellis *et al.* (2004) *Virology* 329(2):328-336). Host cell nuclear proteins, such as YinYang1 (YY1), SP1, and TATA binding protein (TBP) were subsequently found  
20 to be recruited from the nucleus to sites of vaccinia viral transcription in the cytoplasm (Slezak *et al.* (2004) *Virus Res.* 102(2):177-184, Oh and Broyles, (2005) *J. Virol.* 79 (20) 12852-12860). TATA boxes, which bind to TBP, are located in many intermediate and late viral promoters, suggesting a role for this host factor in facilitating the recruitment of transcription factors to the vaccinia viral promoters.  
25 The formation of such TBP-associated complexes can furthermore aid in transcriptional switching from early to late viral genes (Knutson *et al.* (2006) 80(14) 6784-6793). Binding sites for YY1 are located downstream of the conserved TAAAT late promoter motif in vaccinia late promoters. YY1, which is a zinc finger transcription factor of the krüppel family, is involved in the regulation of cellular  
30 genes by acting as an initiator element factor that promotes transcription (Shi *et al.* (1997) *Biochim. Biophys. Acta* 1332: F49-F66). Data on vaccinia virus suggests that

- 100 -

YY1 can play a similar role in vaccinia intermediate and late transcription (Broyles *et al.* (1999) *J. Biol. Chem.* 274(50):35662-35667). Furthermore, YY1 has been shown to be required for transcription in other viruses, such as, for example, herpesviruses, papillomaviruses polyomaviruses, adenoviruses, parvoviruses, and retroviruses (Chen *et al.* (1991) *J. Virol.* 66:4303-4314, Bell *et al.*, (1998) *Virology* 252:149-161, 5 Bauknecht *et al.* (1992) *EMBO J.* 11:4607-4617, Pajunnk *et al.* (1997) *J. Gen. Virol.* 78:3287-3295, Martelli *et al.* (1996) *J. Virol.* 70:1433-1438, Zock *et al.* (1993) *J. Virol.* 67:682-693, Momoeda *et al.* *J. Virol.* 68:7159-7168, and Knossi *et al.* (1999) *J. Virol.* 73:1254-1261).

10 In addition to the examples provided herein, the effects of gene expression cassettes on the vaccinia virus growth have been reported in screens for vaccinia essential genes. In one such study, insertion of an expression cassette encoding the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyl transferase gene under the control of the vaccinia 7.5K early promoter in the vaccinia F11L gene had a negative effect on viral growth, 15 whereas a point mutation in the F11L gene did not affect viral growth (Kato *et al.*, (2004) *J. Virol. Methods* 115(1):31-40). Thus the inserted expression cassettes encoding non-therapeutic marker genes can contribute to the overall attenuation of the virus.

20 Provided herein are vaccinia viruses with insertions, mutations or deletions, as described more generally elsewhere herein. The vaccinia viruses are modified or selected to have low toxicity and to accumulate in the target tissue. Exemplary of such viruses are those from the L1VP strain.

Exemplary insertions, mutations or deletions are those that result in an attenuated vaccinia virus relative to the wild type strain. For example, vaccinia virus 25 insertions, mutations or deletions can decrease pathogenicity of the vaccinia virus, for example, by reducing the toxicity, reducing the infectivity, reducing the ability to replicate, or reducing the number of non-tumor organs or tissues to which the vaccinia virus can accumulate. Other exemplary insertions, mutations or deletions include, but are not limited to, those that increase antigenicity of the microorganism, those that 30 permit detection or imaging, those that increase toxicity of the microorganism (optionally, controlled by an inducible promoter). For example, modifications can be

- 101 -

made in genes that are involved in nucleotide metabolism, host interactions and virus formation. Any of a variety of insertions, mutations or deletions of the vaccinia virus known in the art can be used herein, including insertions, mutations or deletions of: the thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene, the hemagglutinin (*HA*) gene, the *F14.5L* gene (see 5 *e.g.*, U.S. Patent Pub. No. 2005-0031643), the *VGF* gene (see *e.g.*, U.S. Pat. Pub. No. 20030031681); a hemorrhagic region or an A type inclusion body region (see *e.g.*, U.S. Pat. No. 6,596,279); *HindIII* F, *F13L*, or *HindIII* M (see *e.g.*, U.S. Pat. No. 6,548,068); *A33R*, *A34R*, *A36R* or *B5R* genes (see, *e.g.*, Katz *et al.*, *J. Virology* 77:12266-12275 (2003)); *SalF7L* (see, *e.g.*, Moore *et al.*, *EMBO J.* 1992 11:1973- 10 1980); *NIL* (see, *e.g.*, Kotwal *et al.*, *Virology* 171: 579-587 (1989)); *M1 lambda* (see, *e.g.*, Child *et al.*, *Virology*. 174: 625-629(1990)); *HR*, *HindIII*-*MK*, *HindIII*-*MKF*, *HindIII*-*CNM*, *RR*, or *BamF* (see, *e.g.*, Lee *et al.*, *J. Virol.* 66: 2617-2630 (1992)); or *C21L* (see, *e.g.*, Isaacs *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA.* 89: 628-632 (1992)).

Modification of vaccinia viruses at *F14.5L* gene is described in U.S. Patent 15 Pub. No. 2005-0031643 (referred to as *F3* gene therein; see also Mikryukov *et al.* (1988) *Biotechnologiya* 4: 442-449). For example, the *F14.5L* gene has been modified at the unique single NotI restriction site located within the *F14.5L* gene at position 35 or at position 1475 inside of the *HindIII*-F fragment of vaccinia virus DNA strain LIVP (Mikryukov *et al.*, *Biotechnologiy* 4: 442-449 (1988)) by insertion 20 of a foreign DNA sequence into the NotI digested virus DNA. Thus, for use in the methods provided herein, vaccinia viruses can contain an insertion, mutation or deletion of the *F14.5L* gene or a mutation of a corresponding locus. In vaccinia virus strain Copenhagen (Goebel *et al.*, *Virology* 179: 247-266 (1990)) the NotI restriction site is located between the two open reading frames (ORF) encoding *F14L* and *F15L* 25 genes. In vaccinia virus strain LIVP, the NotI restriction site is located in the ORF encoding the *F14.5L* gene with unknown function (Mikryukov *et al.*, *Biotechnologiya* 4: 442-449 (1988)). Results of the animal experiments suggest that interruption of the *F14.5L* gene with a gene expression cassette is correlated with decreased viral virulence, though it is not known whether mutation of the *F14.5L* gene itself 30 contributes to the decrease in virulence.

- 102 -

The *F14.5L* gene is conserved in a variety of different vaccinia virus strains, including WR (nucleotides 42238-42387 of GenBank Accession No. AY243312.1, Ankara (nucleotides 37155-37304 of GenBank Accession No. U94848.1), Tian Tan (nucleotides 41808-41954 of GenBank Accession No. AF095689), Acambis 3000 (nucleotides 31365-31514 of GenBank Accession No. AY603355.1) and Copenhagen (nucleotides 45368-45517 of GenBank Accession No. M35027.1) strains. The *F3* gene also is conserved in the larger family of poxviruses, particularly among orthopoxviruses such as cowpox (nucleotides 58498-58647 of GenBank Accession No. X94355.2), rabbitpox (nucleotides 46969-47118 of GenBank Accession No. AY484669.1), camelpox (nucleotides 43331-43480 of GenBank Accession No. AY009089.1), ectromelia (nucleotides 51008-51157 of GenBank Accession No. AF012825.2), monkeypox (nucleotides 42515-42660 of GenBank Accession No. AF380138.1), and variola viruses (nucleotides 33100-33249 of GenBank Accession No. X69198.1). Accordingly, also provided are modifications of the equivalent of the *F14.5L* gene in poxviruses, such as orthopoxviruses including a variety of vaccinia virus strains. One skilled in the art can identify the location of the equivalent *F14.5L* gene in a variety of poxviruses, orthopoxviruses and vaccinia viruses. In another example, the equivalent to the *F14.5L* gene in LVP can be determined by its structural location in the viral genome: the *F3* gene is located on the HindIII-F fragment of vaccinia virus between open reading frames *F14L* and *F15L* as defined by Goebel *et al.* (*Virology* 179: 247-266(1990)), and in the opposite orientation of ORFs *F14L* and *F15L*; one skilled in the art can readily identify the gene located in the structurally equivalent region in a large variety of related viruses, such as a large variety of pox viruses.

Comparative protein sequence analysis revealed some insight into protein function. The closest match with the protein encoded by the *F14.5L* gene (strain LVP) is a prolyl 4-hydroxylase alpha subunit precursor (4-PH alpha) from the nematode *Caenorhabditis elegans* (Veijola *et al.*, *J. Biol. Chem.* 269: 26746-26753 (1994)). This alpha subunit forms an active alpha-beta dimer with the human protein disulfide isomerase beta subunit. Prolyl 4-hydroxylase (EC 1.14.11.2) catalyzes the formation of 4-hydroxyproline in collagen. The vertebrate enzyme is an alpha 2-beta

- 103 -

2 tetramer, the beta subunit of which is identical to the protein disulfide-isomerase (PDI). However, the importance of this protein for vaccinia viral replication is unknown.

**b. Other cytoplasmic viruses**

5 Also provided herein are cytoplasmic viruses that are not poxviruses. Cytoplasmic viruses can replicate without introducing viral nucleic acid molecules into the nucleus of the host cell. A variety of such cytoplasmic viruses are known in the art, and include African swine flu family viruses and various RNA viruses such as  
10 arenaviruses, picornaviruses, caliciviruses, togaviruses, coronaviruses, paramyxoviruses, flaviviruses, reoviruses, and rhaboviruses. Exemplary togaviruses include Sindbis viruses. Exemplary arenaviruses include lymphocytic choriomeningitis virus. Exemplary rhaboviruses include vesicular stomatitis viruses. Exemplary paramyxoviruses include Newcastle Disease viruses and measles viruses. Exemplary picornaviruses include polio viruses, bovine enteroviruses and  
15 rhinoviruses. Exemplary flaviviruses include Yellow fever virus; attenuated Yellow fever viruses are known in the art, as exemplified in Barrett *et al.* (*Biologicals* 25: 17-25 (1997)), and McAllister *et al.* (*J. Virol.* 74: 9197-9205 (2000)).

Also provided herein are modifications of the viruses provided above to enhance one or more characteristics relative to the wild type virus. Such  
20 characteristics can include, but are not limited to, attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, increased ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, increased immunogenicity, increased or decreased replication competence, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof. In some embodiments, the modified viruses have an ability to activate an  
25 immune response against tumor cells without aggressively killing the tumor cells. In other embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express one or more detectable genes, including genes that can be used for imaging. In other embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express one or more genes for harvesting the gene products and/or for harvesting antibodies against the gene products.

30 **2. Adenovirus, Herpes, Retroviruses**



- 104 -

Further provided herein are viruses that include in their life cycle entry of a nucleic acid molecule into the nucleus of the host cell. A variety of such viruses is known in the art, and includes herpesviruses, papovaviruses, retroviruses, adenoviruses, parvoviruses and orthomyxoviruses. Exemplary herpesviruses include  
5 herpes simplex type 1 viruses, cytomegaloviruses, and Epstein-Barr viruses. Exemplary papovaviruses include human papillomavirus and SV40 viruses. Exemplary retroviruses include lentiviruses. Exemplary orthomyxoviruses include influenza viruses. Exemplary parvoviruses include adeno associated viruses.

Also provided herein are modifications of the viruses provided above to  
10 enhance one or more characteristics relative to the wild type virus. Such characteristics can include, but are not limited to, attenuated pathogenicity, reduced toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, increased ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, increased immunogenicity, increased or decreased replication competence, and are able to express exogenous proteins, and combinations  
15 thereof. In some embodiments, the modified viruses have an ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells without aggressively killing the tumor cells. In other embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express one or more detectable genes, including genes that can be used for imaging. In other embodiments, the viruses can be modified to express one or more genes for harvesting the gene products  
20 and/or for harvesting antibodies against the gene products.

#### **G. EXEMPLARY CHARACTERISTICS OF THE VIRUSES**

The viruses provided herein, viruses provided for use in the methods, and viruses that have been modified using the methods provided herein can accumulate in immunoprivileged cells or immunoprivileged tissues, including tumors and/or  
25 metastases, and also including wounded tissues and cells. While the viruses provided herein can typically be cleared from the subject to whom the viruses are administered by activity of the subject's immune system, viruses can nevertheless accumulate, survive and proliferate in immunoprivileged cells and tissues such as tumors because such immunoprivileged areas are sequestered from the host's immune system.  
30 Accordingly, the methods provided herein, as applied to tumors and/or metastases,

- 105 -

and therapeutic methods relating thereto, can readily be applied to other immunoprivileged cells and tissues, including wounded cells and tissues.

**1. Attenuated**

The viruses provided herein and viruses provided for use in the methods are typically attenuated. Attenuated viruses have a decreased capacity to cause disease in a host. The decreased capacity can result from any of a variety of different modifications to the ability of a virus to be pathogenic. For example, a virus can have reduced toxicity, reduced ability to accumulate in non-tumorous organs or tissue, reduced ability to cause cell lysis or cell death, or reduced ability to replicate compared to the non-attenuated form thereof. The attenuated viruses provided herein, however, retain at least some capacity to replicate and to cause immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells to leak or lyse, undergo cell death, or otherwise cause or enhance an immune response to immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells.

**a. Reduced toxicity**

Viruses can be toxic to their hosts by manufacturing one or more compounds that worsen the health condition of the host. Toxicity to the host can be manifested in any of a variety of manners, including septic shock, neurological effects, or muscular effects. The viruses provided herein can have a reduced toxicity to the host. The reduced toxicity of a virus of the present methods and compositions can range from a toxicity in which the host experiences no toxic effects, to a toxicity in which the host does not typically die from the toxic effects of the microbes. In some embodiments, the viruses are of a reduced toxicity such that a host typically has no significant long-term effect from the presence of the viruses in the host, beyond any effect on tumorous, metastatic or necrotic organs or tissues. For example, the reduced toxicity can be a minor fever or minor infection, which lasts for less than about a month, and following the fever or infection, the host experiences no adverse effects resultant from the fever or infection. In another example, the reduced toxicity can be measured as an unintentional decline in body weight of about 5% or less for the host after administration of the microbes. In other examples, the virus has no toxicity to the host.

- 106 -

**b. Accumulate in tumor, not substantially in other organs**

Viruses can accumulate in any of a variety of tissues and organs of the host. Accumulation can be evenly distributed over the entire host organism, or can be concentrated in one or a few organs or tissues. The viruses provided herein can  
5 accumulate in targeted tissues, such as immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumors and also metastases. In some embodiments, the viruses provided herein exhibit accumulation in immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells relative to normal organs or tissues that is equal to or greater than the accumulation that occurs with wild-type viruses. In other embodiments, the viruses provided herein  
10 exhibit accumulation in immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells that is equal to or greater than the accumulation in any other particular organ or tissue. For example, the viruses provided herein can demonstrate an accumulation in immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells that is at least about 2-fold greater, at least about 5-fold greater, at least about 10-fold greater, at least about 100-  
15 fold greater, at least about 1,000-fold greater, at least about 10,000-fold greater, at least about 100,000-fold greater, or at least about 1,000,000-fold greater, than the accumulation in any other particular organ or tissue.

In some embodiments, a virus can accumulate in targeted tissues and cells, such as immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells, without accumulating  
20 in one or more selected tissues or organs. For example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the brain. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in neural cells. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in ovaries. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the blood. In  
25 another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the heart. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the bladder. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in testes. In another example, a virus can accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the spleen. In another example, a virus can  
30 accumulate in tumor cells without accumulating in the lungs.

- 107 -

One skilled in the art can determine the desired capability for the viruses to selectively accumulate in targeted tissue or cells, such as in an immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor rather than non-target organs or tissues, according to a variety of factors known in the art, including, but not limited to, toxicity of the viruses, dosage, tumor to be treated, immunocompetence of host, and disease state of the host.

**c. Ability to elicit or enhance immune response to tumor cells**

Viruses herein can cause or enhance an immune response to antigens in the targeted tissues or cells, such as immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumor cells. The immune response can be triggered by any of a variety of mechanisms, including the presence or expression of immunostimulatory cytokines and the expression or release antigenic compounds that can cause an immune response.

Cells, in response to an infection such as a viral infection, can send out signals to stimulate an immune response against the cells. Exemplary signals sent from such cells include antigens, cytokines and chemokines such as interferon-gamma and interleukin-15. The viruses provided herein can cause targeted cells to send out such signals in response to infection by the microbes, resulting in a stimulation of the host's immune system against the targeted cells or tissues, such as tumor cells.

In another embodiment, targeted cells or tissues, such as tumor cells, can contain one or more compounds that can be recognized by the host's immune system in mounting an immune response against a tumor. Such antigenic compounds can be compounds on the cell surface or the tumor cell, and can be protein, carbohydrate, lipid, nucleic acid, or combinations thereof. Viral-mediated release of antigenic compounds can result in triggering the host's immune system to mount an immune response against the tumor. The amount of antigenic compound released by the tumor cells is any amount sufficient to trigger an immune response in a subject; for example, the antigenic compounds released from one or more tumor cells can trigger a host immune response in the organism that is known to be accessible to leukocytes.

The time duration of antigen release is an amount of time sufficient for the host to establish an immune response to one or more tumor antigens. In some embodiments, the duration is an amount of time sufficient for the host to establish a

- 108 -

sustained immune response to one or more tumor antigens. One skilled in the art can determine such a time duration based on a variety of factors affecting the time duration for a subject to develop an immune response, including the level of the tumor antigen in the subject, the number of different tumor antigens, the antigenicity of the antigen, the immunocompetence of the host, and the access of the antigenic material to the vasculature of the host. Typically, the duration of antigen release can be at least about a week, at least about 10 days, at least about two weeks, or at least about a month.

The viruses provided herein can have any of a variety of properties that can cause target cells and tissues, such as tumor cells, to release antigenic compounds. Exemplary properties are the ability to lyse cells and the ability to elicit apoptosis in tumor cells. Viruses that are unable to lyse tumor cells or cause tumor cell death can nevertheless be used in the methods provided herein when such viruses can cause some release or display of antigenic compounds from tumor cells. A variety of mechanisms for antigen release or display without lysis or cell death are known in the art, and any such mechanism can be used by the viruses provided herein, including, but not limited to, secretion of antigenic compounds, enhanced cell membrane permeability, expression of immunostimulatory proteins or altered cell surface expression or altered MHC presentation in tumor cells when the tumor cells can be accessed by the host's immune system. Regardless of the mechanism by which the host's immune system is activated, the net result of the presence of the viruses in the tumor is a stimulation of the host's immune system, at least in part, against the tumor cells. In one example, the viruses can cause an immune response against tumor cells not infected by the viruses.

In one embodiment, the viruses provided herein can cause tumor cells to release an antigen that is not present on the tumor cell surface. Tumor cells can produce compounds such as proteins that can cause an immune response; however, in circumstances in which the antigenic compound is not on the tumor cell surface, the tumor can proliferate, and even metastasize, without the antigenic compound causing an immune response. Within the scope of the present methods, the viruses provided herein can cause antigenic compounds within the cell to release away from the cell

- 109 -

and away from the tumor, which can result in triggering an immune response to such an antigen. Even if not all cells of a tumor are releasing antigens, the immune response can initially be targeted toward the "leaky" tumor cells, and the bystander effect of the immune response can result in further tumor cell death around the

5 "leaky" tumor cells.

**d. Balance of pathogenicity and release of tumor antigens**

Typical methods of involving treatment of targeted cells and tissues, such as immunoprivileged cells and tissues, such as tumors, are designed to cause rapid and complete removal thereof. For example, many viruses can cause lysis and/or

10 apoptosis in a variety of cells, including tumor cells. Viruses that can vigorously lyse or cause cell death can be highly pathogenic, and can even kill the host. Furthermore, therapeutic methods based upon such rapid and complete lysis are typically therapeutically ineffective.

In contrast, the viruses provided herein are not aggressive in causing cell death

15 or lysis. They can have a limited or no ability to cause cell death as long as they accumulate in the target cells or tissues and result in alteration of cell membranes to cause leakage of antigens against which an immune response is mounted. It is desirable that their apoptotic or lytic effect is sufficiently slow or ineffective to permit sufficient antigenic leakage for a sufficient time for the host to mount an effective

20 immune response against the target tissues. Such immune response alone or in combination with the lytic/apoptotic effect of the virus results in elimination of the target tissue and also elimination of future development, such as metastases and reoccurrence, of such tissues or cells. While the viruses provided herein can have a limited ability to cause cell death, the viruses provided herein can nevertheless

25 stimulate the host's immune system to attack tumor cells. As a result, such viruses also are typically unlikely to have substantial toxicity to the host.

In one embodiment, the viruses have a limited, or no ability to cause tumor cell death, while still causing or enhancing an immune response against tumor cells. In one example, the rate of viral-mediated tumor cell death is less than the rate of

30 tumor cell growth or replication. In another example, the rate of viral-mediated tumor cell death is slow enough for the host to establish a sustained immune response to one

- 110 -

or more tumor antigens. Typically, the time for cell death is sufficient to establish an anti-tumor immune response and can be at least about a week, at least about 10 days, at least about two weeks, or at least about a month, depending upon the host and the targeted cells or tissues.

5           In another embodiment, the viruses provided herein can cause cell death in tumor cells, without causing substantial cell death in non-tumor tissues. In such an embodiment, the viruses can aggressively kill tumor cells, as long as no substantial cell death occurs in non-tumor cells, and optionally, so long as the host has sufficient capability to mount an immune response against the tumor cells.

10           In one embodiment, the ability of the viruses to cause cell death is slower than the host's immune response against the viruses. The ability for the host to control infection by the viruses can be determined by the immune response (*e.g.*, antibody titer) against viral antigens. Typically, after the host has mounted immune response against the viruses, the viruses can have reduced pathogenicity in the host. Thus,  
15           when the ability of the viruses to cause cell death is slower than the host's immune response against the microbes, viral-mediated cell death can occur without risk of serious disease or death to the host. In one example, the ability of the viruses to cause tumor cell death is slower than the host's immune response against the microbes.

## 2. Immunogenicity

20           The viruses provided herein also can be immunogenic. An immunogenic virus can create a host immune response against the virus. In one embodiment, the viruses can be sufficiently immunogenic to result in a large anti-viral antibody titer. The viruses provided herein can have the ability to elicit an immune response. The immune response can be activated in response to viral antigens or can be activated as  
25           a result of viral-infection induced cytokine or chemokine production. Immune response against the viruses can decrease the likelihood of pathogenicity toward the host organism.

          Immune response against the viruses also can result in target tissue or cell, such as tumor cell, killing. In one embodiment, the immune response against viral  
30           infection can result in an immune response against tumor cells, including developing antibodies against tumor antigens. In one example, an immune response mounted

- 111 -

against the virus can result in tumor cell killing by the "bystander effect," where uninfected tumor cells nearby infected tumor cells are killed at the same time as infected cells, or alternatively, where uninfected tumor cells nearby extracellular viruses are killed at the same time as the viruses. As a result of bystander effect  
5 tumor cell death, tumor cell antigens can be released from cells, and the host organism's immune system can mount an immune response against tumor cell antigens, resulting in an immune response against the tumor itself.

In one embodiment, the virus can be selected or modified to express one or more antigenic compounds, including superantigenic compounds. The antigenic  
10 compounds such as superantigens can be endogenous gene products or can be exogenous gene products. Superantigens, including toxoids, are known in the art and described elsewhere herein.

### **3. Replication competent**

The viruses provided herein can be replication competent. In a variety of viral  
15 systems, the administered virus is rendered replication incompetent to limit pathogenicity risk to the host. While replication incompetence can protect the host from the virus, it also limits the ability of the virus to infect and kill tumor cells, and typically results in only a short-lived effect. In contrast, the viruses provided herein can be attenuated but replication competent, resulting in low toxicity to the host and  
20 accumulation mainly or solely in tumors. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be replication competent without creating a pathogenicity risk to the host.

Attenuation of the viruses provided herein can include, but is not limited to, reducing the replication competence of the virus. For example, a virus can be modified to decrease or eliminate an activity related to replication, such as a  
25 transcriptional activator that regulates replication in the virus. In an example, a virus, can have the viral thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene modified, which decreases replication of the virus.

### **4. Genetic variants**

The viruses provided herein can be modified from their wild type form.  
30 Modifications can include any of a variety of changes, and typically include changes to the genome or nucleic acid molecules of the viruses. Exemplary nucleic acid



- 112 -

molecular modifications include truncations, insertions, deletions and mutations. In an exemplary modification, a viral gene can be modified by truncation, insertion, deletion or mutation. In an exemplary insertion, an exogenous gene can be inserted into the genome of the virus.

5           Modifications of the viruses provided herein can result in a modification of viral characteristics, including those provided herein such as pathogenicity, toxicity, ability to preferentially accumulate in tumor, ability to lyse cells or cause cell death, ability to elicit an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenicity, and replication competence. Variants can be obtained by general methods such as  
10   mutagenesis and passage in cell or tissue culture and selection of desired properties, as is known in the art, as exemplified for respiratory syncytial virus in Murphy *et al.*, *Virus Res.* 1994, 32:13-26.

          Variants also can be obtained by mutagenic methods in which nucleic acid residues of the virus are added, removed or modified relative to the wild type. Any of  
15   a variety of known mutagenic methods can be used, including recombination-based methods, restriction endonuclease-based methods, and PCR-based methods. Mutagenic methods can be directed against particular nucleotide sequences such as genes, or can be random, where selection methods based on desired characteristics can be used to select mutated viruses. Any of a variety of viral modifications can be  
20   made, according to the selected virus and the particular known modifications of the selected virus.

#### **H.     PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS, COMBINATIONS AND KITS**

          Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions, combinations and kits containing a virus provided herein and one or more components. Pharmaceutical  
25   compositions can include a virus provided herein and a pharmaceutical carrier. Combinations can include two or more viruses, a virus and a detectable compound, a virus and a viral expression modulating compound, a virus and a therapeutic compound, or any combination thereof. Kits can include the pharmaceutical compositions and/or combinations provided herein, and one or more components,  
30   such as instructions for use, a device for detecting a virus in a subject, a device for

- 113 -

administering a compound to a subject, and a device for administering a compound to a subject.

### 1. Pharmaceutical Compositions

Provided herein are pharmaceutical compositions containing a virus provided  
5 herein and a suitable pharmaceutical carrier. Pharmaceutical compositions provided herein can be in various forms, *e.g.*, in solid, liquid, powder, aqueous, or lyophilized form. Examples of suitable pharmaceutical carriers are known in the art and include but are not limited to water, buffers, saline solutions, phosphate buffered saline solutions, various types of wetting agents, sterile solutions, alcohols, gum arabic,  
10 vegetable oils, benzyl alcohols, gelatin, glycerin, carbohydrates such as lactose, sucrose, amylose or starch, magnesium stearate, talc, silicic acid, viscous paraffin, perfume oil, fatty acid monoglycerides and diglycerides, pentaerythritol fatty acid esters, hydroxy methylcellulose, powders, among others. Pharmaceutical compositions provided herein can contain other additives including, for example,  
15 antioxidants and preservatives, analgesic agents, binders, disintegrants, coloring, diluents, excipients, extenders, glidants, solubilizers, stabilizers, tonicity agents, vehicles, viscosity agents, flavoring agents, emulsions, such as oil/water emulsions, emulsifying and suspending agents, such as acacia, agar, alginic acid, sodium alginate, bentonite, carbomer, carrageenan, carboxymethylcellulose, cellulose,  
20 cholesterol, gelatin, hydroxyethyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl cellulose, hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, methylcellulose, octoxynol 9, oleyl alcohol, povidone, propylene glycol monostearate, sodium lauryl sulfate, sorbitan esters, stearyl alcohol, tragacanth, xanthan gum, and derivatives thereof, solvents, and miscellaneous ingredients such as crystalline cellulose, microcrystalline cellulose, citric acid, dextrin, dextrose, liquid  
25 glucose, lactic acid, lactose, magnesium chloride, potassium metaphosphate, starch, among others. Such carriers and/or additives can be formulated by conventional methods and can be administered to the subject at a suitable dose. Stabilizing agents such as lipids, nuclease inhibitors, polymers, and chelating agents can preserve the compositions from degradation within the body.

30 Colloidal dispersion systems that can be used for delivery of viruses include macromolecule complexes, nanocapsules, microspheres, beads and lipid-based

- 114 -

systems including oil-in-water emulsions (mixed), micelles, liposomes and lipoplexes. An exemplary colloidal system is a liposome. Organ-specific or cell-specific liposomes can be used in order to achieve delivery only to the desired tissue. The targeting of liposomes can be carried out by the person skilled in the art by applying commonly known methods. This targeting includes passive targeting (utilizing the natural tendency of the liposomes to distribute to cells of the RES in organs which contain sinusoidal capillaries) or active targeting (for example, by coupling the liposome to a specific ligand, for example, an antibody, a receptor, sugar, glycolipid and protein by methods known to those of skill in the art). In the present methods, monoclonal antibodies can be used to target liposomes to specific tissues, for example, tumor tissue, via specific cell-surface ligands.

## 2. Host cells

Also provided herein are host cells that contain a virus provided herein, such as a modified vaccinia virus. Such cells can be group of a single type of cells or a mixture of different types of cells. Host cells can include cultured cell lines, primary cells, and proliferative cells. These host cells can include any of a variety of animal cells, such as mammalian, avian and insect cells and tissues that are susceptible to the virus, such as vaccinia virus, infection, including chicken embryo, rabbit, hamster, and monkey kidney cells. Suitable host cells include but are not limited to hematopoietic cells (totipotent, stem cells, leukocytes, lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, APC, dendritic cells, non-human cells and the like), pulmonary cells, tracheal cells, hepatic cells, epithelial cells, endothelial cells, muscle cells (e.g., skeletal muscle, cardiac muscle or smooth muscle), fibroblasts, and cell lines including, for example, CV-1, BSC40, Vero, BSC40 and BSC-1, and human HeLa cells. Methods for transforming these host cells, phenotypically selecting transformants, and other such methods are known in the art.

## 3. Combinations

Provided are combinations of the viruses provided herein and a second agent, such as a second virus or other therapeutic or diagnostic agent. A combination can include any virus or reagent for effecting attenuation thereof in accord with the methods provided herein. Combinations can include a virus provided herein with one

- 115 -

or more additional viruses. Combinations of the viruses provided can also contain pharmaceutical compositions containing the viruses or host cells containing the viruses as described herein.

In one embodiment, the virus in a combination is an attenuated virus, such as  
5 for example, an attenuated vaccinia virus. Exemplary attenuated viruses include  
vaccinia viruses provided herein, such as, but not limited to, for example, vaccinia  
viruses described in the Examples: GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89,  
GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104,  
GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.

10 Combinations provided herein can contain a virus and a therapeutic  
compound. Therapeutic compounds for the compositions provided herein can be, for  
example, an anti-cancer or chemotherapeutic compound. Exemplary therapeutic  
compounds include, for example, cytokines, growth factors, photosensitizing agents,  
radionuclides, toxins, siRNA molecules, enzyme/pro-drug pairs, anti-metabolites,  
15 signaling modulators, anti-cancer antibiotics, anti-cancer antibodies, angiogenesis  
inhibitors, chemotherapeutic compounds, or a combination thereof. Viruses provided  
herein can be combined with an anti-cancer compound, such as a platinum  
coordination complex. Exemplary platinum coordination complexes include, for  
example, cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-  
20 S. Additional exemplary therapeutic compounds for the use in pharmaceutical  
composition combinations can be found elsewhere herein (see *e.g.*, Section I.  
THERAPEUTIC METHODS for exemplary cytokines, growth factors,  
photosensitizing agents, radionuclides, toxins, siRNA molecules, enzyme/pro-drug  
pairs, anti-metabolites, signaling modulators, anti-cancer antibiotics, anti-cancer  
25 antibodies, angiogenesis inhibitors, and chemotherapeutic compounds). Exemplary  
chemotherapeutic agents include methotrexate, vincristine, adriamycin, non-sugar  
containing chloroethylnitrosoureas, 5-fluorouracil, mitomycin C, bleomycin,  
doxorubicin, dacarbazine, taxol, fragyline, Meglamine GLA, valrubicin, carmustaine  
and poliferposan, MM1270, BAY 12-9566, RAS farnesyl transferase inhibitor,  
30 farnesyl transferase inhibitor, MMP, MTA/LY231514, LY264618/Lometexol,  
Glamolec, CI-994, TNP-470, Hycamtin/Topotecan, PKC412, Valspodar/PSC833,

- 116 -

- Novantrone/Mitoxantrone, Metaret/Suramin, Batimastat, E7070, BCH-4556, CS-682, 9-AC, AG3340, AG3433, Incel/VX-710, VX-853, ZD0101, IS1641, ODN 698, TA 2516/Marmistat, BB2516/Marmistat, CDP 845, D2163, PD183805, DX8951f, Lemonal DP 2202, FK 317, Picibanil/OK-432, AD 32/Valrubicin,
- 5 Metastron/strontium derivative, Temodal/Temozolomide, Evacet/liposomal doxorubicin, Yewtaxan/Placlitaxel, Taxol/Paclitaxel, Xeload/Capecitabine, Furtulon/Doxifluridine, Cyclopax/oral paclitaxel, Oral Taxoid, SPU-077/Cisplatin, HMR 1275/Flavopiridol, CP-358 (774)/EGFR, CP-609 (754)/RAS oncogene inhibitor, BMS-182751/oral platinum, UFT(Tegafur/Uracil), Ergamisol/Levamisole,
- 10 Eniluracil/776C85/5FU enhancer, Campto/Levamisole, Camptosar/Irinotecan, Tumodex/Ralitrexed, Leustatin/Cladribine, Paxex/Paclitaxel, Doxil/liposomal doxorubicin, Caelyx/liposomal doxorubicin, Fludara/Fludarabine, Pharmarubicin/Epirubicin, DepoCyt, ZD1839, LU 79553/Bis-Naphtalimide, LU 103793/Dolastain, Caetyx/liposomal doxorubicin, Gemzar/Gemcitabine, ZD
- 15 0473/Anormed, YM 116, Iodine seeds, CDK4 and CDK2 inhibitors, PARP inhibitors, D4809/Dexifosamide, Ifes/Mesnex/Ifosamide, Vumon/Teniposide, Paraplatin/Carboplatin, Plantinol/cisplatin, Vepeside/Etoposide, ZD 9331, Taxotere/Docetaxel, prodrug of guanine arabinoside, Taxane Analog, nitrosoureas, alkylating agents such as melphelan and cyclophosphamide, Aminoglutethimide,
- 20 Asparaginase, Busulfan, Carboplatin, Chlorombucil, Cytarabine HCl, Dactinomycin, Daunorubicin HCl, Estramustine phosphate sodium, Etoposide (VP16-213), Floxuridine, Fluorouracil (5-FU), Flutamide, Hydroxyurea (hydroxycarbamide), Ifosfamide, Interferon Alfa-2a, Alfa-2b, Leuprolide acetate (LHRH-releasing factor analogue), Lomustine (CCNU), Mechlorethamine HCl (nitrogen mustard),
- 25 Mercaptopurine, Mesna, Mitotane (o.p'-DDD), Mitoxantrone HCl, Octreotide, Plicamycin, Procarbazine HCl, Streptozocin, Tamoxifen citrate, Thioguanine, Thiotepa, Vinblastine sulfate, Amsacrine (m-AMSA), Azacitidine, Erythropoietin, Hexamethylmelamine (HMM), Interleukin 2, Mitoguazone (methyl-GAG; methyl glyoxal bis-guanyldiazotane; MGBG), Pentostatin (2'deoxycoformycin), Semustine
- 30 (methyl-CCNU), Teniposide (VM-26) and Vindesine sulfate.

- 117 -

In a further embodiment, the combination can include additional therapeutic compounds such as, for example, compounds that are substrates for enzymes encoded and expressed by the virus, or other therapeutic compounds provided herein or known in the art to act in concert with a virus. For example, the virus can express an enzyme that converts a prodrug into an active chemotherapy drug for killing the cancer cell. Hence, combinations provided herein can contain therapeutic compounds, such as prodrugs. An exemplary virus/therapeutic compound combination can include a virus encoding Herpes simplex virus thymidine kinase with the prodrug gancyclovir. Additional exemplary enzyme/pro-drug pairs, for the use in combinations provided include, but are not limited to, varicella zoster thymidine kinase/gancyclovir, cytosine deaminase/5-fluorouracil, purine nucleoside phosphorylase/6-methylpurine deoxyriboside, beta lactamase/cephalosporin-doxorubicin, carboxypeptidase G2/4-[(2-chloroethyl)(2-mesuloxymethyl)amino]benzoyl-L-glutamic acid, cytochrome P450/acetaminophen, horseradish peroxidase/indole-3-acetic acid, nitroreductase/CB1954, rabbit carboxylesterase/7-ethyl-10-[4-(1-piperidino)-1-piperidino]carbonyloxycampothecin, mushroom tyrosinase/bis-(2-chloroethyl)amino-4-hydroxyphenylaminomethanone 28, beta galactosidase/1-chloromethyl-5-hydroxy-1,2-dihydro-3H-benz[e]indole, beta glucuronidase/epirubicin-glucoronide, thymidine phosphorylase/5'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine, deoxycytidine kinase/cytosine arabinoside, beta-lactamase and linamerase/linamarin. Additional exemplary prodrugs, for the use in combinations can also be found elsewhere herein (see *e.g.*, Section I. THERAPEUTIC METHODS). Any of a variety of known combinations provided herein or otherwise known in the art can be included in the combinations provided herein.

In a further embodiment, combinations can include compounds that can kill or inhibit viral growth or toxicity. Combinations provided herein can contain antibiotic, antifungal, anti-parasitic or antiviral compounds for treatment of infections. Exemplary antibiotics which can be included in a combination with a virus provided herein include, but are not limited to, ceftazidime, cefepime, imipenem, aminoglycoside, vancomycin, and antipseudomonal  $\beta$ -lactam. Exemplary antifungal agents which can be included in a combination with a virus provided herein include,

- 118 -

but are not limited to, amphotericin B, dapsone, fluconazole, flucytosine, griseofluvin, intraconazole, ketoconazole, miconazole, clotrimazole, nystatin, and combinations thereof. Exemplary antiviral agents can be included in a combination with a virus provided herein include, but are not limited to, cidofovir, alkoxyalkyl esters of

5 cidofovir (CDV), cyclic CDV, and (S)-9-(3-hydroxy-2-phosphonylmethoxypropyl)adenine, 5-(Dimethoxymethyl)-2'-deoxyuridine, isatin-beta-thiosemicarbazone, N-methanocarbathymidine, brivudin, 7-deazaneplanocin A, ST-246, Gleevec, 2'-beta-fluoro-2',3'-dideoxyadenosine, indinavir, nelfinavir, ritonavir, nevirapine, AZT, ddI, ddC, and combinations thereof. Typically,

10 combinations with an antiviral agent contain an antiviral agent known to be effective against the virus of the combination. For example, combinations can contain a vaccinia virus with an antiviral compound, such as cidofovir, alkoxyalkyl esters of cidofovir, gancyclovir, acyclovir, ST-246, and Gleevec.

In another embodiment, the combination can further include a detectable

15 compound. A detectable compound can include a ligand or substrate or other compound that can interact with and/or bind specifically to a virally expressed protein or RNA molecule, and can provide a detectable signal, such as a signal detectable by tomographic, spectroscopic, magnetic resonance, or other known techniques. Exemplary detectable compounds can be, or can contain, an imaging agent such as a

20 magnetic resonance, ultrasound or tomographic imaging agent, including a radionuclide. The detectable compound can include any of a variety of compounds as provided elsewhere herein or are otherwise known in the art. Typically, the detectable compound included with a virus in the combinations provided herein will be a compound that is a substrate, a ligand, or can otherwise specifically interact with,

25 a protein or RNA encoded by the virus; in some examples, the protein or RNA is an exogenous protein or RNA. Exemplary viruses/detectable compounds include a virus encoding luciferase/luciferin,  $\beta$ -galactosidase/(4,7,10-tri(acetic acid)-1-(2- $\beta$ -galactopyranosylethoxy)-1,4,7,10-tetraazacyclododecane) gadolinium (Egad), and other combinations known in the art.

30 In another embodiment, the combination can further include a virus gene expression modulating compound. Compounds that modulate gene expression are

- 119 -

known in the art, and include, but are not limited to, transcriptional activators, inducers, transcriptional suppressors, RNA polymerase inhibitors, and RNA binding compounds such as siRNA or ribozymes. Any of a variety of gene expression modulating compounds known in the art can be included in the combinations provided herein. Typically, the gene expression modulating compound included with a virus in the combinations provided herein will be a compound that can bind, inhibit, or react with one or more compounds, active in gene expression such as a transcription factor or RNA of the virus of the combination. An exemplary virus/expression modulator can be a virus encoding a chimeric transcription factor complex having a mutant human progesterone receptor fused to a yeast GAL4 DNA-binding domain an activation domain of the herpes simplex virus protein VP16 and also containing a synthetic promoter containing a series of GAL4 recognition sequences upstream of the adenovirus major late E1B TATA box, where the compound can be RU486 (see, *e.g.*, Yu *et al.*, (2002) *Mol Genet Genomics* 268:169-178). A variety of other virus/expression modulator combinations known in the art also can be included in the combinations provided herein.

In a further embodiment, combination can further contain nanoparticles. Nanoparticles can be designed such that they carry one or more therapeutic agents provided herein. Additionally, nanoparticles can be designed to carry a molecule that targets the nanoparticle to the tumor cells. In one non-limiting example, nanoparticles can be coated with a radionuclide and, optionally, an antibody immunoreactive with a tumor-associated antigen.

#### 4. Kits

The viruses, cells, pharmaceutical compositions, or combinations provided herein can be packaged as kits. Kits can optionally include one or more components such as instructions for use, devices, and additional reagents, and components, such as tubes, containers and syringes for practice of the methods. Exemplary kits can include the viruses provided herein, and can optionally include instructions for use, a device for detecting a virus in a subject, a device for administering the virus to a subject, and a device for administering a compound to a subject.



- 120 -

In one example, a kit can contain instructions. Instructions typically include a tangible expression describing the virus and, optionally, other components included in the kit, and methods for administration, including methods for determining the proper state of the subject, the proper dosage amount, and the proper administration method, for administering the virus. Instructions can also include guidance for monitoring the subject over the duration of the treatment time.

In another example, a kit can contain a device for detecting a virus in a subject. Devices for detecting a virus in a subject can include a low light imaging device for detecting light, for example, emitted from luciferase, or fluoresced from fluorescent protein, such as a green or red fluorescent protein, a magnetic resonance measuring device such as an MRI or NMR device, a tomographic scanner, such as a PET, CT, CAT, SPECT or other related scanner, an ultrasound device, or other device that can be used to detect a protein expressed by the virus within the subject. Typically, the device of the kit will be able to detect one or more proteins expressed by the virus of the kit. Any of a variety of kits containing viruses and detection devices can be included in the kits provided herein, for example, a virus expressing luciferase and a low light imager, or a virus expressing fluorescent protein, such as a green or red fluorescent protein, and a low light imager.

Kits provided herein also can include a device for administering a virus to a subject. Any of a variety of devices known in the art for administering medications or vaccines can be included in the kits provided herein. Exemplary devices include, but are not limited to, a hypodermic needle, an intravenous needle, a catheter, a needle-less injection device, an inhaler, and a liquid dispenser, such as an eyedropper. Typically, the device for administering a virus of the kit will be compatible with the virus of the kit; for example, a needle-less injection device such as a high pressure injection device can be included in kits with viruses not damaged by high pressure injection, but is typically not included in kits with viruses damaged by high pressure injection.

Kits provided herein also can include a device for administering a compound to a subject. Any of a variety of devices known in the art for administering medications to a subject can be included in the kits provided herein. Exemplary

- 121 -

devices include a hypodermic needle, an intravenous needle, a catheter, a needle-less injection, but are not limited to, a hypodermic needle, an intravenous needle, a catheter, a needle-less injection device, an inhaler, and a liquid dispenser such as an eyedropper. Typically the device for administering the compound of the kit will be compatible with the desired method of administration of the compound. For example, a compound to be delivered subcutaneously can be included in a kit with a hypodermic needle and syringe.

## **I. THERAPEUTIC METHODS**

Provided herein are therapeutic methods, including methods of treating and/or preventing immunoprivileged cells or tissue, including cancerous cells, tumors and metastases. Such sites, diseases and disorders include sites of cell proliferation, proliferative conditions, neoplasms, tumors, neoplastic disease, wounds and inflammation. The therapeutic methods provided herein include, but are not limited to, administering a virus provided herein to a subject containing a tumor and/or metastases. Viruses provided herein include viruses that have been modified using the methods provided herein. The administered viruses can possess one or more characteristics including attenuated pathogenicity, low toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenicity, replication competence, ability to express exogenous genes, and ability to elicit antibody production against an expressed gene product. The viruses can be administered for diagnosis and/or therapy of subjects, such as, but not limited to humans and other mammals, including rodents, dogs, cats, primates, or livestock.

In some embodiments, the viruses can accumulate in tumors or metastases. In some embodiments, the administration of a virus provided herein results in a slowing of tumor growth. In other embodiments, the administration of a virus provided herein results in a decrease in tumor volume. The therapeutic methods provided herein, however, do not require the administered virus to kill tumor cells or decrease the tumor size. Instead, the methods provided herein include administering to a subject a virus provided herein that can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response in the subject. In some embodiments, the viruses provided herein can be administered to a subject without causing viral-induced disease in the subject. In some embodiments,

- 122 -

the viruses can elicit an anti-tumor immune response in the subject, where typically the viral-mediated anti-tumor immune response can develop, for example, over several days, a week or more, 10 days or more, two weeks or more, or a month or more. In some exemplary methods, the virus can be present in the tumor, and can  
5 cause an anti-tumor immune response without the virus itself causing enough tumor cell death to prevent tumor growth. In some embodiments, the tumor is a monotherapeutic tumor or monotherapeutic cancer, where the tumor or cancer does not decrease in volume when treated with the virus or a therapeutic agent alone.

In some embodiments, provided herein are methods for eliciting or enhancing  
10 antibody production against a selected antigen or a selected antigen type in a subject, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause release of a selected antigen or selected antigen type from the tumor, resulting in antibody production against the selected antigen or selected antigen type. Any of a variety of antigens can be targeted in the  
15 methods provided herein, including a selected antigen such as an exogenous gene product expressed by the virus, or a selected antigen type such as one or more tumor antigens release from the tumor as a result of viral infection of the tumor (*e.g.*, by lysis, apoptosis, secretion or other mechanism of causing antigen release from the tumor).

20 In some embodiments, it can be desirable to maintain release of the selected antigen or selected antigen type over a series of days, for example, at least a week, at least ten days, at least two weeks or at least a month. Provided herein are methods for providing a sustained antigen release within a subject, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis,  
25 and can cause sustained release of an antigen, resulting in antibody production against the antigen. The sustained release of antigen can result in an immune response by the viral-infected host, in which the host can develop antibodies against the antigen, and/or the host can mount an immune response against cells expressing the antigen, including an immune response against tumor cells. Thus, the sustained release of  
30 antigen can result in immunization against tumor cells. In some embodiments, the

- 123 -

viral-mediated sustained antigen release-induced immune response against tumor cells can result in complete removal or killing of all tumor cells.

In some embodiments, the therapeutic methods provided herein inhibit tumor growth in a subject, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus that  
5 can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response. The anti-tumor immune response induced as a result of tumor or metastases-accumulated viruses can result in inhibition of tumor growth.

In some embodiments, the therapeutic methods provided herein inhibit growth or formation of a metastasis in a subject, where the methods include administering to  
10 a subject a virus provided herein that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response. The anti-tumor immune response induced as a result of tumor or metastasis-accumulated viruses can result in inhibition of metastasis growth or formation.

In other embodiments, the therapeutic methods provided herein decrease the  
15 size of a tumor and/or metastasis in a subject, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus provided herein that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response. The anti-tumor immune response induced as a result of tumor or metastasis-accumulated viruses can result in a decrease in the size of the tumor and/or metastasis.

20 In some embodiments, the therapeutic methods provided herein eliminate a tumor and/or metastasis from a subject, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus provided herein that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response. The anti-tumor immune response induced as a result of tumor or metastasis-accumulated viruses can result in  
25 elimination of the tumor and/or metastasis from the subject.

Methods of reducing or inhibiting tumor growth, inhibiting metastasis growth and/or formation, decreasing the size of a tumor or metastasis, eliminating a tumor or metastasis, or other tumor therapeutic methods provided herein include causing or enhancing an anti-tumor immune response in the host. The immune response of the  
30 host, being anti-tumor in nature, can be mounted against tumors and/or metastases in which viruses have accumulated, and can also be mounted against tumors and/or

- 124 -

metastases in which viruses have not accumulated, including tumors and/or metastases that form after administration of the virus to the subject. Accordingly, a tumor and/or metastasis whose growth or formation is inhibited, or whose size is decreased, or that is eliminated, can be a tumor and/or metastasis in which the viruses  
5 have accumulated, or also can be a tumor and/or metastasis in which the viruses have not accumulated. Accordingly, provided herein are methods of reducing or inhibiting tumor growth, inhibiting metastasis growth and/or formation, decreasing the size of a tumor or metastasis, eliminating a tumor or metastasis, or other tumor therapeutic methods, where the method includes administering to a subject a virus provided  
10 herein, where the virus accumulates in at least one tumor or metastasis and causes or enhances an anti-tumor immune response in the subject, and the immune response also is mounted against a tumor and/or metastasis in which the virus cell did not accumulate. In another embodiment, methods are provided for inhibiting or preventing recurrence of a neoplastic disease or inhibiting or preventing new tumor  
15 growth, where the methods include administering to a subject a virus provided herein that can accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response, and the anti-tumor immune response can inhibit or prevent recurrence of a neoplastic disease or inhibit or prevent new tumor growth.

The tumor or neoplastic disease therapeutic methods provided herein, such as  
20 methods of reducing or inhibiting tumor growth, inhibiting metastasis growth and/or formation, decreasing the size of a tumor or metastasis, eliminating a tumor or metastasis, or other tumor therapeutic methods, also can include administering to a subject a virus provided herein that can cause tumor cell lysis or tumor cell death. Such a virus can be the same virus as the virus that can cause or enhance an anti-  
25 tumor immune response in the subject. Viruses, such as the viruses provided herein, can cause cell lysis or tumor cell death as a result of expression of an endogenous gene or as a result of an exogenous gene. Endogenous or exogenous genes can cause tumor cell lysis or inhibit cell growth as a result of direct or indirect actions, as is known in the art, including lytic channel formation or activation of an apoptotic  
30 pathway. Gene products, such as exogenous gene products can function to activate a

- 125 -

prodrug to an active, cytotoxic form, resulting in cell death where such genes are expressed.

Such methods of antigen production or tumor and/or metastasis treatment can include administration of a virus provided herein for therapy, such as for gene  
5 therapy, for cancer gene therapy, or for vaccine therapy. Such a virus can be used to stimulate humoral and/or cellular immune response, induce strong cytotoxic T lymphocytes responses in subjects who can benefit from such responses. For example, the virus can provide prophylactic and therapeutic effects against a tumor infected by the virus or other infectious diseases, by rejection of cells from tumors or  
10 lesions using viruses that express immunoreactive antigens (Earl *et al.*, *Science* 234: 728-831 (1986); Lathe *et al.*, *Nature* (London) 32: 878-880 (1987)), cellular tumor-associated antigens (Bernards *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 84: 6854-6858 (1987); Estin *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 85: 1052-1056 (1988); Kantor *et al.*, *J. Natl. Cancer Inst.* 84: 1084-1091 (1992); Roth *et al.*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 93:  
15 4781-4786 (1996)) and/or cytokines (*e.g.*, IL-2, IL-12), costimulatory molecules (B7-1, B7-2) (Rao *et al.*, *J. Immunol.* 156: 3357-3365 (1996); Chamberlain *et al.*, *Cancer Res.* 56: 2832-2836 (1996); Oertli *et al.*, *J. Gen. Virol.* 77: 3121-3125 (1996); Qin and Chatterjee, *Human Gene Ther.* 7: 1853-1860 (1996); McAneny *et al.*, *Ann. Surg. Oncol.* 3: 495-500 (1996)), or other therapeutic proteins.

20 As shown previously, solid tumors can be treated with viruses, such as vaccinia viruses, resulting in an enormous tumor-specific virus replication, which can lead to tumor protein antigen and viral protein production in the tumors (U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643). Vaccinia virus administration to mice resulted in lysis of the infected tumor cells and a resultant release of tumor-cell-specific antigens.  
25 Continuous leakage of these antigens into the body led to a very high level of antibody titer (in approximately 7-14 days) against tumor proteins, viral proteins, and the virus encoded engineered proteins in the mice. The newly synthesized anti-tumor antibodies and the enhanced macrophage, neutrophils count were continuously delivered via the vasculature to the tumor and thereby provided for the recruitment of  
30 an activated immune system against the tumor. The activated immune system then eliminated the foreign compounds of the tumor including the viral particles. This

- 126 -

interconnected release of foreign antigens boosted antibody production and continuous response of the antibodies against the tumor proteins to function like an autoimmunizing vaccination system initiated by vaccinia viral infection and replication, followed by cell lysis, protein leakage and enhanced antibody production.

5 Thus, the viruses provided herein and the viruses generated using the methods provided herein can be administered in a complete process that can be applied to all tumor systems with immunoprivileged tumor sites as site of privileged viral growth, which can lead to tumor elimination by the host's own immune system.

In other embodiments, methods are provided for immunizing a subject, where  
10 the methods include administering to the subject a virus that expresses one or more antigens against which antigens the subject will develop an immune response. The immunizing antigens can be endogenous to the virus, such as vaccinia antigens on a vaccinia virus used to immunize against smallpox, measles, mumps, or the immunizing antigens can be exogenous antigens expressed by the virus, such as  
15 influenza or HIV antigens expressed on a viral capsid surface. In the case of smallpox, for example, a tumor specific protein antigen can be carried by an attenuated vaccinia virus (encoded by the viral genome) for a smallpox vaccine. Thus, the viruses provided herein, including the modified vaccinia viruses can be used as vaccines.

20 In one embodiment, the tumor treated is a cancer such as pancreatic cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, multiple myeloma, or leukemia, although the cancer is not limited in this respect, and other metastatic diseases can be treated by the combinations provided herein. For example, the tumor treated can be a solid tumor, such as of the lung and bronchus, breast, colon and rectum, kidney, stomach,  
25 esophagus, liver and intrahepatic bile duct, urinary bladder, brain and other nervous system, head and neck, oral cavity and pharynx, cervix, uterine corpus, thyroid, ovary, testes, prostate, malignant melanoma, cholangiocarcinoma, thymoma, non-melanoma skin cancers, as well as hematologic tumors and/or malignancies, such as childhood leukemia and lymphomas, multiple myeloma, Hodgkin's disease, lymphomas of  
30 lymphocytic and cutaneous origin, acute and chronic leukemia such as acute lymphoblastic, acute myelocytic or chronic myelocytic leukemia, plasma cell

- 127 -

neoplasm, lymphoid neoplasm and cancers associated with AIDS. Exemplary tumors include, for example, pancreatic tumors, ovarian tumors, lung tumors, colon tumors, prostate tumors, cervical tumors and breast tumors. In one embodiment, the tumor is a carcinoma such as, for example, an ovarian tumor or a pancreatic tumor.

5           **1. Administration**

In performing the therapeutic methods provided herein, a virus can be administered to a subject, including a subject having a tumor or having neoplastic cells, or a subject to be immunized. An administered virus can be a virus provided herein or any other virus generated using the methods provided herein. In some  
10       embodiments, the virus administered is a virus containing a characteristic such as attenuated pathogenicity, low toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, high immunogenicity, replication competence, and ability to express exogenous proteins, and combinations thereof.

**a. Steps Prior to Administering the Virus**

15           In some embodiments, one or more steps can be performed prior to administration of the virus to the subject. Any of a variety of preceding steps can be performed, including, but not limited to diagnosing the subject with a condition appropriate for virus administration, determining the immunocompetence of the subject, immunizing the subject, treating the subject with a chemotherapeutic agent,  
20       treating the subject with radiation, or surgically treating the subject.

For embodiments that include administering a virus to a tumor-bearing subject for therapeutic purposes, the subject has typically been previously diagnosed with a neoplastic condition. Diagnostic methods also can include determining the type of neoplastic condition, determining the stage of the neoplastic conditions, determining  
25       the size of one or more tumors in the subject, determining the presence or absence of metastatic or neoplastic cells in the lymph nodes of the subject, or determining the presence of metastases of the subject. Some embodiments of therapeutic methods for administering a virus to a subject can include a step of determination of the size of the primary tumor or the stage of the neoplastic disease, and if the size of the primary  
30       tumor is equal to or above a threshold volume, or if the stage of the neoplastic disease is at or above a threshold stage, a virus is administered to the subject. In a similar



- 128 -

embodiment, if the size of the primary tumor is below a threshold volume, or if the stage of the neoplastic disease is at or below a threshold stage, the virus is not yet administered to the subject; such methods can include monitoring the subject until the tumor size or neoplastic disease stage reaches a threshold amount, and then

5 administering the virus to the subject. Threshold sizes can vary according to several factors, including rate of growth of the tumor, ability of the virus to infect a tumor, and immunocompetence of the subject. Generally the threshold size will be a size sufficient for a virus to accumulate and replicate in or near the tumor without being completely removed by the host's immune system, and will typically also be a size

10 sufficient to sustain a virus infection for a time long enough for the host to mount an immune response against the tumor cells, typically about one week or more, about ten days or more, or about two weeks or more. Exemplary threshold tumor sizes for viruses, such as vaccinia viruses, are at least about 100 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about 200 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about 300 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about 400 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about 500 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about

15 750 mm<sup>3</sup>, at least about 1000 mm<sup>3</sup>, or at least about 1500 mm<sup>3</sup>. Threshold neoplastic disease stages also can vary according to several factors, including specific requirement for staging a particular neoplastic disease, aggressiveness of growth of the neoplastic disease, ability of the virus to infect a tumor or metastasis, and immunocompetence of the subject. Generally the threshold stage will be a stage

20 sufficient for a virus to accumulate and replicate in a tumor or metastasis without being completely removed by the host's immune system, and will typically also be a size sufficient to sustain a virus infection for a time long enough for the host to mount an immune response against the neoplastic cells, typically about one week or more, about ten days or more, or about two weeks or more. Exemplary threshold stages are

25 any stage beyond the lowest stage (e.g., Stage I or equivalent), or any stage where the primary tumor is larger than a threshold size, or any stage where metastatic cells are detected.

In other embodiments, prior to administering to the subject a virus, the immunocompetence of the subject can be determined. The methods of administering

30 a virus to a subject provided herein can include causing or enhancing an immune response in a subject. Accordingly, prior to administering a virus to a subject, the

- 129 -

ability of a subject to mount an immune response can be determined. Any of a variety of tests of immunocompetence known in the art can be performed in the methods provided herein. Exemplary immunocompetence tests can examine ABO hemagglutination titers (IgM), leukocyte adhesion deficiency (LAD), granulocyte  
5 function (NBT), T and B cell quantitation, tetanus antibody titers, salivary IgA, skin test, tonsil test, complement C3 levels, and factor B levels, and lymphocyte count. One skilled in the art can determine the desirability to administer a virus to a subject according to the level of immunocompetence of the subject, according to the immunogenicity of the virus, and, optionally, according to the immunogenicity of the  
10 neoplastic disease to be treated. Typically, a subject can be considered immunocompetent if the skilled artisan can determine that the subject is sufficiently competent to mount an immune response against the virus.

In some embodiments, the subject can be immunized prior to administering to the subject a virus according to the methods provided herein. Immunization can serve  
15 to increase the ability of a subject to mount an immune response against the virus, or increase the speed at which the subject can mount an immune response against a virus. Immunization also can serve to decrease the risk to the subject of pathogenicity of the virus. In some embodiments, the immunization can be performed with an immunization virus that is similar to the therapeutic virus to be administered. For  
20 example, the immunization virus can be a replication-incompetent variant of the therapeutic virus. In other embodiments, the immunization material can be digests of the therapeutic virus to be administered. Any of a variety of methods for immunizing a subject against a known virus are known in the art and can be used herein. In one example, vaccinia viruses treated with, for example, 1 microgram of psoralen and  
25 ultraviolet light at 365 nm for 4 minutes, can be rendered replication incompetent. In another embodiment, the virus can be selected as the same or similar to a virus against which the subject has been previously immunized, *e.g.*, in a childhood vaccination.

In another embodiment, the subject can have administered thereto a virus without any previous steps of cancer treatment such as chemotherapy, radiation  
30 therapy or surgical removal of a tumor and/or metastases. The methods provided herein take advantage of the ability of the viruses to enter or localize near a tumor,

- 130 -

where the tumor cells can be protected from the subject's immune system; the viruses can then proliferate in such an immunoprotected region and can also cause the release, typically a sustained release, of tumor antigens from the tumor to a location in which the subject's immune system can recognize the tumor antigens and mount an immune response. In such methods, existence of a tumor of sufficient size or sufficiently developed immunoprotected state can be advantageous for successful administration of the virus to the tumor, and for sufficient tumor antigen production. If a tumor is surgically removed, the viruses may not be able to localize to other neoplastic cells (e.g., small metastases) because such cells have not yet have matured sufficiently to create an immunoprotective environment in which the viruses can survive and proliferate, or even if the viruses can localize to neoplastic cells, the number of cells or size of the mass can be too small for the viruses to cause a sustained release of tumor antigens in order for the host to mount an anti-tumor immune response. Thus, for example, provided herein are methods of treating a tumor or neoplastic disease in which viruses are administered to a subject with a tumor or neoplastic disease without removing the primary tumor, or to a subject with a tumor or neoplastic disease in which at least some tumors or neoplastic cells are intentionally permitted to remain in the subject. In other typical cancer treatment methods such as chemotherapy or radiation therapy, such methods typically have a side effect of weakening the subject's immune system. This treatment of a subject by chemotherapy or radiation therapy can reduce the subject's ability to mount an anti-tumor immune response. Thus, for example, provided herein are methods of treating a tumor or neoplastic disease in which viruses are administered to a subject with a tumor or neoplastic disease without treating the subject with an immune system-weakening therapy, such as chemotherapy or radiation therapy.

In an alternative embodiment, prior to administration of a virus to the subject, the subject can be treated in one or more cancer treatment steps that do not remove the primary tumor or that do not weaken the immune system of the subject. A variety of more sophisticated cancer treatment methods are being developed in which the tumor can be treated without surgical removal or immune-system weakening therapy. Exemplary methods include administering a compound that decreases the rate of

- 131 -

proliferation of the tumor or neoplastic cells without weakening the immune system (e.g., by administering tumor suppressor compounds or by administering tumor cell-specific compounds) or administering an angiogenesis-inhibiting compound. Thus, combined methods that include administering a virus to a subject can further improve cancer therapy. Thus, provided herein are methods of administering a virus to a subject, along with prior to or subsequent to, for example, administering a compound that slows tumor growth without weakening the subject's immune system or a compound that inhibits vascularization of the tumor.

**b. Mode of administration**

1. Any mode of administration of a virus to a subject can be used, provided the mode of administration permits the virus to enter a tumor or metastasis. Modes of administration can include, but are not limited to, systemic, intravenous, intraperitoneal, subcutaneous, intramuscular, transdermal, intradermal, intra-arterial (e.g., hepatic artery infusion), intravesicular perfusion, intrapleural, intraarticular, topical, intratumoral, intralesional, multipuncture (e.g., as used with smallpox vaccines), inhalation, percutaneous, subcutaneous, intranasal, intratracheal, oral, intracavity (e.g., administering to the bladder via a catheter, administering to the gut by suppository or enema), vaginal, rectal, intracranial, intraprostatic, intravitreal, aural, or ocular administration.

One skilled in the art can select any mode of administration compatible with the subject and the virus, and that also is likely to result in the virus reaching tumors and/or metastases. The route of administration can be selected by one skilled in the art according to any of a variety of factors, including the nature of the disease, the kind of tumor, and the particular virus contained in the pharmaceutical composition. Administration to the target site can be performed, for example, by ballistic delivery, as a colloidal dispersion system, or systemic administration can be performed by injection into an artery.

**c. Dosages**

The dosage regimen can be any of a variety of methods and amounts, and can be determined by one skilled in the art according to known clinical factors. As is known in the medical arts, dosages for any one patient can depend on many factors,

- 132 -

including the subject's species, size, body surface area, age, sex, immunocompetence, and general health, the particular virus to be administered, duration and route of administration, the kind and stage of the disease, for example, tumor size, and other treatments or compounds, such as chemotherapeutic drugs, being administered

5 concurrently. In addition to the above factors, such levels can be affected by the infectivity of the virus, and the nature of the virus, as can be determined by one skilled in the art. In the present methods, appropriate minimum dosage levels of viruses can be levels sufficient for the virus to survive, grow and replicate in a tumor or metastasis. Exemplary minimum levels for administering a virus to a 65 kg human

10 can include at least about  $1 \times 10^5$  plaque forming units (PFU), at least about  $5 \times 10^5$  PFU, at least about  $1 \times 10^6$  PFU, at least about  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU, at least about  $1 \times 10^7$  PFU, at least about  $1 \times 10^8$  PFU, at least about  $1 \times 10^9$  PFU, or at least about  $1 \times 10^{10}$  PFU. In the present methods, appropriate maximum dosage levels of viruses can be levels that are not toxic to the host, levels that do not cause splenomegaly of 3 times

15 or more, levels that do not result in colonies or plaques in normal tissues or organs after about 1 day or after about 3 days or after about 7 days. Exemplary maximum levels for administering a virus to a 65 kg human can include no more than about  $1 \times 10^{11}$  PFU, no more than about  $5 \times 10^{10}$  PFU, no more than about  $1 \times 10^{10}$  PFU, no more than about  $5 \times 10^9$  PFU, no more than about  $1 \times 10^9$  PFU, or no more than about

20  $1 \times 10^8$  PFU.

For combination therapies with chemotherapeutic compounds, dosages for the administration of such compounds are known in the art or can be determined by one skilled in the art according to known clinical factors (e.g., subject's species, size, body surface area, age, sex, immunocompetence, and general health, duration and route of

25 administration, the kind and stage of the disease, for example, tumor size, and other viruses, treatments, or compounds, such as other chemotherapeutic drugs, being administered concurrently). In addition to the above factors, such levels can be affected by the infectivity of the virus, and the nature of the virus, as can be determined by one skilled in the art. For example, Cisplatin (also called cis-

30 platinum, platinol; cis-diamminedichloroplatinum; and cDDP) is representative of a broad class of water-soluble, platinum coordination compounds frequently employed

- 133 -

in the therapy of testicular cancer, ovarian tumors, and a variety of other cancers. (See, e.g., Blumenreich *et al. Cancer* 55(5): 1118-1122 (1985); Forastiere *et al. J. Clin. Oncol.* 19(4): 1088-1095 (2001)). Methods of employing cisplatin clinically are well known in the art. For example, cisplatin has been administered in a single day  
5 over a six hour period, once per month, by slow intravenous infusion. For localized lesions, cisplatin can be administered by local injection. Intraperitoneal infusion can also be employed. Cisplatin can be administered in doses as low as 10 mg/m<sup>2</sup> per treatment if part of a multi-drug regimen, or if the patient has an adverse reaction to higher dosing. In general, a clinical dose is from about 30 to about 120 or 150 mg/m<sup>2</sup>  
10 per treatment.

Typically, platinum-containing chemotherapeutic agents are administered parenterally, for example by slow intravenous infusion, or by local injection, as discussed above. The effects of intralesional (intra-tumoral) and IP administration of cisplatin is described in (Nagase *et al. Cancer Treat. Rep.* 71(9): 825-829 (1987); and  
15 Theon *et al. J. Am. Vet. Med. Assoc.* 202(2): 261-7. (1993)).

In one exemplary embodiment, the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart, followed by 1-30 days where no anti-cancer treatment, then cisplatin is administered daily for 1-5 days, followed by 1-30 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered. Each component of the therapy, virus  
20 or cisplatin treatment, or the virus and cisplatin combination therapy can be repeated. In another exemplary embodiment, cisplatin is administered daily for 1 to 5 days, followed by 1-10 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart. Such treatment scheme can be repeated. In another exemplary embodiment, cisplatin is  
25 administered daily for 1 to 5 days, followed by 1-10 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart. This is followed by 5-60 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then cisplatin is administered again for 1-5 days. Such treatment scheme can be repeated.

30 Gemcitabine (GEMZAR<sup>®</sup>) is another compound employed in the therapy of breast cancer, non-small cell lung cancer, and pancreatic cancer. Gemcitabine is a

- 134 -

nucleoside analogue that exhibits antitumor activity. Methods of employing gemcitabine clinically are well known in the art. For example, gemcitabine has been administered by intravenous infusion at a dose of 1000 mg/m<sup>2</sup> over 30 minutes once weekly for up to 7 weeks (or until toxicity necessitates reducing or holding a dose),  
5 followed by a week of rest from treatment of pancreatic cancer. Subsequent cycles can consist of infusions once weekly for 3 consecutive weeks out of every 4 weeks. Gemcitabine has also been employed in combination with cisplatin in cancer therapy.

In one exemplary embodiment, the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart, followed by 1-30 days where no anti-cancer  
10 treatment is administered, then gemcitabine is administered 1-7 times with 0-30 days apart, followed by 1-30 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered. Such treatment scheme can be repeated. In another exemplary embodiment, gemcitabine is administered 1-7 times with 0-30 days apart, followed by 1-10 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once  
15 or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart. This is followed by 5-60 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered. Such treatment scheme can be repeated. In another exemplary embodiment, gemcitabine is administered 1-7 times with 0-30 days apart, followed by 1-10 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then the mutant vaccinia virus is administered once or 2-4 times with 0-60 days apart. This is  
20 followed by 5-60 days where no anti-cancer treatment is administered, then gemcitabine is administered again for 1-7 times with 0-30 days apart. Such treatment scheme can be repeated.

As will be understood by one of skill in the art, the optimal treatment regimen will vary and it is within the scope of the treatment methods to evaluate the status of  
25 the disease under treatment and the general health of the patient prior to, and following one or more cycles of combination therapy in order to determine the optimal therapeutic combination.

**d. Number of administrations**

The methods provided herein can include a single administration of a virus to  
30 a subject or multiple administrations of a virus to a subject. In some embodiments, a single administration is sufficient to establish a virus in a tumor, where the virus can

- 135 -

proliferate and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor response in the subject; such methods do not require additional administrations of a virus in order to cause or enhance an anti-tumor response in a subject, which can result, for example in inhibition of tumor growth, inhibition of metastasis growth or formation, reduction in tumor or size, elimination of a tumor or metastasis, inhibition or prevention of recurrence of a neoplastic disease or new tumor formation, or other cancer therapeutic effects. In other embodiments, a virus can be administered on different occasions, separated in time typically by at least one day. Separate administrations can increase the likelihood of delivering a virus to a tumor or metastasis, where a previous administration has been ineffective in delivering a virus to a tumor or metastasis. Separate administrations can increase the locations on a tumor or metastasis where virus proliferation can occur or can otherwise increase the titer of virus accumulated in the tumor, which can increase the scale of release of antigens or other compounds from the tumor in eliciting or enhancing a host's anti-tumor immune response, and also can, optionally, increase the level of virus-based tumor lysis or tumor cell death. Separate administrations of a virus can further extend a subject's immune response against viral antigens, which can extend the host's immune response to tumors or metastases in which viruses have accumulated, and can increase the likelihood of a host mounting an anti-tumor immune response.

When separate administrations are performed, each administration can be a dosage amount that is the same or different relative to other administration dosage amounts. In one embodiment, all administration dosage amounts are the same. In other embodiments, a first dosage amount can be a larger dosage amount than one or more subsequent dosage amounts, for example, at least 10x larger, at least 100x larger, or at least 1000x larger than subsequent dosage amounts. In one example of a method of separate administrations in which the first dosage amount is greater than one or more subsequent dosage amounts, all subsequent dosage amounts can be the same, smaller amount relative to the first administration.

Separate administrations can include any number of two or more administrations, including two, three, four, five or six administrations. One skilled in the art can readily determine the number of administrations to perform or the



- 136 -

desirability of performing one or more additional administrations according to methods known in the art for monitoring therapeutic methods and other monitoring methods provided herein. Accordingly, the methods provided herein include methods of providing to the subject one or more administrations of a virus, where the number  
5 of administrations can be determined by monitoring the subject, and, based on the results of the monitoring, determining whether or not to provide one or more additional administrations. Deciding on whether or not to provide one or more additional administrations can be based on a variety of monitoring results, including, but not limited to, indication of tumor growth or inhibition of tumor growth,  
10 appearance of new metastases or inhibition of metastasis, the subject's anti-virus antibody titer, the subject's anti-tumor antibody titer, the overall health of the subject, the weight of the subject, the presence of virus solely in tumor and/or metastases, the presence of virus in normal tissues or organs.

The time period between administrations can be any of a variety of time  
15 periods. The time period between administrations can be a function of any of a variety of factors, including monitoring steps, as described in relation to the number of administrations, the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, the time period for a subject to clear the virus from normal tissue, or the time period for virus proliferation in the tumor or metastasis. In one example, the time period can be  
20 a function of the time period for a subject to mount an immune response; for example, the time period can be more than the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, such as more than about one week, more than about ten days, more than about two weeks, or more than about a month; in another example, the time period can be less than the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, such as  
25 less than about one week, less than about ten days, less than about two weeks, or less than about a month. In another example, the time period can be a function of the time period for a subject to clear the virus from normal tissue; for example, the time period can be more than the time period for a subject to clear the virus from normal tissue, such as more than about a day, more than about two days, more than about three days,  
30 more than about five days, or more than about a week. In another example, the time period can be a function of the time period for virus proliferation in the tumor or

- 137 -

metastasis; for example, the time period can be more than the amount of time for a detectable signal to arise in a tumor or metastasis after administration of a virus expressing a detectable marker, such as about 3 days, about 5 days, about a week, about ten days, about two weeks, or about a month.

5                    **e.        Co-administrations**

Also provided are methods in which an additional therapeutic substance, such as a different therapeutic virus or a therapeutic compound is administered. These can be administered simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently with the first virus. The additional therapeutic substance can interact with the virus or a gene product  
10 thereof, or the additional therapeutic substance can act independently of the virus.

Combination therapy treatment has advantages in that: 1) it avoids single agent resistance; 2) in a heterogeneous tumor population, it can kill cells by different mechanisms; and 3) by selecting drugs with non-overlapping toxicities, each agent can be used at full dose to elicit maximal efficacy and synergistic effect.  
15 Combination therapy can be done by combining a diagnostic/therapeutic virus with one or more of the following anti-cancer agents: chemotherapeutic agents, therapeutic antibodies, siRNAs, toxins, enzyme-prodrug pairs, or radiation.

**i.        Administering a plurality of viruses**

Methods are provided for administering to a subject two or more viruses.  
20 Administration can be effected simultaneously, sequentially or intermittently. The plurality of viruses can be administered as a single composition or as two or more compositions. The two or more viruses can include at least two viruses. In a particular embodiment, where there are two viruses, both viruses are vaccinia viruses. In another embodiment, one viruses is a vaccinia virus and the second viruses is any  
25 one of an adenovirus, an adeno-associated virus, a retrovirus, a herpes simplex virus, a reovirus, a mumps virus, a foamy virus, an influenza virus, a myxoma virus, a vesicular stomatitis virus, or any other virus described herein or known in the art. Viruses can be chosen based on the pathway on which they act. For example, a virus that targets an activated Ras pathway can be combined with a virus that targets tumor  
30 cells defective in p53 expression.

- 138 -

The plurality of viruses can be provided as combinations of compositions containing and/or as kits that include the viruses packaged for administration and optionally including instructions therefore. The compositions can contain the viruses formulated for single dosage administration (*i.e.*, for direct administration) and can  
5 require dilution or other additions.

In one embodiment, at least one of the viruses is a modified virus such as those provided herein, having a characteristic such as low pathogenicity, low toxicity, preferential accumulation in tumor, ability to activate an immune response against tumor cells, immunogenic, replication competent, ability to express exogenous  
10 proteins, and combinations thereof. The viruses can be administered at approximately the same time, or can be administered at different times. The viruses can be administered in the same composition or in the same administration method, or can be administered in separate composition or by different administration methods.

The time period between administrations can be any time period that achieves  
15 the desired effects, as can be determined by one skilled in the art. Selection of a time period between administrations of different viruses can be determined according to parameters similar to those for selecting the time period between administrations of the same virus, including results from monitoring steps, the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, the time period for a subject to clear virus from normal  
20 tissue, or the time period for virus proliferation in the tumor or metastasis. In one example, the time period can be a function of the time period for a subject to mount an immune response; for example, the time period can be more than the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, such as more than about one week, more than about ten days, more than about two weeks, or more than about a month; in  
25 another example, the time period can be less than the time period for a subject to mount an immune response, such as less than about one week, less than about ten days, less than about two weeks, or less than about a month. In another example, the time period can be a function of the time period for a subject to clear the virus from normal tissue; for example, the time period can be more than the time period for a  
30 subject to clear the virus from normal tissue, such as more than about a day, more than about two days, more than about three days, more than about five days, or more

- 139 -

than about a week. In another example, the time period can be a function of the time period for virus proliferation in the tumor or metastasis; for example, the time period can be more than the amount of time for a detectable signal to arise in a tumor or metastasis after administration of a virus expressing a detectable marker, such as  
5 about 3 days, about 5 days, about a week, about ten days, about two weeks, or about a month.

## **ii. Therapeutic Compounds**

Any therapeutic or anti-cancer agent can be used as the second, therapeutic or anti-cancer agent in the combined cancer treatment methods provided herein. The  
10 methods can include administering one or more therapeutic compounds to the subject in addition to administering a virus or plurality thereof to a subject. Therapeutic compounds can act independently, or in conjunction with the virus, for tumor therapeutic effects.

Therapeutic compounds that can act independently include any of a variety of  
15 known chemotherapeutic compounds that can inhibit tumor growth, inhibit metastasis growth and/or formation, decrease the size of a tumor or metastasis, eliminate a tumor or metastasis, without reducing the ability of a virus to accumulate in a tumor, replicate in the tumor, and cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response in the subject.

20 Therapeutic compounds that act in conjunction with the viruses include, for example, compounds that alter the expression of the viruses or compounds that can interact with a virally-expressed gene, or compounds that can inhibit virus proliferation, including compounds toxic to the virus. Therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus include, for example, therapeutic compounds that  
25 increase the proliferation, toxicity, tumor cell killing, or immune response eliciting properties of a virus, and also can include, for example, therapeutic compounds that decrease the proliferation, toxicity, or cell killing properties of a virus. Optionally, the therapeutic agent can exhibit or manifest additional properties, such as, properties that permit its use as an imaging agent, as described elsewhere herein.

30 Therapeutic compounds also include, but are not limited to, chemotherapeutic agents, nanoparticles, radiation therapy, siRNA molecules, enzyme/pro-drug pairs,

- 140 -

photosensitizing agents, toxins, microwaves, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a mitosis inhibitor protein (*e.g.*, cdc6), an antitumor oligopeptide (*e.g.*, antimitotic oligopeptides, high affinity tumor-selective binding peptides), a signaling modulator, anti-cancer antibiotics, or a combination thereof.

5 Exemplary photosensitizing agents include, but are not limited to, for example, indocyanine green, toluidine blue, aminolevulinic acid, texaphyrins, benzoporphyrins, phenothiazines, phthalocyanines, porphyrins such as sodium porfimer, chlorins such as tetra(m-hydroxyphenyl)chlorin or tin(IV) chlorin e6, purpurins such as tin ethyl etiopurpurin, purpurinimides, bacteriochlorins,  
10 pheophorbides, pyropheophorbides or cationic dyes. In one embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with a photosensitizing agent.

Radionuclides, which depending up the radionuclide, amount and application can be used for diagnosis and/or for treatment. They include, but are not limited to,  
15 for example, a compound or molecule containing <sup>32</sup>Phosphate, <sup>60</sup>Cobalt, <sup>90</sup>Yttrium, <sup>99</sup>Technicium, <sup>103</sup>Palladium, <sup>106</sup>Ruthenium, <sup>111</sup>Indium, <sup>117</sup>Lutetium, <sup>125</sup>Iodine, <sup>131</sup>Iodine, <sup>137</sup>Cesium, <sup>153</sup>Samarium, <sup>186</sup>Rhenium, <sup>188</sup>Rhenium, <sup>192</sup>Iridium, <sup>198</sup>Gold, <sup>211</sup>Astatine, <sup>212</sup>Bismuth or <sup>213</sup>Bismuth. In one embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a  
20 vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with a radionuclide.

Toxins include, but are not limited to, chemotherapeutic compounds such as, but not limited to, 5-fluorouridine, calicheamicin and maytansine. Signaling modulators include, but are not limited to, for example, inhibitors of macrophage inhibitory factor, toll-like receptor agonists and stat 3 inhibitors. In one embodiment,  
25 a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with a toxin or a signaling modulator.

Combination therapy between chemotherapeutic agents and therapeutic  
viruses can be effective/curative in situations when single agent treatment is not  
30 effective. Chemotherapeutic compounds include, but are not limited to, alkylating agents such as thiotepa and cyclophosphamide; alkyl sulfonates such as busulfan,

- 141 -

improsulfan and piposulfan; aziridines such as benzodopa, carboquone, meturedopa and uredopa; ethylenimines and methylamelamines including altretamine, triethylenemelamine, trietylenephosphoramidate, triethylenethiophosphoramidate and trimethylolomelamine nitrogen mustards such as chiorambucil, chlornaphazine, 5 cholophosphamide, estramustine, ifosfamide, mechlorethamine, mechlorethamine oxide hydrochloride, melphalan, novembichin, phenesterine, prednimustine, trofosfamide, uracil mustard; nitrosureas such as carmustine, chlorozotocin, fotemustine, lomustine, nimustine, ranimustine; antibiotics such as aclacinomysins, actinomycin, anthramycin, azaserine, bleomycins, cactinomycin, calicheamicin, 10 carabycin, carminomycin, carzinophilin, chromomycins, dactinomycin, daunorubicin, detorubicin, 6-diazo-5-oxo-L-norleucine, doxorubicin, epirubicin, esorubicin, idarubicin, marcellomycin, mitomycins, mycophenolic acid, nogalamycin, olivomycins, peplomycin, potfiromycin, puromycin, quelamycin, rodorubicin, streptonigrin, streptozocin, tubercidin, ubenimex, zinostatin, zorubicin; anti- 15 metabolites such as methotrexate and 5-fluorouracil (5-FU); folic acid analogues such as denopterin, methotrexate, pteropterin, trimetrexate; purine analogs such as fludarabine, 6-mercaptopurine, thiamiprine, thioguanine; pyrimidine analogs such as ancitabine, azacitidine, 6-azauridine, carmofur, cytarabine, dideoxyuridine, doxifluridine, enocitabine, floxuridine; androgens such as calusterone, 20 dromostanolone propionate, epitestosterone, mepitosterone, testolactone; anti-adrenals such as aminoglutethimide, mitotane, trilostane; folic acid replenisher such as frolinic acid; aceglatone; aldophosphamide glycoside; aminolevulinic acid; amsacrine; bestrabucil; bisantrene; edatraxate; defofamine; demecolcine; diaziquone; elfornithine; elliptinium acetate; etoglucid; gallium nitrate; hydroxyurea; lentinan; 25 lonidamine; mitoguazone; mitoxantrone; mopidamol; nitracrine; pentostatin; phenamet; pirarubicin; podophyllinic acid; 2-ethylhydrazide; procarbazine; polysaccharide-K; razoxane; sizofiran; spirogermanium; tenuazonic acid; triaziquone; 2, 2',2"-trichlorotriethylamine; urethan; vindesine; dacarbazine; mannomustine; mitobronitol; mitolactol; pipobroman; gacytosine; cytosine arabinoside; 30 cyclophosphamide; thiotepa; taxoids, e.g., paclitaxel and docetaxel; chlorambucil; gemcitabine; 6-thioguanine; mercaptopurine; methotrexate; platinum analogs such as

- 142 -

cisplatin and carboplatin; vinblastine; platinum; etoposide (VP-16); ifosfamide; mitomycin C; mitoxantrone; vincristine; vinorelbine; navelbine; novantrone; teniposide; daunomycin; aminopterin; xeloda; ibandronate; CPT11; topoisomerase inhibitor RFS 2000; difluoromethylornithine (DMFO); retinoic acid; esperamicins; capecitabine; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Also included are anti-hormonal agents that act to regulate or inhibit hormone action on tumors such as anti-estrogens including for example tamoxifen, raloxifene, aromatase inhibiting 4(5)-imidazoles, 4-hydroxytamoxifen, trioxifene, keoxifene, LY117018, onapristone and toremifene (Fareston); and antiandrogens such as flutamide, nilutamide, bicalutamide, leuprolide and goserelin; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts, acids or derivatives of any of the above. Such chemotherapeutic compounds that can be used herein include compounds whose toxicities preclude use of the compound in general systemic chemotherapeutic methods. Chemotherapeutic agents also include new classes of targeted chemotherapeutic agents such as, for example, imatinib (sold by Novartis under the trade name Gleevec in the United States), gefitinib (developed by Astra Zeneca under the trade name Iressa) and erlotinib. Particular chemotherapeutic agents include, but are not limited to, cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-S vincristine, prednisone, doxorubicin and L-asparaginase; mechoroethamine, vincristine, procarbazine and prednisone (MOPP), cyclophosphamide, vincristine, procarbazine and prednisone (C-MOPP), bleomycin, vinblastine, gemcitabine and 5-fluorouracil. Exemplary chemotherapeutic agents are, for example, cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-S. In a non-limiting embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with a platinum coordination complex, such as cisplatin, carboplatin, oxaliplatin, DWA2114R, NK121, IS 3 295, and 254-S. Tumors, cancers and metastasis can be any of those provided herein, and in particular, can be a pancreatic tumor, an ovarian tumor, a lung tumor, a colon tumor, a prostate tumor, a cervical tumor or a breast tumor; exemplary tumors are pancreatic and ovarian tumors. Tumors, cancers and metastasis can be a monotherapy-resistant tumor such as, for example, one that does

- 143 -

not respond to therapy with virus alone or anti-cancer agent alone, but that does respond to therapy with a combination of virus and anti-cancer agent. Typically, a therapeutically effective amount of virus is systemically administered to the subject and the virus localizes and accumulates in the tumor. Subsequent to administering the virus, the subject is administered a therapeutically effective amount of an anti-cancer agent, such as cisplatin. In one example, cisplatin is administered once-daily for five consecutive days. One of skill in the art could determine when to administer the anti-cancer agent subsequent to the virus using, for example, *in vivo* animal models. Using the methods provided herein, administration of a virus and anti-cancer agent, such as cisplatin can cause a reduction in tumor volume, can cause tumor growth to stop or be delayed or can cause the tumor to be eliminated from the subject. The status of tumors, cancers and metastasis following treatment can be monitored using any of the methods provided herein and known in the art.

Exemplary anti-cancer antibiotics include, but are not limited to, anthracyclines such as doxorubicin hydrochloride (adriamycin), idarubicin hydrochloride, daunorubicin hydrochloride, aclarubicin hydrochloride, epirubicin hydrochloride, and purarubicin hydrochloride, pleomycins such as pleomycin and peplomycin sulfate, mitomycins such as mitomycin C, actinomycins such as actinomycin D, zinoastatin, and polypeptides such as neocarzinostatin. In one embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with an anti-cancer antibiotic.

In one embodiment, nanoparticles can be designed such that they carry one or more therapeutic agents provided herein. Additionally, nanoparticles can be designed to carry a molecule that targets the nanoparticle to the tumor cells. In one non-limiting example, nanoparticles can be coated with a radionuclide and, optionally, an antibody immunoreactive with a tumor-associated antigen. In one embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with a nanoparticle carrying any of the therapeutic agents provided herein.



- 144 -

Radiation therapy has become a foremost choice of treatment for a majority of cancer patients. The wide use of radiation treatment stems from the ability of gamma-irradiation to induce irreversible damage in targeted cells with the preservation of normal tissue function. Ionizing radiation triggers apoptosis, the intrinsic cellular death machinery in cancer cells, and the activation of apoptosis seems to be the principal mode by which cancer cells die following exposure to ionizing radiation. In one embodiment, a vaccinia virus, such as a vaccinia virus provided herein, is administered to a subject having a tumor, cancer or metastasis in combination with radiation therapy.

Thus, provided herein are methods of administering to a subject one or more therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to increase the proliferation, toxicity, tumor cell killing, or immune response eliciting properties of a virus. Also provided herein are methods of administering to a subject one or more therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to decrease the proliferation, toxicity, or cell killing properties of a virus. Therapeutic compounds to be administered can be any of those provided herein or in the art.

Therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to increase the proliferation, toxicity, tumor cell killing, or immune response eliciting properties of a virus are compounds that can alter gene expression, where the altered gene expression can result in an increased killing of tumor cells or an increased anti-tumor immune response in the subject. A gene expression-altering compound can, for example, cause an increase or decrease in expression of one or more viral genes, including endogenous viral genes and/or exogenous viral genes. For example, a gene expression-altering compound can induce or increase transcription of a gene in a virus such as an exogenous gene that can cause cell lysis or cell death, that can provoke an immune response, that can catalyze conversion of a prodrug-like compound, or that can inhibit expression of a tumor cell gene. Any of a wide variety of compounds that can alter gene expression are known in the art, including IPTG and RU486.

Exemplary genes whose expression can be up-regulated include proteins and RNA molecules, including toxins, enzymes that can convert a prodrug to an anti-tumor drug, cytokines, transcription regulating proteins, siRNA, and ribozymes. In another

- 145 -

example, a gene expression-altering compound can inhibit or decrease transcription of a gene in a virus such as a heterologous gene that can reduce viral toxicity or reduces viral proliferation. Any of a variety of compounds that can reduce or inhibit gene expression can be used in the methods provided herein, including siRNA compounds, transcriptional inhibitors or inhibitors of transcriptional activators. Exemplary genes whose expression can be down-regulated include proteins and RNA molecules, including viral proteins or RNA that suppress lysis, nucleotide synthesis or proliferation, and cellular proteins or RNA molecules that suppress cell death, immunoreactivity, lysis, or viral replication.

10 In another embodiment, therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to increase the proliferation, toxicity, tumor cell killing, or immune response eliciting properties of a virus are compounds that can interact with a virally expressed gene product, and such interaction can result in an increased killing of tumor cells or an increased anti-tumor immune response in the subject. A therapeutic compound that can interact with a virally-expressed gene product can include, for example a prodrug or other compound that has little or no toxicity or other biological activity in its subject-administered form, but after interaction with a virally expressed gene product, the compound can develop a property that results in tumor cell death, including but not limited to, cytotoxicity, ability to induce apoptosis, or ability to trigger an immune response. In one non-limiting example, the virus carries an enzyme into the cancer cells. Once the enzyme is introduced into the cancer cells, an inactive form of a chemotherapy drug (*i.e.*, a prodrug) is administered. When the inactive prodrug reaches the cancer cells, the enzyme converts the prodrug into the active chemotherapy drug, so that it can kill the cancer cell. Thus, the treatment is targeted only to cancer cells and does not affect normal cells. The prodrug can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, the virus. A variety of prodrug-like substances are known in the art and an exemplary set of such compounds are disclosed elsewhere herein, where such compounds can include gancyclovir, 5-fluorouracil, 6-methylpurine deoxyriboside, cephalosporin-doxorubicin, 4-[(2-chloroethyl)(2-mesuloxyethyl)amino]benzoyl-L-glutamic acid, acetaminophen, indole-3-acetic acid, CB1954, 7-ethyl-10-[4-(1-piperidino)-1-

- 146 -

piperidino]carbonyloxycamptothecin, bis-(2-chloroethyl)amino-4-hydroxyphenylaminomethanone 28, 1-chloromethyl-5-hydroxy-1,2-dihydro-3H-benz[e]indole, epirubicin-glucuronide, 5'-deoxy-5-fluorouridine, cytosine arabinoside, linamarin, and a nucleoside analogue (e.g., fluorouridine, fluorodeoxyuridine, 5-fluorouridine arabinoside, cytosine arabinoside, adenine arabinoside, guanine arabinoside, hypoxanthine arabinoside, 6-mercaptopurine riboside, theoguanosine riboside, nebularine, 5-iodouridine, 5-iododeoxyuridine, 5-bromodeoxyuridine, 5-vinyldeoxyuridine, 9-[(2-hydroxy)ethoxy]methylguanine (acyclovir), 9-[(2-hydroxy-1-hydroxymethyl)-ethoxy]methylguanine (DHPG), azauridine, azacytidine, 10 azidothymidine, dideoxyadenosine, dideoxycytidine, dideoxyinosine, dideoxyguanosine, dideoxythymidine, 3'-deoxyadenosine, 3'-deoxycytidine, 3'-deoxyinosine, 3'-deoxyguanosine, 3'-deoxythymidine).

In another embodiment, therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to decrease the proliferation, toxicity, or cell killing properties of a virus are compounds that can inhibit viral replication, inhibit viral toxins, or cause viral death. A therapeutic compound that can inhibit viral replication, inhibit viral toxins, or cause viral death can generally include a compound that can block one or more steps in the viral life cycle, including, but not limited to, compounds that can inhibit viral DNA replication, viral RNA transcription, viral coat protein assembly, 20 outer membrane or polysaccharide assembly. Any of a variety of compounds that can block one or more steps in a viral life cycle are known in the art, including any known antiviral compound (e.g., cidofovir), viral DNA polymerase inhibitors, viral RNA polymerase inhibitors, inhibitors of proteins that regulate viral DNA replication or RNA transcription. In another example, a virus can contain a gene encoding a viral life cycle protein, such as DNA polymerase or RNA polymerase that can be inhibited 25 by a compound that is, optionally, non-toxic to the host organism.

In addition to combination therapy between chemotherapeutic agents and a virus provided herein, other more complex combination therapy strategies could be applied as well. For example, a combination therapy can include chemotherapeutic agents, therapeutic antibodies, and a virus provided herein. Alternatively, another combination therapy can be the combination of radiation, therapeutic antibodies, and 30

- 147 -

a virus provided herein. Therefore, the concept of combination therapy also can be based on the application of a virus provided herein virus along with one or more of the following therapeutic modalities, namely, chemotherapeutic agents, radiation therapy, therapeutic antibodies, hyper- or hypothermia therapy, siRNA,  
5 diagnostic/therapeutic bacteria, diagnostic/therapeutic mammalian cells, immunotherapy, and/or targeted toxins (delivered by antibodies, liposomes and nanoparticles).

Effective delivery of each components of the combination therapy is an important aspect of the methods provided herein. In accordance with one aspect, the  
10 modes of administration discussed below exploit one of more of the key features: (i) delivery of a virus provided herein to the tumors by a mode of administration effect to achieve highest titer of virus and highest therapeutic effect; (ii) delivery of any other mentioned therapeutic modalities to the tumor by a mode of administration to achieve the optimal therapeutic effect. The dose scheme of the combination therapy  
15 administered is such that the combination of the two or more therapeutic modalities is therapeutically effective. Dosages will vary in accordance with such factors as the age, health, sex, size and weight of the patient, the route of administration, the toxicity of the drugs, frequency of treatment, and the relative susceptibilities of the cancer to each of the therapeutic modalities.

20 **iii. Immunotherapies and biological therapies**

Therapeutic compounds also include, but are not limited to, compounds that exert an immunotherapeutic effect, stimulate the immune system, carry a therapeutic compound, or a combination thereof. Optionally, the therapeutic agent can exhibit or manifest additional properties, such as, properties that permit its use as an imaging  
25 agent, as described elsewhere herein. Such therapeutic compounds include, but are not limited to, anti-cancer antibodies, radiation therapy, siRNA molecules and compounds that suppress the immune system. Immunotherapy includes for example, immune-stimulating molecules (protein-based or non-protein-based), cells and antibodies. Immunotherapy treatments can include stimulating immune cells to act  
30 more effectively or to make the tumor cells or tumor associated antigens recognizable to the immune system (*i.e.*, break tolerance).

- 148 -

Cytokines and growth factors include, but are not limited to, interleukins, such as, for example, interleukin-1, interleukin-2, interleukin-6 and interleukin-12, tumor necrosis factors, such as tumor necrosis factor alpha (TNF- $\alpha$ ), interferons such as interferon gamma (IFN- $\gamma$ ), granulocyte macrophage colony stimulating factors (GM-CSF), angiogenins, and tissue factors.

Anti-cancer antibodies include, but are not limited to, Rituximab, ADEPT, Trastuzumab (Herceptin), Tositumomab (Bexxar), Cetuximab (Erbix), Ibritumomab (Zevalin), Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H), Epratuzumab (Lymphocide), Gemtuzumab ozogamicin (Mylotarg), Bevacimab (Avastin), Tarceva (Erlotinib), SUTENT (sunitinib malate), Panorex (Edrecolomab), RITUXAN (Rituximab), Zevalin (90Y-ibritumomab tiuxetan), Mylotarg (Gemtuzumab Ozogamicin) and Campath (Alemtuzumab).

Thus, provided herein are methods of administering to a subject one or more therapeutic compounds that can act in conjunction with the virus to stimulate or enhance the immune system, thereby enhancing the effect of the virus. Such immunotherapy can be either delivered as a separate therapeutic modality or could be encoded (if the immunotherapy is protein-based) by the administered virus.

Biological therapies are treatments that use natural body substances or drugs made from natural body substances. They can help to treat a cancer and control side effects caused by other cancer treatments such as chemotherapy. Biological therapies are also sometimes called Biological Response Modifiers (BRM's), biologic agents or simply "biologics" because they stimulate the body to respond biologically (or naturally) to cancer. Immunotherapy is treatment using natural substances that the body uses to fight infection and disease. Because it uses natural substances, immunotherapy is also a biological therapy. There are several types of drugs that come under the term biological therapy: these include, for example, monoclonal antibodies (mAbs), cancer vaccines, growth factors for blood cells, cancer growth inhibitors, anti-angiogenic factors, interferon alpha, interleukin-2 (IL-2), gene therapy and BCG vaccine for bladder cancer.

Monoclonal antibodies (mAbs) are of particular interest for treating cancer because of the specificity of binding to a unique antigen and the ability to produce

- 149 -

large quantities in the laboratory for mass distribution. Monoclonal antibodies can be engineered to act in the same way as immune system proteins: that is, to seek out and kill foreign matter in your body, such as viruses. Monoclonal antibodies can be designed to recognize epitopes on the surface of cancer cells. The antibodies target

5 specifically bind to the epitopes and either kill the cancer cells or deliver a therapeutic agent to the cancer cell. Methods of conjugating therapeutic agents to antibodies is well-known in the art. Different antibodies have to be made for different types of cancer; for example, Rituximab recognizes CD20 protein on the outside of non Hodgkin's lymphoma cells; ADEPT is a treatment using antibodies that recognize

10 bowel (colon) cancer; and Trastuzumab (Herceptin) recognizes breast cancer cells that produce too much of the protein HER 2 ( "HER 2 positive"). Other antibodies include, for example, Tositumomab (Bexxar), Cetuximab (Erbix), Ibritumomab (Zevalin), Alemtuzumab (Campath-1H), Epratuzumab (Lymphocide), Gemtuzumab ozogamicin (Mylotarg) and Bevacimab (Avastin). Thus, the viruses provided herein

15 can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, one or more monoclonal antibodies in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Rather than attempting to prevent infection, such as is the case with the

20 influenza virus, cancer vaccines help treat the cancer once it has developed. The aim of cancer vaccines is to stimulate the immune response. Cancer vaccines include, for example, antigen vaccines, whole cell vaccines, dendritic cell vaccines, DNA vaccines and anti-idiotypic vaccines. Antigen vaccines are vaccines made from tumor-associated antigens in, or produced by, cancer cells. Antigen vaccines stimulate a

25 subject's immune system to attack the cancer. Whole cell vaccines are vaccines that use the whole cancer cell, not just a specific antigen from it, to make the vaccine. The vaccine is made from a subject's own cancer cells, another subject's cancer cells or cancer cells grown in a laboratory. The cells are treated in the laboratory, usually with radiation, so that they can't grow, and are administered to the subject via

30 injection or through an intravenous drip into the bloodstream so they can stimulate the immune system to attack the cancer. One type of whole cell vaccine is a dendritic cell

- 150 -

vaccine, which help the immune system to recognize and attack abnormal cells, such as cancer cells. Dendritic cell vaccines are made by growing dendritic cells alongside the cancer cells in the lab. The vaccine is administered to stimulate the immune system to attack the cancer. Anti-idiotypic vaccines are vaccines that stimulate the

5 body to make antibodies against cancer cells. Cancer cells make some tumor-associated antigens that the immune system recognizes as foreign. But because cancer cells are similar to non-cancer cells, the immune system can respond weakly. DNA vaccines boost the immune response. DNA vaccines are made from DNA from cancer cells that carry the genes for the tumor-associated antigens. When a DNA

10 vaccine is injected, it enables the cells of the immune system to recognize the tumor-associated antigens, and activates the cells in the immune system (*i.e.*, breaking tolerance). The most promising results from using DNA vaccines are in treating melanoma. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, a whole cell vaccine in the treatment of cancer. In one

15 embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Growth factors are natural substances that stimulate the bone marrow to make blood cells. Recombinant technology can be used to generate growth factors which can be administered to a subject to increase the number of white blood cells, red blood

20 cells and stem cells in the blood. Growth factors used in cancer treatment to boost white blood cells include Granulocyte Colony Stimulating Factor (G-CSF) also called filgrastim (Neupogen) or lenograstim (Granocyte) and Granulocyte and Macrophage Colony Stimulating Factor (GM-CSF), also called molgramostim. A growth factor to help treat anemia is erythropoietin (EPO). EPO encourages the body to make more

25 red blood cells, which in turn, increases hemoglobin levels and the levels of oxygen in body tissues. Other growth factors are being developed which can boost platelets. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, a growth factor such as GM-CSF, in the treatment of cancer. In one

30 embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

- 151 -

Cancer growth inhibitors use cell-signaling molecules which control the growth and multiplication of cells, such as cancer cells. Drugs that block these signaling molecules can stop cancers from growing and dividing. Cancer growth factors include, but are not limited to, tyrosine kinases. Thus, drugs that block tyrosine kinases are tyrosine kinase inhibitors (TKIs). Examples of TKIs include, but are not limited to, Erlotinib (Tarceva, OSI - 774), Iressa (Gefitinib, ZD 1839) and Imatinib (Glivec, STI 571). Another type of growth inhibitor is Bortezomib (Velcade) for multiple myeloma and for some other cancers. Velcade is a proteasome inhibitor. Proteasomes are found in all cells and help break down proteins in cells. Interfering with the action of proteasomes causes a build up of proteins in the cell to toxic levels; thereby killing the cancer cells. Cancer cells are more sensitive to Velcade than normal cells. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, a cancer growth inhibitor, such as Velcade, in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Cancers need a blood supply to expand and grow their own blood vessels as they get bigger. Without its own blood supply, a cancer cannot grow due to lack of nutrients and oxygen. Anti-angiogenic drugs stop tumors from developing their own blood vessels. Examples of these types of drugs include, but are not limited to, Thalidomide, mainly for treating myeloma but also in trials for other types of cancer, and Bevacizumab (Avastin), a type of monoclonal antibody that has been investigated for bowel cancer. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, an anti-angiogenic drug in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Interferon-alpha (IFN- $\alpha$ ) is a natural substance produced in the body, in very small amounts, as part of the immune response. IFN- $\alpha$  is administered as a treatment to boost the immune system and help fight cancers such as renal cell (kidney) cancer, malignant melanoma, multiple myeloma and some types of leukemias. IFN- $\alpha$  works in several ways: it can help to stop cancer cells growing, it can also boost the immune system to help it attack the cancer, and it can affect the blood supply to the cancer



- 152 -

cells. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, IFN- $\alpha$  in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

5 Administration of IL-2 is a biological therapy drug because it is naturally produced by the immune system. Thus, it is also an immunotherapy. Interleukin 2 is used in treating renal cell (kidney) cancer, and is being tested in clinical trials for several other types of cancers. IL-2 works directly on cancer cells by interfering with cell grow and proliferation; it stimulates the immune system by promoting the growth  
10 of killer T cells and other cells that attack cancer cells; and it also stimulates cancer cells to secrete chemoattractants that attract immune system cells. IL-2 is generally administered as a subcutaneous injection just under the skin once daily for 5 days, followed by 2 days rest. The cycle of injections is repeated for 4 weeks followed by a week without treatment. The treatment regiment and the number of cycles  
15 administered depends on the type of cancer and how it responds to the treatment. IL-2 can be self-administered or administered by a health professional. Alternatively, IL-2 can be administered intravenously via injection or drip. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, IL-2 in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one  
20 or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Gene therapy involves treating cancer by blocking abnormal genes in cancer cells, repairing or replacing abnormal genes in cancer cells, encouraging even more genes to become abnormal in cancer cells so that they die or become sensitive to treatment, using viruses to carry treatment-activating enzymes into the cancer cells, or  
25 a combination thereof. As a result, cancer cells die due to damage in the cell. Cancer cells develop as a result of several types of mutations in several of their genes. Targeted genes include, but are not limited to, those that encourage the cell to multiply (*i.e.*, oncogenes), genes that stop the cell multiplying (*i.e.*, tumor suppressor genes) and genes that repair other damaged genes. Gene therapy can involve repair of  
30 damaged oncogenes or blocking the proteins that the oncogenes produce. The tumor suppressor gene, *p53*, is damaged in many human cancers. Viruses have been used in

- 153 -

to deliver an undamaged *p53* gene into cancer cells, and early clinical trials are now in progress looking at treating cancers with modified *p53*-producing viruses. Gene therapy could be used to replace the damaged DNA repairing genes. In an alternative embodiment, methods of increasing DNA damage within a tumor cell can promote death of the tumor cell or cause increased susceptibility of the tumor cell to other cancer treatments, such as radiotherapy or chemotherapy. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, any of the gene therapy methods provided herein or known in the art in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

Treatment of early stage bladder cancer is called intravesical treatment, which is mainly used to treat stage T1 bladder cancers that are high grade (grade 3 or G3) or carcinoma *in situ* of the bladder (also known as Tis or CIS). BCG is a vaccine for tuberculosis (TB), which also has been found to be effective in treating CIS and preventing bladder cancers from recurring. In some cases, BCG vaccines have been used for treating grade 2 early bladder cancer. Because bladder cancer can occur anywhere in the bladder lining, it cannot be removed in the same way as the papillary early bladder cancers. Rather a BCG vaccine is administered using intravesical therapy; that is, first, a catheter (tube) put is inserted into the bladder, followed by intra-catheter administration of a BCG vaccine and/or a chemotherapy. BCG treatment occurs weekly for 6 weeks or more depending on the effect on the bladder cancer. BCG treatment of bladder cancer can be combined with other types of treatments, such as administration of chemotherapy (intravesical), IL-2, treatment with drugs that make cells sensitive to light, vitamins, and photodynamic therapy. Thus, the viruses provided herein can be administered concurrently with, or sequentially to, BCG vaccines in the treatment of cancer. In one embodiment, additional therapy is administered in the form of one or more of any of the other treatment modalities provided herein.

#### f. State of Subject

In another embodiment, the methods provided herein for administering a virus to a subject can be performed on a subject in any of a variety of states, including an

- 154 -

anesthetized subject, an alert subject, a subject with elevated body temperature, a subject with reduced body temperature, or other state of the subject that is known to affect the accumulation of a virus in the tumor. As provided herein, it has been determined that a subject that is anesthetized can have a decreased rate of accumulation of a virus in a tumor relative to a subject that is not anesthetized. Further provided herein, it has been determined that a subject with decreased body temperature can have a decreased rate of accumulation of a virus in a tumor relative to a subject with a normal body temperature. Accordingly, provided herein are methods of administering a virus to a subject, where the methods can include administering a virus to a subject where the subject is not under anesthesia, such as general anesthesia; for example, the subject can be under local anesthesia, or can be unanesthetized. Also provided herein are methods of administering a virus to a subject, where the methods can include administering a virus to a subject with altered body temperature, where the alteration of the body temperature can influence the ability of the virus to accumulate in a tumor; typically, a decrease in body temperature can decrease the ability of a virus to accumulate in a tumor. Thus, in one exemplary embodiment, a method is provided for administering a virus to a subject, where the method includes elevating the body temperature of the subject to a temperature above normal, and administering a virus to the subject, where the virus can accumulate in the tumor more readily in the subject with higher body temperature relative to the ability of the virus to accumulate in a tumor of a subject with a normal body temperature. In another embodiment, localized elevations in temperature in the area surrounding the tumor can be used to increase the accumulation of the virus in the tumor.

## 2. Monitoring

The methods provided herein can further include one or more steps of monitoring the subject, monitoring the tumor, and/or monitoring the virus administered to the subject. Any of a variety of monitoring steps can be included in the methods provided herein, including, but not limited to, monitoring tumor size, monitoring anti-(tumor antigen) antibody titer, monitoring the presence and/or size of metastases, monitoring the subject's lymph nodes, monitoring the subject's weight or

- 155 -

other health indicators including blood or urine markers, monitoring anti-(viral antigen) antibody titer, monitoring viral expression of a detectable gene product, and directly monitoring viral titer in a tumor, tissue or organ of a subject.

The purpose of the monitoring can be simply for assessing the health state of the subject or the progress of therapeutic treatment of the subject, or can be for determining whether or not further administration of the same or a different virus is warranted, or for determining when or whether or not to administer a compound to the subject where the compound can act to increase the efficacy of the therapeutic method, or the compound can act to decrease the pathogenicity of the virus administered to the subject.

**a. Monitoring viral gene expression**

In some embodiments, the methods provided herein can include monitoring one or more virally expressed genes. Viruses, such as those provided herein or otherwise known in the art, can express one or more detectable gene products, including but not limited to, detectable proteins.

As provided herein, measurement of a detectable gene product expressed by a virus can provide an accurate determination of the level of virus present in the subject. As further provided herein, measurement of the location of the detectable gene product, for example, by imaging methods including, but not limited to, magnetic resonance, fluorescence, and tomographic methods, can determine the localization of the virus in the subject. Accordingly, the methods provided herein that include monitoring a detectable viral gene product can be used to determine the presence or absence of the virus in one or more organs or tissues of a subject, and/or the presence or absence of the virus in a tumor or metastases of a subject. Further, the methods provided herein that include monitoring a detectable viral gene product can be used to determine the titer of virus present in one or more organs, tissues, tumors or metastases. Methods that include monitoring the localization and/or titer of viruses in a subject can be used for determining the pathogenicity of a virus; since viral infection, and particularly the level of infection, of normal tissues and organs can indicate the pathogenicity of the probe, methods of monitoring the localization and/or amount of viruses in a subject can be used to determine the pathogenicity of a virus.

- 156 -

Since methods provided herein can be used to monitor the amount of viruses at any particular location in a subject, the methods that include monitoring the localization and/or titer of viruses in a subject can be performed at multiple time points, and, accordingly can determine the rate of viral replication in a subject, including the rate of viral replication in one or more organs or tissues of a subject; accordingly, the methods of monitoring a viral gene product can be used for determining the replication competence of a virus. The methods provided herein also can be used to quantitate the amount of virus present in a variety of organs or tissues, and tumors or metastases, and can thereby indicate the degree of preferential accumulation of the virus in a subject; accordingly, the viral gene product monitoring methods provided herein can be used in methods of determining the ability of a virus to accumulate in tumor or metastases in preference to normal tissues or organs. Since the viruses used in the methods provided herein can accumulate in an entire tumor or can accumulate at multiple sites in a tumor, and can also accumulate in metastases, the methods provided herein for monitoring a viral gene product can be used to determine the size of a tumor or the number of metastases that are present in a subject. Monitoring such presence of viral gene product in tumor or metastasis over a range of time can be used to assess changes in the tumor or metastasis, including growth or shrinking of a tumor, or development of new metastases or disappearance of metastases, and also can be used to determine the rate of growth or shrinking of a tumor, or development of new metastases or disappearance of metastases, or the change in the rate of growth or shrinking of a tumor, or development of new metastases or disappearance of metastases. Accordingly, the methods of monitoring a viral gene product can be used for monitoring a neoplastic disease in a subject, or for determining the efficacy of treatment of a neoplastic disease, by determining rate of growth or shrinking of a tumor, or development of new metastases or disappearance of metastases, or the change in the rate of growth or shrinking of a tumor, or development of new metastases or disappearance of metastases.

Any of a variety of detectable proteins can be detected in the monitoring methods provided herein; an exemplary, non-limiting list of such detectable proteins includes any of a variety of fluorescent proteins (*e.g.*, green or red fluorescent

- 157 -

proteins), any of a variety of luciferases, transferrin or other iron binding proteins; or receptors, binding proteins, and antibodies, where a compound that specifically binds the receptor, binding protein or antibody can be a detectable agent or can be labeled with a detectable substance (*e.g.*, a radionuclide or imaging agent). Viruses  
5 expressing a detectable protein can be detected by a combination of the method provided herein and known in the art. Viruses expressing more than one detectable protein or two or more viruses expressing various detectable proteins can be detected and distinguished by dual imaging methods. For example, a virus expressing a fluorescent protein and an iron binding protein can be detected *in vitro* or *in vivo* by  
10 low light fluorescence imaging and magnetic resonance, respectively. In another example, a virus expressing two or more fluorescent proteins can be detected by fluorescence imaging at different wavelengths. *In vivo* dual imaging can be performed on a subject that has been administered a virus expressing two or more detectable gene products or two or more viruses each expressing one or more detectable gene  
15 products.

**b. Monitoring tumor size**

Also provided herein are methods of monitoring tumor and/or metastasis size and location. Tumor and/or metastasis size can be monitored by any of a variety of methods known in the art, including external assessment methods or tomographic or  
20 magnetic imaging methods. In addition to the methods known in the art, methods provided herein, for example, monitoring viral gene expression, can be used for monitoring tumor and/or metastasis size.

Monitoring size over several time points can provide information regarding the increase or decrease in size of a tumor or metastasis, and can also provide  
25 information regarding the presence of additional tumors and/or metastases in the subject. Monitoring tumor size over several time points can provide information regarding the development of a neoplastic disease in a subject, including the efficacy of treatment of a neoplastic disease in a subject.

**c. Monitoring antibody titer**

30 The methods provided herein also can include monitoring the antibody titer in a subject, including antibodies produced in response to administration of a virus to a

- 158 -

subject. The viruses administered in the methods provided herein can elicit an immune response to endogenous viral antigens. The viruses administered in the methods provided herein also can elicit an immune response to exogenous genes expressed by a virus. The viruses administered in the methods provided herein also can elicit an immune response to tumor antigens. Monitoring antibody titer against viral antigens, viral expressed exogenous gene products, or tumor antigens can be used in methods of monitoring the toxicity of a virus, monitoring the efficacy of treatment methods, or monitoring the level of gene product or antibodies for production and/or harvesting.

10 In one embodiment, monitoring antibody titer can be used to monitor the toxicity of a virus. Antibody titer against a virus can vary over the time period after administration of the virus to the subject, where at some particular time points, a low anti-(viral antigen) antibody titer can indicate a higher toxicity, while at other time points a high anti-(viral antigen) antibody titer can indicate a higher toxicity. The  
15 viruses used in the methods provided herein can be immunogenic, and can, therefore, elicit an immune response soon after administering the virus to the subject. Generally, a virus against which a subject's immune system can quickly mount a strong immune response can be a virus that has low toxicity when the subject's immune system can remove the virus from all normal organs or tissues. Thus, in  
20 some embodiments, a high antibody titer against viral antigens soon after administering the virus to a subject can indicate low toxicity of a virus. In contrast, a virus that is not highly immunogenic can infect a host organism without eliciting a strong immune response, which can result in a higher toxicity of the virus to the host. Accordingly, in some embodiments, a high antibody titer against viral antigens soon  
25 after administering the virus to a subject can indicate low toxicity of a virus.

In other embodiments, monitoring antibody titer can be used to monitor the efficacy of treatment methods. In the methods provided herein, antibody titer, such as anti-(tumor antigen) antibody titer, can indicate the efficacy of a therapeutic method such as a therapeutic method to treat neoplastic disease. Therapeutic methods  
30 provided herein can include causing or enhancing an immune response against a tumor and/or metastasis. Thus, by monitoring the anti-(tumor antigen) antibody titer,

- 159 -

it is possible to monitor the efficacy of a therapeutic method in causing or enhancing an immune response against a tumor and/or metastasis. The therapeutic methods provided herein also can include administering to a subject a virus that can accumulate in a tumor and can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response.

5 Accordingly, it is possible to monitor the ability of a host to mount an immune response against viruses accumulated in a tumor or metastasis, which can indicate that a subject has also mounted an anti-tumor immune response, or can indicate that a subject is likely to mount an anti-tumor immune response, or can indicate that a subject is capable of mounting an anti-tumor immune response.

10 In other embodiments, monitoring antibody titer can be used for monitoring the level of gene product or antibodies for production and/or harvesting. As provided herein, methods can be used for producing proteins, RNA molecules or other compounds by expressing an exogenous gene in a virus that has accumulated in a tumor. Further provided herein are methods for producing antibodies against a  
15 protein, RNA molecule or other compound produced by exogenous gene expression of a virus that has accumulated in a tumor. Monitoring antibody titer against the protein, RNA molecule or other compound can indicate the level of production of the protein, RNA molecule or other compound by the tumor-accumulated virus, and also can directly indicate the level of antibodies specific for such a protein, RNA molecule  
20 or other compound.

**d. Monitoring general health diagnostics**

The methods provided herein also can include methods of monitoring the health of a subject. Some of the methods provided herein are therapeutic methods, including neoplastic disease therapeutic methods. Monitoring the health of a subject  
25 can be used to determine the efficacy of the therapeutic method, as is known in the art. The methods provided herein also can include a step of administering to a subject a virus. Monitoring the health of a subject can be used to determine the pathogenicity of a virus administered to a subject. Any of a variety of health diagnostic methods for monitoring disease such as neoplastic disease, infectious disease, or immune-related  
30 disease can be monitored, as is known in the art. For example, the weight, blood pressure, pulse, breathing, color, temperature or other observable state of a subject can



- 160 -

indicate the health of a subject. In addition, the presence or absence or level of one or more components in a sample from a subject can indicate the health of a subject.

Typical samples can include blood and urine samples, where the presence or absence or level of one or more components can be determined by performing, for example, a blood panel or a urine panel diagnostic test. Exemplary components indicative of a subject's health include, but are not limited to, white blood cell count, hematocrit, or reactive protein concentration.

**e. Monitoring coordinated with treatment**

Also provided herein are methods of monitoring a therapy, where therapeutic decisions can be based on the results of the monitoring. Therapeutic methods provided herein can include administering to a subject a virus, where the virus can preferentially accumulate in a tumor and/or metastasis, and where the virus can cause or enhance an anti-tumor immune response. Such therapeutic methods can include a variety of steps including multiple administrations of a particular virus, administration of a second virus, or administration of a therapeutic compound. Determination of the amount, timing or type of virus or compound to administer to the subject can be based on one or more results from monitoring the subject. For example, the antibody titer in a subject can be used to determine whether or not it is desirable to administer a virus or compound, the quantity of virus or compound to administer, and the type of virus or compound to administer, where, for example, a low antibody titer can indicate the desirability of administering additional virus, a different virus, or a therapeutic compound such as a compound that induces viral gene expression. In another example, the overall health state of a subject can be used to determine whether or not it is desirable to administer a virus or compound, the quantity of virus or compound to administer, and the type of virus or compound to administer, where, for example, determining that the subject is healthy can indicate the desirability of administering additional virus, a different virus, or a therapeutic compound such as a compound that induces viral gene expression. In another example, monitoring a detectable virally expressed gene product can be used to determine whether or not it is desirable to administer a virus or compound, the quantity of virus or compound to administer, and the type of virus or compound to administer. Such monitoring methods can be used to

- 161 -

determine whether or not the therapeutic method is effective, whether or not the therapeutic method is pathogenic to the subject, whether or not the virus has accumulated in a tumor or metastasis, and whether or not the virus has accumulated in normal tissues or organs. Based on such determinations, the desirability and form of further therapeutic methods can be derived.

In one embodiment, determination of whether or not a therapeutic method is effective can be used to derive further therapeutic methods. Any of a variety of methods of monitoring can be used to determine whether or not a therapeutic method is effective, as provided herein or otherwise known in the art. If monitoring methods indicate that the therapeutic method is effective, a decision can be made to maintain the current course of therapy, which can include further administrations of a virus or compound, or a decision can be made that no further administrations are required. If monitoring methods indicate that the therapeutic method is ineffective, the monitoring results can indicate whether or not a course of treatment should be discontinued (*e.g.*, when a virus is pathogenic to the subject), or changed (*e.g.*, when a virus accumulates in a tumor without harming the host organism, but without eliciting an anti-tumor immune response), or increased in frequency or amount (*e.g.*, when little or no virus accumulates in tumor).

In one example, monitoring can indicate that a virus is pathogenic to a subject. In such instances, a decision can be made to terminate administration of the virus to the subject, to administer lower levels of the virus to the subject, to administer a different virus to a subject, or to administer to a subject a compound that reduces the pathogenicity of the virus. In one example, administration of a virus that is determined to be pathogenic can be terminated. In another example, the dosage amount of a virus that is determined to be pathogenic can be decreased for subsequent administration; in one version of such an example, the subject can be pre-treated with another virus that can increase the ability of the pathogenic virus to accumulate in tumor, prior to re-administering the pathogenic virus to the subject. In another example, a subject can have administered thereto a virus that is pathogenic to the subject; administration of such a pathogenic virus can be accompanied by administration of, for example, an antiviral compound (*e.g.*, cidofovir), pathogenicity

- 162 -

attenuating compound (*e.g.*, a compound that down-regulates the expression of a lytic or apoptotic gene product), or other compound that can decrease the proliferation, toxicity, or cell killing properties of a virus, as described herein elsewhere. In one variation of such an example, the localization of the virus can be monitored, and, upon determination that the virus is accumulated in tumor and/or metastases but not in normal tissues or organs, administration of the antiviral compound or pathogenicity attenuating compound can be terminated, and the pathogenic activity of the virus can be activated or increased, but limited to the tumor and/or metastasis. In another variation of such an example, after terminating administration of the antiviral compound or pathogenicity attenuating compound, the presence of the virus and/or pathogenicity of the virus can be further monitored, and administration of such a compound can be reinitiated if the virus is determined to pose a threat to the host by, for example, spreading to normal organs or tissues, releasing a toxin into the vasculature, or otherwise having pathogenic effects reaching beyond the tumor or metastasis.

In another example, monitoring can determine whether or not a virus has accumulated in a tumor or metastasis of a subject. Upon such a determination, a decision can be made to further administer additional virus, a different virus or a compound to the subject. In another example, monitoring the presence of a virus in a tumor can be used in deciding to administer to the subject a compound, where the compound can increase the pathogenicity, proliferation, or immunogenicity of a virus or the compound can otherwise act in conjunction with the virus to increase the proliferation, toxicity, tumor cell killing, or immune response eliciting properties of a virus; in one variation of such an example, the virus can, for example, have little or no lytic or cell killing capability in the absence of such a compound; in a further variation of such an example, monitoring of the presence of the virus in a tumor or metastasis can be coupled with monitoring the absence of the virus in normal tissues or organs, where the compound is administered if the virus is present in tumor or metastasis and not at all present or substantially not present in normal organs or tissues; in a further variation of such an example, the amount of virus in a tumor or

- 163 -

metastasis can be monitored, where the compound is administered if the virus is present in tumor or metastasis at sufficient levels.

#### **J. METHODS OF PRODUCING GENE PRODUCTS AND ANTIBODIES**

Provided herein are viruses, and methods for making and using such viruses for production products of exogenous genes and/or for production of antibodies specific for exogenous gene products. The methods provided herein result in efficient recombinant production of biologically active proteins. As provided herein, a system based on the accumulation of viruses in tumors can be used for simple, quick, and inexpensive production of proteins and other biological compounds originating from cloned nucleotide sequences. This system also is useful for the concomitant overproduction of polypeptides, RNA or other biological compounds (in tumor tissue) and antibodies against those compounds (in the serum) in the same animal. These systems have the following advantages: (a) the viruses target the tumor specifically without affecting normal tissue; (b) the expression and secretion of the therapeutic gene constructs can be, optionally, under the control of an inducible promoter enabling secretion to be switched on or off; and (c) the location of the delivery system inside the tumor can be verified by direct visualization before activating gene expression and protein delivery.

As provided herein, after administration, a virus such as vaccinia virus can enter the tumor of an animal and, due to the immunoprivileged state of the tumor, can replicate preferentially in the tumor tissues and thereby can overproduce the inserted gene encoded protein in the tumors. After harvesting the tumor tissues, the localized and over-expressed protein can be isolated by a simple procedure from tumor homogenates. In addition, based on findings that only 0.2 to 0.3% of the desired proteins produced in the tumor are found in the blood stream of the same animal, a simultaneous vaccination of the mouse and efficient antibody production against the overproduced protein can be achieved. Thus, serum from the same mouse (or any other animal) can be harvested and used as mouse-derived antibodies against the proteins or other products overproduced in the tumor.

Thus, provided herein are methods of producing gene products and/or antibodies in a non-human subject, by administering to a subject containing a tumor, a

- 164 -

virus, wherein the virus expresses a gene encoding a selected protein or RNA to be produced, a protein or RNA whose expression can result in the formation of a compound to be produced, or a selected protein or RNA against which an antibody is to be produced. The gene or genes expressed can be endogenous or exogenous to the virus. The nucleotide sequences can be contained in a recombinant virus containing appropriate expression cassettes. For example, the nucleotide sequences can be operatively linked with a promoter allowing high expression. Such promoters can include, for example, inducible promoters; a variety of such promoters are known to persons skilled in the art. Expression of the gene(s) can be regulated, for example, by a transcriptional activator or inducer, or a transcriptional suppressor. In one embodiment, the methods provided herein for producing a protein, RNA, compound or antibody can further include monitoring the localization and/or level of the virus in the subject by detecting a detectable protein, wherein the detectable protein can indicate the expression of the selected gene, or can indicate the readiness of the virus to be induced to express the selected gene or for suppression of expression of the gene to be terminated or suspended. In one embodiment, the virus contains a nucleotide sequence encoding a detectable protein, such as a luminescent or fluorescent protein, or a protein capable of inducing a detectable signal.

The virus can be administered to a transgenic animal or a non-transgenic animal. The subject can be selected according to its ability to post-translationally process the selected protein.

In one embodiment, methods are provided for producing a desired polypeptide, RNA or compound, the method including the following steps: (a) injecting a virus containing a nucleotide sequence encoding the desired polypeptide or RNA into an animal bearing a tumor; (b) harvesting the tumor tissue from the animal; and (c) isolating the desired polypeptide, RNA or compound from the tumor tissue.

Steps of an exemplary method can be summarized as follows (shown for a particular embodiment, for example a vaccinia virus, additionally containing a gene encoding a light-emitting protein):

(1) Insertion of the desired DNA or cDNA into the vaccinia virus genome;

- 165 -

- (2) modification of the vaccinia virus genome with light-emitting protein construct as expression marker;
- (3) recombination and virus assembly in cell culture;
- (4) screening of individual viral particles carrying inserts followed by large scale virus production and concentration;
- (5) administration of the viral particles into mice or other animals bearing tumors of human, non-human primate or other mammalian origins;
- (6) verification of viral replication and protein overproduction in animals based on light emission;
- (7) harvest of tumor tissues and, optionally, the blood (separately); and
- (8) purification of over-expressed proteins from tumors and, optionally, antisera from blood using conventional methods.

Any viruses can be used in the methods provided herein, provided that they replicate in the animal, are not pathogenic for the animal, for example, are attenuated, and/or are recognized by the immune system of the animal. In some embodiments, such viruses also can express exogenous genes. Suitable viruses and cells are, for example, disclosed in EP A1 1 281 772 and EP A1 1 281 767. The person skilled in the art also knows how to generate animals carrying the desired tumor (see, for example, EP A1 1 281 767 or EP A1 1 281 777).

Also provided is a method for simultaneously producing a desired polypeptide, RNA or compound and an antibody directed to the polypeptide, RNA or compound, the method having the following steps: (a) administering a virus containing a nucleotide sequence encoding the desired polypeptide or RNA into an animal bearing a tumor; (b) harvesting the tumor tissue from the animal; (c) isolating the desired polypeptide, RNA or compound from the tumor tissue; and (d) isolating the antibody directed to the polypeptide, RNA or compound from the serum obtained from the animal. This approach can be used for generating polypeptides and/or antibodies against the polypeptides which are toxic or unstable, or which require species specific cellular environment for correct folding or modifications.

A person skilled in the art is familiar with a variety of viral expression vectors, which can be selected according to the virus used to infect the tumor, the cell type of

- 166 -

the tumor, the organism to be infected, and other factors known in the art. Suitable viruses for use herein, include, but are not limited to, poxvirus, adenovirus, herpes simplex virus, Newcastle disease virus, vesicular stomatitis virus, mumps virus, influenza virus, measles virus, reovirus, human immunodeficiency virus, hanta virus, myoma virus, cytomegalovirus, and lentivirus. In some embodiments, virus can be a vaccinia virus, including the vaccinia viruses disclosed herein.

For generating protein or RNA-encoding nucleotide sequences and for constructing expression vectors or viruses that contain the nucleotide sequences, it is possible to use general methods known in the art. These methods include, for example, *in vitro* recombination techniques, synthetic methods and *in vivo* recombination methods as known in the art, and exemplified in Sambrook *et al.*, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, 2nd edition (1989) Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, NY.

In some embodiments, the protein or RNA to be produced in the tumor can be linked to an inducible promoter, such as a promoter that can be induced by a substance endogenous to the subject, or by a substance that can be administered to a subject. Accordingly, provided herein are methods of producing a protein or RNA in a tumor, where the production can be induced by administration of a substance to a subject, and, optionally, harvesting the tumor and isolating the protein or RNA from the tumor. Such induction methods can be coupled with methods of monitoring a virus in a subject. For example, a virus can be monitored by detecting a detectable protein. In methods that include monitoring, detection of a desired localization and/or level of virus in the subject can be coordinated with induction of viral gene expression. For example, when a virally expressed detectable protein is detected in tumor, but not appreciably in normal organs or tissues, an inducer can be administered to the subject. In another example, when a virally expressed detectable protein is detected in tumor, and also in normal organs or tissues, administration of an inducer can be suspended or postponed until the detectable protein is no longer detected in normal organs or tissues. In another example, when a virally expressed detectable protein is detected at sufficient levels in tumor, an inducer can be administered to the subject. In another example, when a virally expressed detectable protein is not

- 167 -

detected at sufficient levels in tumor administration of an inducer can be suspended or postponed until the detectable protein is detected at sufficient levels in the tumor.

Also provided herein are methods of producing a protein or RNA in a tumor, by administering a virus encoding the protein or RNA, and a suppressor of gene  
5 expression. The suppressor of gene expression can be administered for a pre-defined period of time, or until the virus accumulates in tumor but not in normal organs or tissues, or until sufficient levels of the virus have accumulated in the tumor, at which point administration of the suppressor can be terminated or suspended, which can result in expression of the protein or RNA. As will be recognized by one skilled in  
10 the art, methods similar to those provided herein in regard to monitoring a detectable protein and administering an inducer, can also apply for terminating or suspending administration of a suppressor.

Any of a variety of animals, including laboratory or livestock animals can be used, including for example, mice, rats and other rodents, rabbits, guinea pigs, pigs,  
15 sheep, goats, cows and horses. Exemplary animals are mice. The tumor can be generated by implanting tumor cells into the animal. Generally, for the production of a desired polypeptide, RNA, or compound, any solid tumor type can be used, such as a fast growing tumor type. Exemplary fast growing tumor types include C6 rat glioma and HCT116 human colon carcinoma. Generally, for the production of a  
20 desired antibody, a relatively slow growing tumor type can be used. Exemplary slow growing tumor types include HT1080 human fibrosarcoma and GI-101A human breast carcinoma. For T-independent antibody production, nu/nu<sup>-</sup> mice bearing allogenic tumor or xenografts can be used; while for T-dependent antibody production, immunocompetent mice with syngenic tumors can be used. In some embodiments,  
25 such as where the compound to be produced is a protein, the virus selected can be a virus that uses the translational components (*e.g.*, proteins, vesicles, substrates) of the tumor cells, such as, for example, a virus that uses the translational components of a tumor cell. In such instances, the tumor cell type can be selected according to the desired post-translational processing to be performed on the protein, including  
30 proteolysis, glycosylation, lipidylation, disulfide formation, and any refolding or multimer assembly that can require cellular components for completing. In some



- 168 -

examples, the tumor cell type selected can be the same species as the protein to be expressed, thus resulting in species-specific post-translational processing of the protein; an exemplary tumor cell type-expressed protein species is human.

#### **1. Production of recombinant proteins and RNA molecules**

5       The tumor tissue can be surgically removed from the animal. After homogenization of the tumor tissue, the desired polypeptide, RNA or other biological compound can be purified according to established methods. For example, in the case of a recombinant polypeptide, the polypeptide might contain a bindable tag such as a his-tag, and can be purified, for example, via column chromatography. The time  
10       necessary for accumulation of sufficient amounts of the polypeptide or RNA in the tumor of the animal depends on many factors, for example, the kind of animal or the kind of tumor, and can be determined by the skilled person by routine experimentation. In general, expression of the desired polypeptide can be detected two days after virus injection. The expression peaks approximately two weeks after  
15       injection, and lasts up to two months. In some embodiments, the amount of desired polypeptide or RNA in the tumor can be determined by monitoring a virally expressed detectable substance, where the concentration of the detectable substance can reflect the amount of desired polypeptide or RNA in the tumor.

      In another embodiment, the desired polypeptide, RNA or other compound can  
20       be manufactured in the subject, and provide a beneficial effect to the subject. In one example, a virus can encode a protein or RNA, or a protein that manufactures a compound that is not manufactured by the subject. In one example, a virus can encode a peptide hormone or cytokine, such as insulin, which can be released into the vasculature of a subject lacking the ability to produce insulin or requiring increased  
25       insulin concentrations in the vasculature. In another example, blood clotting factors can be manufactured in a subject with blood clotting deficiency, such as a hemophiliac. In some embodiments, the protein or RNA to be produced in the tumor can be linked to an inducible promoter, such as a promoter that can be induced by increased glucose concentrations. In such instances, the manufacture of the protein or  
30       RNA can be controlled in response to one or more substances in the subject or by one or more substances that can be administered to a subject, such as a compound that can

- 169 -

induce transcription, for example, RU486. Thus, in some embodiments, the methods provided herein can include administering to a subject having a tumor, a virus that can express one or more genes encoding a beneficial gene product or a gene product that can manufacture a beneficial compound.

5           **2.       Production of antibodies**

Also provided are methods for producing a desired antibody, the method comprising the following steps: (a) administering a virus containing a nucleotide sequence encoding an antigen into an animal bearing a tumor; and (b) isolating the antibody directed to the antigen from the serum obtained from the animal. The antibodies directed to the antigen can be isolated and purified according to well known methods. Antibodies that are directed against specific contaminating antigens can be removed by adsorption, and the antibodies directed against the target antigen can be separated from contaminating antibodies by affinity purification, for example, by immunoaffinity chromatography using the recombinant antigen as the ligand of the column, by methods known in the art. Antibodies can be collected from the animal in a single harvest, or can be collected over time by collection bleeds, as is known in the art.

**K.       EXAMPLES**

The following examples are included for illustrative purposes only and are not intended to limit the scope of the invention.

**Example 1**

**Generation of Modified Vaccinia Virus Strains**

**A.       Construction of modified vaccinia viruses**

Modified vaccinia viruses were generated by replacing nucleic acid or inserting nucleic acid at several loci in the vaccinia virus genome as follows: the *F14.5L* (also referred to as F3; see U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643), thymidine kinase (*TK*), hemagglutinin (*HA*) and *A34R* gene loci (the *A34R* gene encodes a C-type lectin-like glycoprotein, gp22-24, that is present in the outer membrane of extracellular enveloped virus (EEV), and that is reported to be required for infectivity of EEV; see, e.g., McIntosh *et al.* (1996) *J. Virol.* 70:272081). The heterologous DNA inserted either was (1) a relatively short non-coding DNA

- 170 -

fragment, (2) an expression cassette containing protein-encoding DNA operably linked in the correct or reverse orientation to a vaccinia virus promoter, or (3) the coding sequence of the *A34R* gene (SEQ ID NO: 58) from vaccinia virus strain IHD-J.

5           The starting strain for the modified vaccinia viruses described herein was vaccinia virus (VV) strain GLV-1h68 (also named RVGL21, SEQ ID NO: 1). This genetically engineered strain, which has been described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643, contains DNA insertions in the *F14.5L*, thymidine kinase (*TK*) and hemagglutinin (*HA*) genes. GLV-1h68 was prepared from the vaccinia virus strain  
10   designated LIVP (a vaccinia virus strain, originally derived by adapting the Lister strain (ATCC Catalog No. VR-1549) to calf skin (Research Institute of Viral Preparations, Moscow, Russia, Al'tshtein *et al.* (1983) *Dokl. Akad. Nauk USSR* 285:696-699). The LIVP strain (whose genome sequence is set forth in SEQ ID NO: 2), from which GLV-1h68 was generated, contains a mutation in the coding sequence  
15   of the *TK* gene (see SEQ ID NO: 2 for the sequence of the LIVP strain) in which a substitution of a guanine nucleotide with a thymidine nucleotide (nucleotide position 80207 of SEQ ID NO: 2) introduces a premature STOP codon within the coding sequence.

          As described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643 (see particularly  
20   Example 1 of the application), GLV-1h68 was generated by inserting expression cassettes encoding detectable marker proteins into the *F14.5L* (also designated in LIVP as *F3*) gene, thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene, and hemagglutinin (*HA*) gene loci of the vaccinia virus LIVP strain. Specifically, an expression cassette containing a *Ruc-GFP* cDNA (a fusion of DNA encoding *Renilla* luciferase and DNA encoding GFP)  
25   under the control of a vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$  was inserted into the *F14.5L* gene; an expression cassette containing DNA encoding beta-galactosidase under the control of the vaccinia early/late promoter  $P_{7.5k}$  (denoted ( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*) and DNA encoding a rat transferrin receptor positioned in the reverse orientation for transcription relative to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$  (denoted  
30   ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*) was inserted into the *TK* gene (the resulting virus does not express transferrin receptor protein since the DNA encoding the protein is positioned in the

- 171 -

reverse orientation for transcription relative to the promoter in the cassette); and an expression cassette containing DNA encoding  $\beta$ -glucuronidase under the control of the vaccinia late promoter  $P_{11k}$  (denoted ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*) was inserted into the *HA* gene. Another genetically engineered vaccinia strain, designated GLV-1h22 was produced that has essentially the same genotype as GLV-1h68, with the exception that, in the expression cassette inserted into the *TK* gene (SEQ ID NO: 3), the DNA encoding the rat transferrin receptor is in the correct orientation for transcription from the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$ . GLV-1h22 was constructed using the same method as used to create GLV-1h68, which is described in detail in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643, with exception that the expression cassette inserted into the *TK* locus was generated using the pSC65-*TyR* transfer vector (also described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643; the parent vector for GLV-1h22 is RVGL19, which is shown in Figure 1B and described in Example 1 of U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643).

Insertion of the expression cassettes into the L1VP genome in the generation of strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h22 resulted in disruption of the coding sequences for each of the *F14.5L*, *TK* and *HA* genes; accordingly, all three genes in the resulting strains are nonfunctional in that they do not encode the corresponding full-length proteins. As described in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643, disruption of these genes not only attenuates the virus but also enhances its tumor-specific accumulation. Previous data have shown that systemic delivery of the GLV-1h68 virus in a mouse model of breast cancer resulted in the complete eradication of large subcutaneous GI-101A human breast carcinoma xenograft tumors in nude mice (see U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643).

#### 1. Modified Viral strains

Modified recombinant vaccinia viruses containing heterologous DNA inserted into one or more loci of the vaccinia virus genome were generated via homologous recombination between DNA sequences in the genome and a transfer vector using methods described herein and known to those of skill in the art (see, e.g., Falkner and Moss (1990) *J. Virol.* 64:3108-2111; Chakrabarti *et al.* (1985) *Mol. Cell Biol.* 5:3403-3409; and U.S. Patent No. 4,722,848). In these methods, the existing target gene in

- 172 -

the starting vaccinia virus genome is replaced by an interrupted copy of the gene contained in the transfer vector through two crossover events: a first crossover event of homologous recombination between the vaccinia virus genome and the transfer vector and a second crossover event of homologous recombination between direct repeats within the target locus. The interrupted version of the target gene that is in the transfer vector contains the insertion DNA flanked on each side by DNA corresponding to the left portion of the target gene and right portion of the target gene, respectively. The transfer vector also contains a dominant selection marker, *e.g.*, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene, under the control of a vaccinia virus early promoter (*e.g.*, P<sub>7.5kE</sub>). Including such a marker in the vector enables a transient dominant selection process to identify recombinant virus grown under selective pressure that has incorporated the transfer vector within its genome. Because the marker gene is not stably integrated into the genome, it is deleted from the genome in a second crossover event that occurs when selection is removed. Thus, the final recombinant virus contains the interrupted version of the target gene as a disruption of the target loci, but does not retain the selectable marker from the transfer vector.

Homologous recombination between a transfer vector and a starting vaccinia virus genome occurred upon introduction of the transfer vector into cells that have been infected with the starting vaccinia virus. A series of transfer vectors was constructed as described below and the following modified vaccinia strains were constructed: GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109. The construction of these strains is summarized in the following Table, which lists the modified vaccinia virus strains, including the previously described GLV-1h68, their respective genotypes, and the transfer vectors used to engineer the viruses:

**Table 2: Generation of engineered vaccinia viruses**

Name of Virus	Parental Virus	VV Transfer Vector	Genotype
GLV-1h68	-	-	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i>
GLV-1h69	GLV-1h68	<i>A34R</i> gene from VV IHD-J	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i> <i>A34R: A34R-IHD-J</i>
GLV-1h70	GLV-1h68	pNCVVhaT	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: HindIII-BamHI</i>
GLV-1h71	GLV-1h68	pNCVVf14.5IT	<i>F14.5L: BamHI-HindIII</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i>
GLV-1h72	GLV-1h68	pCR-TKLR-gpt2	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: SacI-BamHI</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i>
GLV-1h73	GLV-1h70	pNCVVf14.5IT	<i>F14.5L: BamHI-HindIII</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: HindIII-BamHI</i>
GLV-1h74	GLV-1h73	pCR-TKLR-gpt2	<i>F14.5L: BamHI-Hind III</i> <i>TK: SacI-BamHI</i> <i>HA: HindIII-BamHI</i>
GLV-1h81	GLV-1h68	pNCVVhaT-SEL-hk5	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)hk-5</i>
GLV-1h82	GLV-1h22	pNCVVhaT-ftn	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)TrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)ftn</i>
GLV-1h83	GLV-1h68	pNCVVhaT-ftn	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)ftn</i>
GLV-1h84	GLV-1h73	pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1	<i>F14.5L: BamHI-Hind III</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)CBG99-mRFP1</i> <i>HA: Hind III-BamHI</i>
GLV-1h85	GLV-1h72	pNCVVf14.5IT	<i>F14.5L: BamHI-HindIII</i> <i>TK: Sac I-BamHI</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i>
GLV-1h86	GLV-1h72	pNCVVhaT	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: Sac I-BamHI</i> <i>HA: Hind III-BamHI</i>
GLV-1j87	GLV-1h68	pCR-gpt-dA35R6	<i>F14.5L: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)rTrfR-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)LacZ</i> <i>HA: (P<sub>11k</sub>)gusA</i> <i>A35R: Multiple cloning sites (MCS)</i>

- 174 -

Name of Virus	Parental Virus	VV Transfer Vector	Genotype
GLV-1j88	GLV-1h73	pCR-gpt-dA35R6	<i>F14.5L</i> : BamHI-HindIII <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : HindIII-BamHI A35R: MCS
GLV-1j89	GLV-1h74	pCR-gpt-dA35R6	<i>F14.5L</i> : BamHI-HindIII <i>TK</i> : SacI-BamHI <i>HA</i> : HindIII-BamHI A35R: MCS
GLV-1h90	GLV-1h68	HA-SE-IL-6-1	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>SE</sub> ) <i>sIL-6R/IL-6</i>
GLV-1h91	GLV-1h68	HA-SEL-IL-6-1	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>sIL-6R/IL-6</i>
GLV-1h92	GLV-1h68	HA-SL-IL-6-1	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>SL</sub> ) <i>sIL-6R/IL-6</i>
GLV-1h96	GLV-1h68	FSE-IL-24	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SE</sub> ) <i>IL-24</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h97	GLV-1h68	FSEL-IL-24	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>IL-24</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h98	GLV-1h68	FSL-IL-24	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SL</sub> ) <i>IL-24</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>rTrfR</i> -(P <sub>7.5k</sub> ) <i>LacZ</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h104	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SE- <i>tTF</i> -RGD	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SE</sub> ) <i>tTF-RGD</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h105	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SEL- <i>tTF</i> -RGD	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>tTF-RGD</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h106	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SL- <i>tTF</i> -RGD	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SL</sub> ) <i>tTF-RGD</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h107	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SE-G6-FLAG	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SE</sub> ) <i>G6-FLAG</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h108	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>G6-FLAG</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>
GLV-1h109	GLV-1h68	pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG	<i>F14.5L</i> : (P <sub>SEL</sub> ) <i>Ruc-GFP</i> <i>TK</i> : (P <sub>SL</sub> ) <i>G6-FLAG</i> <i>HA</i> : (P <sub>11k</sub> ) <i>gusA</i>

Briefly, these strains were generated as follows (further details are provided below):

**GLV-1h69** was generated by replacement of the coding sequence of the *A34R* gene in starting strain GLV-1h68 (nucleotides 153693 to 154199 in SEQ ID NO: 1) with the *A34R* gene from well-known vaccinia virus IHD-J strain.

**GLV-1h70** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing HindIII and BamHI sites into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h70, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

**GLV-1h71** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing BamHI and HindIII sites (SEQ ID NO: 12) into the *F14.5L* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h71, the vaccinia *F14.5L* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

**GLV-1h72** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing SacI and BamHI sites (SEQ ID NO: 18) into the *TK* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus in GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h72, the vaccinia *TK* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

**GLV-1h73** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing BamHI and HindIII sites (SEQ ID NO: 12) into the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h70 thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h70. Thus, in strain GLV-1h73, the vaccinia *HA* and *F14.5L* genes are interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

**GLV-1h74** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing SacI and BamHI sites (SEQ ID NO: 18) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h73 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h73. Thus, in strain GLV-1h74, the vaccinia *HA*, *F14.5L* and *TK* genes are interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.



- 176 -

GLV-1h81 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding the plasminogen K5 domain under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h81, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding the plasminogen K5 domain operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter.

GLV-1h82 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding *E. coli* ferritin under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the *HA* locus of strain GLV-1h22 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of GLV-1h22. Thus, in strain GLV-1h82, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding *E. coli* ferritin operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter

GLV-1h83 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding *E. coli* ferritin under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h83, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding *E. coli* ferritin operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter.

GLV-1h84 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding CBG99 and mRFP1 connected through a picornavirus 2A element and under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h73 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTfr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h73. Thus, in strain GLV-1h84, the vaccinia *HA* and *F14.5L* genes are interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment, and the vaccinia *TK* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by DNA encoding a fusion of CBG99 and mRFP1 proteins. Since DNAs encoding both marker proteins (CBG99 and mRFP1) are under the control of the same promoter, only one transcript is produced. During translation, these two proteins are cleaved into two individual proteins at picornavirus 2A element (Osborn *et al.*, *Mol. Ther.* 12: 569-74, 2005). CBG99 produces a more stable luminescent signal than does *Renilla* luciferase with a

- 177 -

half-life of greater than 30 minutes, which makes both *in vitro* and *in vivo* assays more convenient. mRFP1 provides improvements in *in vivo* imaging relative to GFP since mRFP1 can penetrate tissue deeper than GFP.

5        **GLV-1h85** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing BamHI and HindIII sites into the *F14.5L* locus of strain GLV-1h72 thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h72. Thus, in strain GLV-1h85, the vaccinia *F14.5L* and *TK* genes are interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

10       **GLV-1h86** was generated by insertion of a short non-coding DNA fragment containing HindIII and BamHI sites into the *HA* locus of strain GLV-1h72 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of GLV-1h72. Thus, in strain GLV-1h86, the vaccinia *TK* and *HA* genes are interrupted within the coding sequence by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

15       **GLV-1j87** was generated by deletion the coding sequence of the A35R gene in starting strain GLV-1h68 (nucleotides 154,243 to 154,773 in SEQ ID NO: 1). Thus, in strain GLV-1j87, the vaccinia *A35* gene is replaced by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

20       **GLV-1j88** was generated by deletion the coding sequence of the A35R gene in starting strain GLV-1h73. Thus, in strain GLV-1j88, the vaccinia *A35* gene is replaced by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

**GLV-1j89** was generated by deletion the coding sequence of the A35R gene in starting strain GLV-1h74. Thus, in strain GLV-1j89, the vaccinia *A35* gene is replaced by a short non-coding DNA fragment.

25       **GLV-1h90** was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding human IL-6 fused to the 3' end of the cDNA encoding human soluble IL-6 receptor (sIL-6R, aa 1-323) under the control of the vaccinia *P<sub>SE</sub>* promoter into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h90, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding  
30       human IL-6 fused to the 3' end of the cDNA encoding human soluble IL-6 receptor operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter.

- 178 -

GLV-1h91 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding sIL-6R under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h91, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding human IL-6 fused to the 3' end of the cDNA encoding human soluble IL-6 receptor operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter.

GLV-1h92 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding sIL-6R under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SL</sub> promoter into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h92, the vaccinia *HA* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding human IL-6 fused to the 3' end of the cDNA encoding human soluble IL-6 receptor operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter.

GLV-1h96 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding the IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SE</sub> promoter into the *F14.5L* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h96, the vaccinia *F14.5L* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding IL-24 operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter.

GLV-1h97 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the *F14.5L* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h97, the vaccinia *F14.5L* gene is interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding FCU operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter.

GLV-1h98 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette encoding IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SL</sub> promoter into the *F14.5L* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Thus, in strain GLV-1h98, the vaccinia *F14.5L* gene is

- 179 -

interrupted within the coding sequence by a DNA fragment containing DNA encoding IL-24 operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter.

GLV-1h104 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding truncated human tissue factor fused to the  $\alpha_v\beta_3$ -integrin RGD binding motif (tTF-RGD) under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter ( $P_{SE}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h104 retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

GLV-1h105 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h105 retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

GLV-1h106 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter ( $P_{SL}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h106 retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

GLV-1h107 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding scFv anti-VEGF-FLAG fusion protein (G6-FLAG) under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter ( $P_{SE}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h107 retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

GLV-1h108 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding G6-FLAG fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h108

- 180 -

retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

GLV-1h109 was generated by insertion of an expression cassette containing DNA encoding G6-FLAG fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter ( $P_{SL}$ ) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTrf* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h109 retains the *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus and the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus.

2. **VV transfer vectors employed for the production of modified vaccinia viruses**

The following vectors were constructed and employed as described below to generate the recombinant vaccinia viral strains.

a. **pNCVVhaT: For insertion of non-coding heterologous DNA into the vaccinia virus HA locus**

The pNCVVhaT vector (SEQ ID NO: 4) was employed to create vaccinia virus strains GLV-1h70 and GLV-1h86 having the following genotypes: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* (strain GLV-1h70), *HA*: HindIII-BamHI and *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: SacI-BamHI, *HA*: HindIII-BamHI (strain GLV-1h86). Strains GLV-1h70 and GLV-1h86 were generated by inserting a short non-coding DNA fragment containing HindIII and BamHI sites (SEQ ID NO: 5; taagcttcgcaggatccc) into the *HA* locus of strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h72, respectively, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the hemagglutinin (*HA*) locus of GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h72. Vector pNCVVhaT contains the non-coding DNA fragment flanked by sequences of the *HA* gene, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus  $P_{7.5kE}$  promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid. The left and right flanking sequences of the VV *HA* gene (also named *A56R*, see nucleotides 161420 to 162352 of SEQ ID NO: 2) that were incorporated into the vector correspond to nucleotides 161423 to 161923 and nucleotides 162037 to 162394, respectively of SEQ ID NO: 2. The *HA* gene flanking DNAs were PCR-amplified from VV LIVP using Platinum PCR SuperMix High

- 181 -

Fidelity (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) and the following primers containing the non-coding DNA sequence:

Left flank: 5'-GCGCATATGACACGATTACCAATACTTTTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 6) and 5'-GTCGGGATCCTGCGAAGCTTAGATTTTGAATACCGACGAGC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 7),

Right Flank:

5'-GAAATCTAAGCTTCGCAGGATCCCGACTCCGGAACCAATTACTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 8) and 5'-GCGGAATTCTGATAGATTTTACTATCCCAG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 9).

- 10 The two fragments were joined using the method of gene-splicing by overlapping extension (see, *e.g.*, Horton *et al.*, *Methods Enzymol.*, 217:270-279 (1993)). The resulting fragment was digested with NdeI and EcoRI and cloned into the same-cut vector pUCP7.5-gpt-1 (SEQ ID NO: 10) to generate the construct pNCVVhaT. The flanking sequences of HA in the target vector were confirmed by sequencing and
- 15 were identical to nucleotides 161423 to 161923 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (left flank) and nucleotides 162037 to 162394 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (right flank).

**b. pNCVVf14.5IT: For insertion of non-coding heterologous DNA into the vaccinia *F14.5L* locus**

- The pNCVVf14.5IT vector (SEQ ID NO: 11) was employed to create vaccinia
- 20 virus strains GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h85 having the following genotypes: :  
*F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ* (GLV-1h71), *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*;  
*F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ* (GLV-1h73), *HA*: HindIII-BamHI and *F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: SacI-BamHI (GLV-1h85), *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*.  
 Strains GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h85 were generated by inserting a short
- 25 non-coding DNA fragment containing Bam HI and HindIII sites (SEQ ID NO: 12; aggaatcctgcaagct) into the *F14.5L* locus of strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70 and GLV-1h72, respectively, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of these strains. Vector pNCVVf14.5IT contains the non-coding DNA fragment flanked by sequences of the *F14.5L* gene, the *E. coli* guanine
- 30 phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P<sub>7.5kE</sub> promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid. The left and right flanking sequences of the VV

- 182 -

*F14.5L* gene (see nucleotides 41476 to 41625 of SEQ ID NO: 2) that were incorporated into the vector correspond to nucleotides 41593 to 42125 and nucleotides 41018 to 41592, respectively of SEQ ID NO: 2. The *F14.5L* gene flanking DNAs were PCR-amplified from VV L1VP using Platinum PCR SuperMix High

5 Fidelity and the following primers containing the non-coding DNA sequence:

Left Flank: 5'-GCGCATATGTAGAAGAATTGATAAATATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 13)

and

5'-GCCGCAGGATCCTGCGAAGCTTACAGACACGAATATGACTAAACCGAT  
G-3' (SEQ ID NO: 14),

10 Right Flank:

5'-GTCTGTAAGCTTCGCGAGGATCCTGCGGCCGCCATCGTCGGTGTGTTGTC-  
3' (SEQ ID NO: 15) and 5'-GCGGAATTCAGAGGATTACAACAAAAAGATG-3'  
(SEQ ID NO: 16).

The two fragments were joined together as described above (gene-splicing by  
15 overlapping extension). The resulting fragment was digested with NdeI and EcoRI  
and cloned into the same-cut vector pUCP7.5-gpt-1 (SEQ ID NO: 10) to generate the  
construct pNCVVf14.5IT (SEQ ID NO: 11). The flanking sequences of *F14.5L* in the  
target vector were confirmed by sequencing and were identical to nucleotides 41593  
to 42125 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (left flank) and nucleotides 41018 to 41592 of SEQ ID  
20 NO: 2 (right flank).

**c. pCR-TKLR-gpt2: For insertion of non-coding heterologous  
DNA in the vaccinia *TK* locus**

The pCR-TKLR-gpt2 vector (SEQ ID NO: 17) was employed to create  
vaccinia virus strains GLV-1h72 and GLV-1h74 having the following genotypes:  
25 *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: SacI-BamHI (GLV-1h72), *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA* and *F14.5L*:  
BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: SacI-BamHI (GLV-1h74), *HA*:HindIII-BamHI. Strain GLV-  
1h72 was generated by inserting a short non-coding DNA fragment containing SacI  
and BamHI sites (SEQ ID NO: 18; ggtaccgagctcgatcc) into the *TK* locus of starting  
strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTFR* expression cassette at the *TK* locus  
30 of GLV-1h68. Strain GLV-1h74 was generated by inserting the short non-coding  
DNA fragment containing SacI and Bam HI sites into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-

- 183 -

1h73 thereby deleting the *LacZ/rTfr* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of GLV-1h73.

Vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 was generated from vector pCR2.1 (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, SEQ ID NO: 21) and contains the non-coding DNA fragment flanked by sequences of the *TK* gene and the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus  $P_{7.5kE}$  promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector. The left flank ( $TK_L$ ) of the *TK* locus in the LVP genome that was incorporated into the vector corresponds to nucleotides 79726 to 80231 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (*TK* locus in the LVP genome is located at nucleotides 78142 to 80961 of SEQ ID NO: 2). The left flank DNA was PCR amplified with the primers  $TK_L$ -5 (5'-ATAAGCTTTGTTACAGATGGAAGGGTCAAA-3', SEQ ID NO: 19) and  $TK_L$ -3 (5'-AGGTACCGTTTGCCATACGCTCACAGA-3', SEQ ID NO: 20) using Invitrogen High Fidelity PCR mix. The PCR product was digested with HindIII and KpnI, and inserted into the corresponding sites in vector pCR2.1 (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA, SEQ ID NO: 21), resulting in pCP-TKL1 (SEQ ID NO: 22). The right flanking region ( $TK_R$ ) of the *TK* locus in the LVP genome that was incorporated into the vector corresponds to nucleotides 80211 to 80730 of SEQ ID NO: 2. The right flank DNA was PCR amplified with the primers:  $TK_R$ -5 (5'-TGAGCTCGGATCCTTCTGTGAGCGTATGGCAAA-3', SEQ ID NO: 23) and  $TK_R$ -3 (5'-TTACTAGTACACTACGGTGGCACCATCT-3', SEQ ID NO: 24). The PCR product was digested with BamHI and SpeI and cloned into the corresponding sites in vector pCR2.1 to yield pCR-TKR4 (SEQ ID NO: 25). The pCR-TKL1 and pCR-TKR4 contained the correct sequences of  $TK_L$  and  $TK_R$ , respectively, as confirmed by sequencing and were identical to nucleotides 79726 to 80231 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (left flank) and nucleotides 80211 to 80730 of SEQ ID NO: 2 (right flank). The insert  $TK_L$  was then excised from pCR-TKL1 by restriction digestion with HindIII and BamHI and inserted into the same-cut vector pCR-TKR4 to yield pCR-TKLR1 (SEQ ID NO: 26) thereby joining the left and right flanking sequences with the non-coding DNA between them in a single fragment.



- 184 -

In order to add DNA encoding *Escherichia coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) linked to the vaccinia virus promoter p7.5k to pCR-TKLR1 for use in transient dominant selection, a DNA fragment containing these elements was amplified with the primers *gpt*5 (5'-TCCCAGTCACGACGTTGTAA-3', SEQ ID NO: 27) and *gpt*3 (5'-TGATTACGCCAAGCTGATCC-3', SEQ ID NO: 28) from pUCP7.5-*gpt*-1 and cloned into vector pCR2.1. The sequence of the insert p7.5k-*gpt* was confirmed and released with *Eco*RI and cloned into the same-cut vector pCR-TKLR1 to generate the final transfer vector pCR-TKLR-*gpt*2 (SEQ ID NO: 17).

- 10                   d.     **pNCVVhaT-SEL-hk5: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding plasminogen kringle 5 domain under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *HA* locus**

Vector pNCVVhaT-SEL-hk5 (SEQ ID NO: 41) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h81 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfT*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, *HA*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*hk-5*. Strain GLV-1h81 was generated by inserting DNA encoding the human plasminogen kringle 5 domain (SEQ ID NO: 42) operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>) (SEQ ID NO: 29) into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of GLV-1h68. Vector pNCVVhaT-SEL-hk5 contains a DNA fragment encoding the human plasminogen kringle 5 domain operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>), sequences of the *HA* gene flanking the (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*hk-5* DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P<sub>7.5kE</sub> promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

To generate vector pNCVVhaT-SEL-hk5, DNA encoding human plasminogen kringle 5 was PCR-amplified from the plasmid pBLAST-hKringle5 (Invivogen, San Diego, CA; SEQ ID NO: 43) using AccuPrime Pfx SuperMix (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) and primers: 5'-GCGAAGCTTACCATGTACAGGATGCAACTCCTGTCTTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 44) and 5'-GCGGGATCCAGAAAACTAATCAAATGAAGGGGCCGCACACTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 45). The PCR product was digested with *Hind*III and *Bam*HI and

- 185 -

cloned into the same-cut vector pNCVVhaT-SEL-ADP-V5 (SEQ ID NO: 46); similar to pNCVVhaT, but contains ADP-V5 under the control of the synthetic early/late promoter in between the flanking sequences of *HA* to replace adenovirus death protein (ADP) gene tagged with V5 at 3' end. The sequence of the human plasminogen

5 kringle 5 domain was confirmed by sequencing.

**e. pNCVVhaT-*ftn*: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding *E. coli* ferritin under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SEL}$  promoter into the vaccinia *HA* locus**

Vector pNCVVhaT-*ftn* (SEQ ID NO: 47) was employed to develop strains  
 10 GLV-1h82 and GLV-1h83 having the following genotypes: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*TrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* (strain GLV-1h82), *HA*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*ftn*, and *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ* (strain GLV-1h83), *HA*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*ftn*. Strains GLV-1h82 and GLV-1h83 were generated by inserting DNA encoding *E. coli* ferritin (*ftn*) (SEQ ID NO: 48) operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter  
 15 ( $P_{SEL}$ ) (SEQ ID NO: 29) into the *HA* locus of starting strains GLV-1h22 and GLV-1h68, respectively, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of these starting strains. Vector pNCVVhaT-*ftn* contains a DNA fragment encoding *E. coli* ferritin operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter( $P_{SEL}$ ), sequences of the *HA* gene flanking the ( $P_{SEL}$ )*ftn* DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine  
 20 phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus  $P_{7.5kE}$  promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

To generate vector pNCVVhaT-*ftn*, DNA encoding *E. coli* ferritin (*ftn*) was amplified from genomic DNA of *E. coli* Top10 (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) using the  
 25 following primers:

5'SSEL-*ftn*-VV3

(5'-AAAGATAAGCTTAAAAATTGAAATTTTATTTTTTTTTTTTGGGAATATAA  
 ATACCATGCTGAAACCAGAAATGATTGAA-3') (SEQ ID NO: 49) and

3'*ftn*-VV2 (5'-ATAATAGGATCCTTAGTTTTGTGTGTCGAGGGT-3')

30 (SEQ ID NO: 50).

Primer 5'SSEL-*ftn*-VV3 introduces a HindIII site, the  $P_{SEL}$  promoter sequence for vaccinia virus synthetic strong early/late expression, and a Kozak sequence (ACC)

- 186 -

in front of the start codon of *ftn*. 3' *ftn*-VV2 introduces a BamHI restriction site. The PCR product as well as the plasmid pNCVVhaT (SEQ ID NO: 4) were digested with BamHI and HindIII, ligated, and transformed into *E. coli* Top10 to yield pNCVVhaT-*ftn* (SEQ ID NO: 47). This final cloning step places the (P<sub>SEL</sub>)/*ftn* expression cassette  
5 between the left and right HA gene flanking sequences in pNCVVhaT and eliminates the non-coding DNA that is located between these flanking sequences in pNCVVhaT.

**f. pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding a fusion protein of CBG99 and mRFP1 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**  
10

Vector pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1 (SEQ ID NO: 51) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h84 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)/*CBG99-mRFP1*, *HA*: HindIII-BamHI,. Strain GLV-1h84 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a fusion protein of CBG99 (green-emitting click beetle  
15 luciferase) and mRFP1 (red fluorescent protein) linked through a picornavirus 2A element (SEQ ID NO: 52) operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>) (SEQ ID NO: 29) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h73 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h73. Vector pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1 contains a DNA fragment encoding a CBG99-mRFP1  
20 fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the (P<sub>SEL</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

25 To generate vector pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1, cDNA encoding the fusion protein CBG99 (green-emitting click beetle luciferase) and mRFP1 (red fluorescent protein) linked through the picornavirus 2A element was PCR amplified from CBG99-2A-mRFP1 (SEQ ID NO: 53) with the primers:

mRFP5 (5'-GTCGACGCCACCATGGTGAAGCGTGAG-3') (SEQ ID NO:  
30 54) and  
mRFP3 (5'-TCATTAGGCGCCGGTGGAGT-3') (SEQ ID NO: 55).

- 187 -

The PCR product was cloned into vector pCR-Blunt II-TOPO (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) to yield pCRII-mRFP (SEQ ID NO: 56). After confirming the sequence, the *CBG99-mRFP1* fusion cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 52) was released by SalI and EcoRV restriction enzyme digest and inserted into pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33), pre-cut with SalI and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SEL-mRFP1 (SEQ ID NO: 57). (pCR-SEL4 was constructed as follows: The cDNA spanning the synthetic early/late promoter  $P_{SEL}$  (SEQ ID NO: 29) for vaccinia virus and the multiple cloning site (MCS) region in pSC65 (SEQ ID NO: 30) was PCR amplified with the primers SEL5 (5'-TAGAGCTCGGTTTGAATTAGTGAAAGC-3') (SEQ ID NO: 31) and SEL3 (5'-TAGAGCTCTCCAGACATTGTTGAATTAG-3') (SEQ ID NO: 32), and cloned into the TA cloning site of vector pCR2.1 to yield pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33)). This intermediate cloning step placed the fusion cDNA molecule under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ). The SEL-CBG99-mRFP1 expression cassette was then released by SacI digestion and cloned into the same-cut vaccinia virus *TK* locus transfer vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ ID NO: 17) to give the final construct pCR-TK-SEL-mRFP1 (SEQ ID NO: 51). This final cloning step placed the ( $P_{SEL}$ )*CBG99-mRFP1* expression cassette between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2 and eliminated the non-coding DNA that is located between these flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2.

20                   g.       **pCR-gpt-dA35R6: For deletion of the *A35R* locus and insertion of a non-coding heterologous DNA with multiple cloning sites**

Vector pCR-gpt-dA35R-6 (SEQ ID NO: 89) was employed to create vaccinia strains GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, having the following genotypes:

25   *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*, *HA*: ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*, *A35R*: deleted, multiple cloning sites (MCS) (strain GLV-1j87); *F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*, *HA*: HindIII-BamHI, *A35R*: deleted, MCS (strain GLV-1j88); and *F14.5L*: BamHI-HindIII, *TK*: SacI-BamHI, *HA*: HindIII-BamHI, *A35R*: deleted, MCS (strain GLV-1j89). Strains GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, were

30   generated by inserting a short DNA fragment with multiple cloning sites (HindIII, SacI and BamHI) into the *A35R* locus of strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74, respectively, thereby creating a fusion of the flanking *A34R* and *A36R* regions

- 188 -

and deleting the *A35R* gene. Vector pCR-gpt-dA35R-6 contains a non-coding DNA fragment with multiple cloning sites flanked by sequences that flank the *A35R* gene (a fusion of *A34R* and *A36R* regions) and the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P<sub>7.5kE</sub> promoter for transient  
5 dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector.

The left and right flanking sequences of *A35R*, the *A34R* and *A36R* regions, were PCR amplified. The *A34R* gene region was PCR amplified with primers

A34R-L: 5'-ATCTCGAGTGAGGATACATGGGGATCTGATG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 66) and

10 A34R-R: 5'-ATGAGCTCCCGGGAAGCTTGGCGGCGTACGTAAACGAC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 67), using LIVP genomic DNA (SEQ ID NO: 2) as the template.

The *A36R* gene region was PCR amplified with primers

A36R-L: 5'-ATGAGCTCGGATCCTGCATATCAGACGGCAATGG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 68) and

15 A36R-R: 5'-ATGGGCCCATCGCTATGTGCTCGTCTA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 69), using LIVP genomic DNA (SEQ ID NO: 2) as the template.

The *A34R* and *A36R* PCR products were digested with *SacI*, and the restricted products were then purified and ligated together. The *A34R* and *A36R* ligation product was used as the template for PCR amplification of the *A34R* and *A36R* fusion  
20 cDNA, with primers A34R-L and A36R-R. The amplified fusion cDNA was cloned into pCR-Blunt II-TOPO vector (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) to generate vector pCRII-dA35R-1 (SEQ ID NO: 87). The resulting vector was confirmed by sequencing.

A p7.5-gpt expression vector with the *HindIII*, *SacI* and *BamHI* sites removed  
25 was then generated. The TK region in the TK locus transfer vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ ID NO: 17) was removed with *HindIII* and *SpeI* digestion. The vector fragment was blunt ended with Klenow treatment, and then ligated to generate construct pCR-dTK-gpt1 (SEQ ID NO: 88). The restriction sites *HindIII*, *SacI* and *BamHI* are removed in the resulting pCR-dTK-gpt1 vector (SEQ ID NO: 88).

30 To generate pCR-gpt-dA35R-6, the *A34R* and *A36R* fusion cDNA was released from pCRII-dA35R-1 (SEQ ID NO: 87) by *XhoI* and *ApaI* digestion, and

- 189 -

inserted into vector pCR-dTK-gpt1 (SEQ ID NO: 88), precut with XhoI and ApaI. The resulting construct pCR-gpt-dA35R-6 (SEQ ID NO: 89) was confirmed by sequencing.

- 5           **h.     HA-SE-IL-6-1: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding sIL-6R/IL-6 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SE</sub> promoter into the vaccinia HA locus.**

Vector HA-SE-IL-6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 77) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h90 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, *HA*: (P<sub>SE</sub>)*sIL-6R/IL-6*. Strain GLV-1h90 was generated by inserting  
10 DNA encoding a fusion protein of human IL-6 (encoding amino acids 29~212) fused to the human soluble IL-6 receptor (sIL-6R) (amino acids 1~323) by a linker sequence (encoding RGGGGSGGGGSVE (SEQ ID NO: 90); complete sequence of sIL-6R/IL insert (SEQ ID NO: 106)) operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>) (SEQ ID NO: 35) into the *HA* locus of strain GLV-1h68, thereby  
15 deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of strain GLV-1h68. Vector HA-SE-IL-6-1 contains a DNA fragment encoding the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>) and sequences of the *HA* gene flanking the (P<sub>SE</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment.

Plasmid pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36), containing the vaccinia synthetic early  
20 promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SE</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter in generating vector HA-SE-IL-6-1. pCR-SE1 was constructed as follows. The multiple cloning site (MCS) region in pSC65 (Moss and Earl, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology, 16.17.4, 1998; SEQ ID NO: 30) was PCR amplified with the primers:

SE5:

25   5'-TAGAGCTCAAAAATTGAAAACTAGCGTCTTTTTTTGCTCGAAGTCGAC  
AGATCTAGGCCTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 34), containing the sequence for synthetic early promoter P<sub>SE</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 35), and

SEL3:

5'-TAGAGCTCTCCAGACATTGTTGAATTAG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 32).

30 The resulting PCR product was inserted into the TA cloning site of vector pCR2.1 to obtain pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36).

- 190 -

To generate vector HA-SE-IL-6-1, cDNA encoding the fusion protein sIL-6R/IL-6 was PCR amplified from pCDM8-H-IL-6 (U.S. Pat. No. 7112436) with the primers:

5'-GTCGACCCACCATGCTGGCCGTCGGCTGCGC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 62)

5 and

5'-GGTACCCTAGAGTCGCGGCCGCGACC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 63).

The PCR product was cloned into vector pCR-Blunt II-TOPO (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) to yield pCRII-IL6-3 (SEQ ID NO: 73). After confirming the sequence, the *sIL-6R/IL-6* fusion cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 106) was released by  
10 KpnI (blunt ended) and Sall restriction enzyme digest and inserted into vector pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36), precut with Sall and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SE-IL6-7 (SEQ ID NO: 74), thus placing the IL-6 fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early (SE) promoter.

The cDNA of SE-IL6 was released from pCR-SE-IL6-7 (SEQ ID NO: 74) by  
15 HindIII and BamHI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the HA transfer vector, pNCVVhaT (SEQ ID NO: 4), precut with HindIII and BamHI to generate plasmid HA-SE-IL6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 77). The SL-sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion expression was confirmed by sequencing.

20 i. **HA-SEL-IL-6-1: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding sIL-6R/IL-6 under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SEL}$  promoter into the vaccinia *HA* locus.**

Vector HA-SEL-IL-6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 79) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h91 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*, *HA*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*sIL-6R/IL-6*. Strain GLV-1h91 was generated by inserting  
25 DNA encoding the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ) (SEQ ID NO: 29) into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Vector HA-SL-IL-6-1 contains a DNA fragment encoding the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter  
30 ( $P_{SEL}$ ) and sequences of the *HA* gene flanking the ( $P_{SEL}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment.

- 191 -

Plasmid pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33; see (f) above for construction of pCR-SEL4), containing the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SEL</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early/late in generating vector HA-SEL-IL-6-1.

To generate vector HA-SL-IL-6-1, the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion cDNA molecule  
5 (SEQ ID NO: 106) was released from vector pCRII-IL6-3 (see (h) above; SEQ ID NO: 73) by KpnI and SalI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into vector pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33), precut with SalI and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SEL-IL6-2 (SEQ ID NO: 76), thus placing the IL-6 fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early/late (SEL) promoter.

10 The cDNA of SEL-IL6 was released from pCR-SEL-IL6-2 (SEQ ID NO: 76) by HindIII restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the HA transfer vector, pNCVVhaT (SEQ ID NO: 4), precut with HindIII to generate plasmid HA-SEL-IL6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 79). The SEL-sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion expression cassette was confirmed by sequencing.

15 j. **HA-SL-IL-6-1: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding sIL-6R/IL-6 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *HA* locus.**

Vector HA-SL-IL-6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 78) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h92 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-  
20 (P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, *HA*: (P<sub>SL</sub>)*sIL-6R/IL-6*. Strain GLV-1h92 was generated by inserting DNA encoding the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 106) operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>) (SEQ ID NO: 38) into the *HA* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *gusA* expression cassette at the *HA* locus of starting GLV-1h68. Vector HA-SL-IL-6-1 contains a DNA fragment  
25 encoding the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>) and sequences of the *HA* gene flanking the (P<sub>SL</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment.

Plasmid pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39), containing the vaccinia synthetic late promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SL</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter in  
30 generating vector HA-SL-IL-6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 78). To construct pCR-SL3, the MCS region in pSC65 was PCR amplified with the primers:

SL5:



- 192 -

5'-TAGAGCTCTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTTGGCATATAAATAAGTCGA  
CAGATCTAGGCCTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 37), containing the sequence for synthetic  
late promoter P<sub>SL</sub> (SEQ ID NO: 38), and

SEL3:

5 5'-TAGAGCTCTCCAGACATTGTTGAATTAG-3') (SEQ ID NO: 32). The  
resulting PCR product was cloned into the TA cloning site of vector pCR2.1 to yield  
pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39).

To generate vector HA-SL-IL-6-1, the sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion cDNA molecule  
(SEQ ID NO: 106) was released from vector pCRII-IL6-3 (see (h) above; SEQ ID  
10 NO: 73) by KpnI and Sall restriction enzyme digest and inserted into vector pCR-SL3  
(SEQ ID NO: 39), precut with Sall and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SL-IL6-2  
(SEQ ID NO: 75), thus placing the IL-6 fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia  
virus synthetic late (SL) promoter.

The cDNA of SL-sIL-6R/IL-6 was released from pCR-SL-IL6-2 (SEQ ID NO:  
15 75) by HindIII and BamHI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the HA transfer  
vector, pNCVVhaT (SEQ ID NO: 4), precut with HindIII and BamHI to generate  
plasmid HA-SL-IL6-1 (SEQ ID NO: 78). The SL-sIL-6R/IL-6 fusion expression  
cassette was confirmed by sequencing.

20 k. **FSE-IL-24: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding  
IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SE</sub> promoter into  
the vaccinia *F14.5L* locus.**

Vector FSE-IL-24 (SEQ ID NO: 84) was employed to develop strain GLV-  
1h96 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SE</sub>)*IL-24*, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*,  
*HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h96 was generated by inserting DNA encoding human  
25 IL-24 operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>) (SEQ ID  
NO: 35) into the *F14.5L* locus of strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP*  
fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Vector FSE-IL-24  
contains a DNA fragment encoding the IL-24 protein operably linked to the vaccinia  
synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>) and sequences of the *F14.5L* gene flanking the (P<sub>SE</sub>)-  
30 fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment.

- 193 -

Plasmid pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36; see (h) above for description of pCR-SE1), containing the vaccinia synthetic early promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SE</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter in generating vector FSE-IL-24.

To generate vector FSE-IL-24, cDNA encoding the human IL-24 was PCR  
5 amplified from cDNA clone MGC:8926 (complete cds from Origene Trueclone collection) with the primers:

5'- GTCGACCACCATGAATTTTCAACAGAGGCTGC-3' (SEQ ID NO:  
64) and

5'- CCCGGGTTATCAGAGCTTGTAGAATTTCTGCATC-3' (SEQ ID NO:  
10 65).

The PCR product was cloned into vector pCR-Blunt II-TOPO (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) to yield pCRII-IL24-3 (SEQ ID NO: 80). After confirming the sequence, the IL-24 cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 107) was released by Sall and SmaI digestion and inserted into vector pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36), pre-cut with Sall  
15 and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SE-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 81), thus placing the IL-24 cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early (SE) promoter.

The cDNA of SE-IL24 was released from pCR-SE-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 81) by HindIII and BamHI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the F14.5L transfer vector, pNCVVf14.5IT (SEQ ID NO: 11), pre-cut with HindIII and BamHI to generate  
20 plasmid FSE-IL24-1 (SEQ ID NO: 84). The SL-IL-24 expression was confirmed by sequencing.

**1. FSEL-IL-24: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *F14.5L* locus.**

25 Vector FSEL-IL24-1 (SEQ ID NO: 86) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h97 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*IL-24*, *TK*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*rTrfR*-(P<sub>7.5k</sub>)*LacZ*, *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h97 was generated by inserting DNA human IL-24 operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>) (SEQ ID NO: 29) into the *F14.5L* locus of strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the  
30 *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Vector FSEL-IL24-1 contains a DNA fragment encoding the IL-24 protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>), sequences of the *F14.5L* gene

- 194 -

flanking the ( $P_{SEL}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

- 5           Plasmid pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33; see (f) above for construction of pCR-SEL4), containing the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter, *i.e.*,  $P_{SEL}$ , was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early/late in generating vector FSEL-IL24-1.

To generate vector FSEL-IL24-1, the IL-24 cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 107) was released from vector pCRII-IL24-3 (see (n) above; SEQ ID NO: 80) by  
10   KpnI and Sall restriction enzyme digest and inserted into vector pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33), precut with Sall and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SEL-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 83), thus placing the IL-6 fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early/late (SEL) promoter.

The cDNA of SEL-IL24 was released from pCR-SEL-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 15   83) by HindIII restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the F14.5L transfer vector, pNCVVf14.5IT (SEQ ID NO: 11), precut with HindIII to generate plasmid FSEL-IL24-1 (SEQ ID NO: 86). The SEL-IL-24 expression cassette was confirmed by sequencing.

- 20           **m.   FSL-IL-24: For insertion of an expression cassette encoding IL-24 under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SL}$  promoter into the vaccinia *F14.5L* locus.**

Vector FSL-IL24-1 (SEQ ID NO: 85) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h98 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SL}$ )*IL-24*, *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*rTrfR*-( $P_{7.5k}$ )*LacZ*, *HA*: ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h98 was generated by inserting DNA encoding the  
25   human IL-24 protein operably linked to the vaccinia virus synthetic late promoter ( $P_{SL}$ ) (SEQ ID NO: 38) into the *F14.5L* locus of starting strain GLV-1h68, thereby deleting the *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette at the *F14.5L* locus of GLV-1h68. Vector FSL-IL24-1 contains a DNA fragment encoding the IL-24 protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter ( $P_{SL}$ ) and sequences of the  
30   *F14.5L* gene flanking the ( $P_{SL}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment.

- 195 -

Plasmid pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39; see (j) above for description of pCR-SL3), containing the vaccinia synthetic late promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SL</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter in generating vector FSL-IL24-1.

To generate vector FSL-IL24-1, the IL-24 cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 107) was released from vector pCRII-IL24-3 (see (n) above; SEQ ID NO: 80) by KpnI and SalI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into vector pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39), precut with SalI and SmaI to generate plasmid pCR-SL-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 82), thus placing the IL-24 fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic late (SL) promoter.

The cDNA of SL-IL-24 was released from pCR-SL-IL24-2 (SEQ ID NO: 82) by HindIII and BamHI restriction enzyme digest and inserted into the F14.5L transfer vector, pNCVVf14.5IT (SEQ ID NO: 11), precut with HindIII and BamHI to generate plasmid FSL-IL24-1 (SEQ ID NO: 85). The SL-IL-24 expression cassette was confirmed by sequencing.

n. **pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SE</sub> promoter into the vaccinia TK locus**

Vector pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 95) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h104 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: (P<sub>SE</sub>)*tTF-RGD*; *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h104 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a tTF-RGD fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 92 (DNA sequence); SEQ ID NO: 93 (amino acid sequence)) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD contains a DNA fragment encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter (P<sub>SE</sub>), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the (P<sub>SE</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

cDNA encoding human tissue factor (huTF) was synthesized from RNA extracted from MCF-7 cells (Qiagen RNA extraction kit). The huTF cDNA was

- 196 -

synthesized from the RNA in a reverse transcriptase reaction (Invitrogen Superscript II cDNA synthesis kit) using primer hu-tTF-RGD-rev-cDNA, which binds to a region upstream of the huTF sequence:

hu-tTF-RGD-rev-cDNA

5 5'-CTTCTACACTTGTGTAGAGATATAGC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 91)

After cDNA synthesis, the tTF-RGD fragment was PCR amplified (Invitrogen Accu Prime Pfx Supermix) using hu-TF cDNA as a template and the following primers:

hu-tTF-RGD-for (SalI)

10 5'-GTCGACCCACCATGGAGACCCCTGCCTG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 115) and

hu-tTF-RGD-rev (PacI)

5'-TTAATTAATATTATGGAGAATCACCTCTTCCTCTGAATTCCCCTT  
TCTCCTGG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 116). The hu-tTF-RGD-rev primer contains additional  
15 restriction endonuclease sites and the sequence of the RGD binding motif.

The PCR product was cloned into vector pCR-Blunt II-TOPO (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) via blunt end ligation (Quick Ligation Kit; New England Biolabs) to yield pCRII-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 94). The *tTF-RGD* cDNA molecule (SEQ ID NO: 92) was confirmed by sequencing.

20 The vaccinia synthetic early promoter, *i.e.*,  $P_{SE}$ , and flanking *TK* gene regions of pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD are derived from an intermediate plasmid, TK-SE-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 110), which contains the cDNA for GM-CSF under the control of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter flanked by the *TK* gene regions. pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36; see (h) above for description of pCR-SE1), containing the vaccinia synthetic  
25 early promoter, *i.e.*,  $P_{SE}$ , was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early promoter in generating vector TK-SE-CSF-2. The cDNA encoding GM-CSF protein (mouse granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor) was PCR amplified from pPICZA-mGM-CSF (SEQ ID NO: 72) with the primers GM-CSF5  
30 5'-CTAGTCGACATGTGGCTGCAGAATTTACTTTTCCTGGGCATTGTGGTCT  
ACAGCCTCTCAGCACCCACCCGCTCACCCATC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 70),  
containing the signal peptide sequence, and

- 197 -

## GM-CSF3

5'-GGGTCATTTTTGGACTGGTTTTT-3' (SEQ ID NO: 71), containing a stop codon. The PCR amplification product was cloned into vector pCR-Blunt II-TOPO (SEQ ID NO: 40; Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA). The resulting vector pCRII-CSF9 (SEQ ID NO: 108), which contained the correct insert, was digested with SalI and EcoRI (blunt-ended after digestion), and the released *GM-CSF* cDNA was cloned into vector pCR-SE1 (SEQ ID NO: 36) precut with SalI and SmaI, resulting in SE-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 109). Thus, SE-CSF-2 contains the vaccinia synthetic early promoter ( $P_{SE}$ ) operably linked to DNA encoding GM-CSF. The *GM-CSF* expression cassette containing *GM-CSF* cDNA under the control of the  $P_{SE}$  was excised from SE-CSF-2 by SacI digestion and cloned into the same-cut vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ ID NO: 17) to generate the construct TK-SE-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 110). This cloning step places the ( $P_{SE}$ )*GM-CSF* expression cassette between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2 and eliminates the non-coding DNA that is located between these flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2.

To generate vector pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD, the tTF-RGD fragment was released by SalI and PacI restriction enzyme digest of pCRII-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 94) and inserted into TK-SE-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 110), precut with SalI and PacI, to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SE-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 95), thus placing the tTF-RGD cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early ( $P_{SE}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *tTF-RGD* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

- o. **pCR-TK-SEL- tTF-RGD: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SEL}$  promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**

Vector pCR-TK-SEL-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 96) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h105 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*tTF-RGD*; *HA*: ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h105 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a tTF-RGD fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 92) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SEL-tTF-RGD contains a DNA fragment

- 198 -

encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the ( $P_{SEL}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient  
5 dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

The vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter, *i.e.*,  $P_{SEL}$ , and flanking *TK* gene regions of pCR-TK-SEL-tTF-RGD are derived from an intermediate plasmid, TK-SEL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 112), which contains the cDNA for GM-CSF under the  
10 control of the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter flanked by the *TK* gene regions. Plasmid pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33; see (f) above for construction of pCR-SEL4), containing the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter, *i.e.*,  $P_{SEL}$ , was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic early/late in generating vector TK-SEL-CSF-2. DNA encoding GM-CSF was excised from pCRII-CSF9 (SEQ ID NO: 108) with *Sall* and  
15 *EcoRI* (blunt-ended after digestion), and cloned into vector pCR-SEL4 (SEQ ID NO: 33) precut with *Sall* and *SmaI*, resulting in SEL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 111). Thus, SEL-CSF-2 contains the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ) operably linked to DNA encoding GM-CSF. The *GM-CSF* expression cassette containing DNA encoding GM-CSF under the control of  $P_{SEL}$  was then excised from SEL-CSF-2 by  
20 *SacI* digestion and cloned into the same-cut vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ ID NO: 17) to generate the construct TK-SEL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 112). This cloning step places the ( $P_{SEL}$ )*GM-CSF* expression cassette between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2 and eliminates the non-coding DNA that is located between these flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2.

25 To generate vector pCR-TK-SEL-tTF-RGD, the tTF-RGD fragment was released by *Sall* and *PacI* restriction enzyme digest of pCRII-tTF-RGD (see (n) above; SEQ ID NO: 94) and inserted into TK-SEL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 112), precut with *Sall* and *PacI* to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SEL-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 96), thus placing the tTF-RGD cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic  
30 early/late ( $P_{SEL}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *tTF-RGD* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

- 199 -

**p. pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**

5 Vector pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 97) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h106 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: (P<sub>SL</sub>)*tTF-RGD*; *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h106 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a tTF-RGD fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 92) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of  
10 strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD contains a DNA fragment encoding the tTF-RGD fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the (P<sub>SL</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of  
15 virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

The vaccinia synthetic late promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SL</sub>, and flanking *TK* gene regions of pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD are derived from an intermediate plasmid, TK-SL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 114), which contains the cDNA for GM-CSF under the control of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter flanked by the *TK* gene regions.

20 Plasmid pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39; see (j) above for description of pCR-SL3), containing the vaccinia synthetic late promoter, *i.e.*, P<sub>SL</sub>, was used as the source of the vaccinia synthetic late promoter in generating vector TK-SL-CSF-3 (SEQ ID NO: 114). DNA encoding mouse GM-CSF was excised from pCRII-CSF9 (SEQ ID NO: 108) with *SalI* and *EcoRI* (blunt-ended after digestion), and cloned into vector  
25 pCR-SL3 (SEQ ID NO: 39) precut with *SalI* and *SmaI*, resulting in SL-CSF-2 (SEQ ID NO: 113). Thus, SL-CSF-2 contains the vaccinia synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>) operably linked to DNA encoding GM-CSF. The GM-CSF expression cassette containing DNA encoding GM-CSF under the control of the PSL was excised out from SL-CSF-2 by *Sac I* and cloned into the same-cut vector pCR-TKLR-gpt2 (SEQ  
30 ID NO: 17) to generate the construct TK-SL-CSF-3 (SEQ ID NO: 114). This cloning step places the (P<sub>SL</sub>)GM-CSF expression cassette between the left and right *TK* gene



- 200 -

flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2 and eliminates the non-coding DNA that is located between these flanking sequences in pCR-TKLR-gpt2.

To generate vector pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD, the tTF-RGD fragment was released by SalI and PacI restriction enzyme digest of pCRII-tTF-RGD (see (n) above; SEQ ID NO: 94) and inserted into TK-SL-CSF-3 (SEQ ID NO: 114), pre-cut with SalI and PacI to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SL-tTF-RGD (SEQ ID NO: 97), thus placing the tTF-RGD cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic late ( $P_{SL}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *tTF-RGD* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

10                    q.     **pCR-TK-SE-G6-FLAG: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SE}$  promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**

Vector pCR-TK-SE- G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 100) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h107 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: ( $P_{SE}$ ) *G6-FLAG*; *HA*: ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h107 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a G6-FLAG fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 99; G6 is the anti-VEGF scAb) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SE- G6-FLAG contains a DNA fragment encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early promoter ( $P_{SE}$ ), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the ( $P_{SE}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

cDNA encoding G6-FLAG was obtained from vector pGA4-G6 (GeneArt; SEQ ID NO: 98). The vector contains DNA encoding an artificially synthesized single chain antibody (scAb) directed against VEGF (scFv anti-VEGF). The gene encodes the kappa light chain leader sequence for the secretion of the protein, the sequence of the  $V_H$  domain of the scAb followed by a linker sequence and the sequence of the  $V_L$  domain of the scAb. The C-terminal end of the gene is fused to

- 201 -

DNA encoding a FLAG-tag for ease of protein detection. The 5' end the G6-FLAG fragment contains a Sall site, and the 3' end contains a PacI site.

To generate vector pCR-TK-SE-G6-FLAG, the G6-FLAG fragment was released by Sall and PacI restriction enzyme digest of pGA4-G6 (SEQ ID NO: 98) and inserted into TK-SE-CSF-2 (see (n) above; SEQ ID NO: 110), precut with Sall and PacI, to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SE-G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 100), thus placing the G6-FLAG cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early ( $P_{SE}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *G6-FLAG* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

10                    r.        **pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia  $P_{SEL}$  promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**

Vector pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 101) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h108 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: ( $P_{SEL}$ )*G6-FLAG*; *HA*: ( $P_{11k}$ )*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h108 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a G6-FLAG fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 99) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG contains a DNA fragment encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter ( $P_{SEL}$ ), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the ( $P_{SEL}$ )-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

To generate vector pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG, the G6-FLAG fragment was released by Sall and PacI restriction enzyme digest of pGA4-G6 (see (t) above; SEQ ID NO: 98) and inserted into TK-SEL-CSF-2 (see (o) above; SEQ ID NO: 112), precut with Sall and PacI, to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SEL-G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 101), thus placing the tTF-RGD cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic early/late ( $P_{SEL}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *G6-FLAG* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

- 202 -

**s. pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *TK* locus**

5 Vector pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 102) was employed to develop strain GLV-1h109 having the following genotype: *F14.5L*: (P<sub>SEL</sub>)*Ruc-GFP*; *TK*: (P<sub>SL</sub>) *G6-FLAG*; *HA*: (P<sub>11k</sub>)*gusA*. Strain GLV-1h109 was generated by inserting DNA encoding a G6-FLAG fusion protein (SEQ ID NO: 99) into the *TK* locus of strain GLV-1h68 thereby deleting the *rTrfR-LacZ* expression cassette at the *TK* locus of  
10 strain GLV-1h68. Vector pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG contains a DNA fragment encoding the G6-FLAG fusion protein operably linked to the vaccinia synthetic late promoter (P<sub>SL</sub>), sequences of the *TK* gene flanking the (P<sub>SL</sub>)-fusion protein-encoding DNA fragment, the *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*) gene under the control of the vaccinia virus P7.5k early and late promoter for transient dominant selection of  
15 virus that has incorporated the vector, and sequences of the pUC plasmid.

To generate vector pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG, the G6-FLAG fragment was released by Sall and PacI restriction enzyme digest of pGA4-G6 (see (t) above; SEQ ID NO: 98) and inserted into TK-SL-CSF-3 (see (p) above; SEQ ID NO: 114), precut with Sall and PacI to generate plasmid pCR-TK-SL-G6-FLAG (SEQ ID NO: 102),  
20 thus placing the G6-FLAG cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus synthetic late (P<sub>SL</sub>) promoter and in between the left and right *TK* gene flanking sequences. The *G6-FLAG* cDNA insert was confirmed by sequencing.

**t. pF14.5-SEL-RG: for insertion of an expression cassette encoding the *Ruc-GFP* fusion protein under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter into the vaccinia *F14.5L* locus**

25 pF14.5-SEL-RG (SEQ ID NO: 104) is a targeting vector that can be employed to facilitate insertion of foreign genes in the *F14.5L* locus of LIVP.

The *ruc-gfp* fusion cDNA from pcDNA-RG (see, for example, Wang *et al.*, 2002) was amplified by PCR using AccuPrime pfx SuperMix (Invitrogen), using  
30 primer that comprise the vaccinia synthetic early/late promoter (P<sub>SEL</sub>), which places the *ruc-gfp* under the control of P<sub>SEL</sub> promoter:

5'-ATCAAGCTTAAAAATTGAAATTTTATTTTTTTTTTTTGGGAATATA  
AATGACTTCGAAAGTTTATGATCCAGAAC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 117) and

- 203 -

5'-TCACTTGTACAGCTCGTCCA-3' (SEQ ID NO: 118).

The resulting PCR product was cloned into pCR-Blunt II-TOPO vector (Invitrogen; SEQ ID NO: 40) to yield pCRII-SEL-RG (SEQ ID NO: 105). The vector was sequence confirmed.

5 To generate vector pF14.5-SEL-RG, the SEL-RG cDNA fragment was released from pCRII-SEL-RG (SEQ ID NO: 105) by Hind III and EcoR V restriction enzyme digest and inserted into pNCVVf14.5IT (SEQ ID NO: 11), precut with Hind III and BamH I (blunt ended) to generate plasmid pF14.5-SEL-RG (SEQ ID NO: 104), thus placing the Ruc-GFP fusion cDNA under the control of vaccinia virus  
10 synthetic early/late ( $P_{SEL}$ ) promoter and in between the left and right *F14.5L* gene flanking sequences.

### 3. Preparation of recombinant vaccinia viruses

#### a. GLV-1i69

CV-1 (African green monkey kidney fibroblast) cells (ATCC No. CCL-70),  
15 grown in DMEM (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) with 10% FBS, were infected with GLV-1h68 at multiplicity of infection (m.o.i.) of 0.1 for 1 hour, then transfected using Lipofectamine 2000 (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA) with PCR-amplified *A34R* (SEQ ID NO: 58) coding sequence from VV IHD-J using the following primers: 5'-CATTAATAAATGAAATCGCTTAATAG-3' (SEQ ID NO: 59) and  
20 5'-GGCGGCGTACGTTAACGAC-3' (SEQ ID NO: 60). Recombinant virus was selected based on its comet-like plaque morphology as described below.

Two days after transfection, the medium was harvested. To enrich the recombinant extracellular enveloped viruses (EEVs) (*i.e.* to increase the percentage of recombinant EEV within the infected medium), CV-1 cells were infected with the  
25 infected/transfected medium. Two days post infection the infected medium was collected. After the fourth round of the enrichment, the infected medium was diluted and used to infect CV-1 cells. Ten well-isolated plaques were picked and purified for a total of three times. Eight of ten isolates formed comet-like plaques under liquid medium.

- 204 -

**b. GLV-1h and GLV-1j series**

CV-1 cells, grown in DMEM (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) with 10% FBS, were infected with the indicated parental viruses (Table 2) at m.o.i. of 0.1 for 1 hr, then transfected using Lipofectamine 2000 or Fugene (Roche, Indianapolis, IN) with  
5 2 µg of the corresponding transfer vector (Table 2). Infected/transfected cells were harvested and the recombinant viruses were selected using a transient dominant selection system and plaque purified using methods known in the art (see, e.g., Falkner and Moss, *J. Virol.*, 64, 3108-3111 (1990)). Isolates were plaque purified  
10 five times with the first two rounds of plaque isolation conducted in the presence of mycophenolic acid, xanthine and hypoxanthine which permits growth only of recombinant virus that expressing the selectable marker protein, i.e., *E. coli* guanine phosphoribosyltransferase (*gpt*), under the control of the vaccinia P<sub>7.5kE</sub> promoter. As described herein, each of the transfer vectors used in the generation of the GLV-1h and GLV-1j series of recombinant vaccinia virus contained a (P<sub>7.5kE</sub>)*gpt* expression  
15 cassette. Thus, growth of the virus in the presence of the selection agents enabled identification of virus in which the first crossover event of homologous recombination between the transfer vector and the parental strain genome had occurred. Subsequent growth of the isolates in the absence of selection agents and further plaque purification yielded isolates that had undergone a second crossover event resulting in  
20 deletion of the DNA encoding guanine phosphoribosyltransferase from the genome. This was confirmed by the inability of these isolates to grow in the presence of selection agents.

**4. Verification of vaccinia virus strain genotypes**

The genotypes of the modified vaccinia virus strains were verified by PCR and  
25 restriction enzyme digestion. The nucleotide sequence of the coding sequence from the IHD-J A34R gene (SEQ ID NO: 58) in GLV-1i69 was further verified by sequencing. Lack of expression of the *gusA* gene in GLV-1h70, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h86, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91 and GLV-1h92 was confirmed by X-GlcA (5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl-β-D-glucuronic  
30 acid) staining of the infected cells. Viruses lacking *gusA* expression are unable to convert the X-GlcA substrate as indicated by lack of development of blue color in the

- 205 -

assay as compared to a control strain (*e.g.* GLV-1h68). Lack of expression of the *GFP* gene in GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97 and GLV-1h98 was confirmed by fluorescence microscopy as compared to a control strain (*e.g.* GLV-1h68). Lack of expression of  $\beta$ -galactosidase in GLV-1h72, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 was confirmed by X-gal (5-bromo-4-chloro-3-indolyl- $\beta$ -D-galactopyranoside) staining of the infected cells. Viruses lacking *lacZ* expression are unable to convert the X-gal substrate as indicated by lack of development of blue color in the assay as compared to a control strain (*e.g.* GLV-1h68). Standard techniques for X-GlcA and X-gal viral staining and fluorescence microscopy were employed and are well-known in the art.

Expression of mRFP in GLV-1h84 was confirmed using a Leica DMI 6000 B fluorescence microscope at 2 days post-infection of CV-1 cells and compared to mock infected cells or non-mRFP expression strains (*e.g.*, GLV-1h73). In one example, the GLV-1h84 infected cells expressed over  $2.2 \times 10^{10}$  relative light units compared to no expression in the GLV-1h73 strain. Expression of firefly luciferase in GLV-1h84 was confirmed at two days post-infection of CV-1 cells performed using the Chroma-Glo luciferase assay systems (Promega) and relative light units (RLU) were measured using a Turner TD-20e luminometer.

#### **B. Vaccinia virus purification**

Ten T225 flasks of confluent CV-1 cells (seeded at  $2 \times 10^7$  cells per flask the day before infection) were infected with each virus at m.o.i. of 0.1. The infected cells were harvested two days post infection and lysed using a glass Dounce homogenizer. The cell lysate was clarified by centrifugation at 1,800g for 5 min, and then layered on a cushion of 36% sucrose, and centrifuged at 13,000 rpm in a HB-6 rotor, Sorvall RC-5B Refrigerated Superspeed Centrifuge for 2 hours. The virus pellet was resuspended in 1 ml of 1 mM Tris, pH 9.0, loaded on a sterile 24% to 40% continuous sucrose gradient, and centrifuged at 26,000g for 50 min. The virus band was collected and diluted using 2 volumes of 1 mM Tris, pH 9.0, and then centrifuged at 13,000 rpm in a HB-6 rotor for 60 min. The final virus pellet was resuspended in 1

- 206 -

ml of 1 mM Tris, pH 9.0 and the titer was determined in CV-1 cells (ATCC No. CCL-70).

## Example 2

### *In vitro* virus infection studies

#### 5 A. Cell lines employed for virus infection

A549 (human lung carcinoma, ATCC No. CCL-185), CV-1 (African green monkey kidney fibroblast, ATCC No. CCL-70), MRC-5 (human lung fibroblast, ATCC No. CCL-171), Vero (African green monkey kidney epithelial, ATCC No. CCL-81) and 293 (human kidney fibroblast, ATCC No. CRL-1573) cells were  
10 obtained from the American Type Culture Collection (ATCC; Manassas, VA). GI-101A (human breast tumor) cells (obtained from Dr. Alex Aller, Rumbaugh--Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research, Inc., Plantation, Florida) were derived from GI-101, a human ductal adenocarcinoma cell line (Rathinavelu *et al.*, *Cancer Biochem. Biophys.*, 17:133-146 (1999)). Primary chick embryo fibroblasts (CEF)  
15 were prepared from 10-day-old embryos and grown in Ham's F-10 (Biowhittaker, Walkersville, MD)/199 (1:1, Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) supplemented with 5% heat-inactivated fetal bovine serum (FBS, Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA), 2% nonessential amino acids (NEAA, Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) and 1% antibiotic-antimycotic solution (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). A549 cells were cultured in RPMI-1640  
20 (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) supplemented with 10% FBS. CV-1 cells were grown in DMEM (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) with 10% FBS. MRC-5, Vero, and 293 cells were cultured in EMEM (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) supplemented with 10% FBS, 1% NEAA and 1% sodium pyruvate (Sigma, St. Louis, MO). GI-101A cells were grown in RPMI 1640 with 20% FBS, 1% antibiotic-antimycotic solution,  
25 10 mM HEPES, 1% sodium pyruvate, 5 ng/ml of  $\beta$ -estradiol (Sigma, St. Louis, MO), and 5 ng/ml of progesterone (Sigma, St. Louis, MO). All cell lines were maintained at 37°C with 5% CO<sub>2</sub> in a humidified incubator.

#### B. Analysis of Viral Yields in CV-1 cells

The ability of modified vaccinia virus strains to infect and replicate *in vitro*  
30 was analyzed by measuring plaque forming units (PFU) produced following infection of CV-1 cells with purified recombinant virus, a technique well-known in the art. 2 x

- 207 -

10<sup>8</sup> CV-1 cells were infected with each virus at m.o.i. of 0.1 for 1 hour at 37°C and harvested 2 days post infection. Each virus was purified through sucrose gradient and subjected to a plaque forming assay using CV-1 cells. Yields of purified virus for exemplary modified vaccinia virus strains are shown in Table 3.

5

**Table 3**

Virus	Purified Virus Yield <sup>a</sup>
GLV-1h68	1.1 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
GLV-1h70	1.1 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
GLV-1h71	2.1 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
GLV-1h72	1.9 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
GLV-1h73	4.1 x 10 <sup>9</sup>
GLV-h74	4.6 x 10 <sup>9</sup>

<sup>a</sup>Yield in PFU/2x10<sup>8</sup> cells at 2 days post infection

### C. Virus production in different cell lines

#### *Experiment 1*

10

#### *Comparison of virus production in different cell lines*

A549, CEF, CV-1, MRC-5, Vero and 293 cells in 6-well plates were infected with GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h74 at m.o.i. of 0.01 for 1 hour at 37°C. The inoculum was aspirated and the cell monolayers were washed twice with 2 ml of DPBS (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). Two ml of cell culture medium were added into each well.

15 Three wells of each cell type were harvested at 24 h, 48 h and 72 h post infection (PI), respectively. The virus titer in crude cell lysates from infected cells was determined in CV-1 cells. Data for yields of exemplary viruses GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h74 in different cell lines are shown in Table 4 and Table 5, respectively.

20 GLV-1h68 yields were high in all cells tested except for CEF cells. The virus yields in CV-1 and A549 cells on day 3 post-infection were quite similar, but slightly higher than that in MRC-5 cells, more than 3 times as high as that in Vero and 293 cells, and more than 1800 times as high as that in CEF cells. The cell lines that provided for significant virus yields are potential candidate cell lines for the GMP



- 208 -

production of GLV-1h68. Since vaccinia virus has a very broad host range *in vitro* there can be other cell lines that support GLV-1h68 replication as well as, or better than, the cell lines tested, which can be used for the GMP production of GLV-1h68.

GLV-1h74 yields were high in all cells tested, including CEF cells. The highest yields of virus were obtained with CV-1 cells and A549 cells. The virus yield in CV-1 cells on day 3 post-infection was more than 1.7 times as high as that in A549 cells, about 3.5 times as high as that in MRC-5 and Vero cells, 6.2 times as high as that in 293 cells, and about 52 times as high as that in CEF cells. The yields of GLV-1h74 in all six cell lines tested were higher than the yields of GLV-1h68. The virus yields of GLV-1h74 in A549, CV-1, MRC-5, Vero and 293 cells were 3 to 8 times as high as that of GLV-1h68 in the same cell lines. Strikingly, the virus yield of GLV-1h74 in CEF cells was 278 times higher than that of GLV-1h68 in the same cell line. All cell lines tested are potential candidate cell lines for the GMP production of GLV-1h74 since they all supported GLV-1h74 replication very well. Since vaccinia virus has a very broad host range *in vitro* there can be other cell lines that can support GLV-1h74 replication as well as the cell lines tested or even better, which can be used for the GMP production of GLV-1h74.

**Table 4**  
Virus yields of GLV-1h68 in different cell lines

Cell Type	Virus Yield (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> Cells)			
	Day 0	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3
A549	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	4.3 × 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 5.3 × 10 <sup>4</sup>	6.1 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 7.6 × 10 <sup>6</sup>	8.1 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.1 × 10 <sup>7</sup>
CEF	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	1.8 × 10 <sup>3</sup> ± 4.6 × 10 <sup>2</sup>	3.4 × 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 6.3 × 10 <sup>3</sup>	4.3 × 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 1.5 × 10 <sup>4</sup>
CV 1	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	6.3 × 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.4 × 10 <sup>4</sup>	5.7 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 8.9 × 10 <sup>6</sup>	1.0 × 10 <sup>8</sup> ± 2.1 × 10 <sup>6</sup>
MRC-5	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	2.9 × 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 4.0 × 10 <sup>4</sup>	3.7 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 5.0 × 10 <sup>6</sup>	6.2 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 5.8 × 10 <sup>5</sup>
Vero	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	5.7 × 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 8.8 × 10 <sup>3</sup>	1.2 × 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 1.8 × 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.4 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 4.0 × 10 <sup>6</sup>
293	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	2.0 × 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 6.4 × 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.5 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 4.2 × 10 <sup>6</sup>	2.8 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 7.3 × 10 <sup>6</sup>

**Table 5**  
Virus yields of GLV-1h74 in different cell lines

Cell Type	Virus Yield (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> Cells)			
	Day 0	Day 1	Day 2	Day 3
A549	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	3.0 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 2.2 × 10 <sup>6</sup>	2.6 × 10 <sup>8</sup> ± 4.7 × 10 <sup>7</sup>	3.6 × 10 <sup>8</sup> ± 3.8 × 10 <sup>7</sup>
CEF	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	3.2 × 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 7.6 × 10 <sup>3</sup>	5.9 × 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 8.0 × 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.2 × 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 3.6 × 10 <sup>6</sup>
CV 1	10 <sup>4</sup> ± 0	6.5 × 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 7.0 × 10 <sup>5</sup>	3.2 × 10 <sup>8</sup> ± 6.3 × 10 <sup>7</sup>	6.2 × 10 <sup>8</sup> ± 3.5 × 10 <sup>7</sup>

- 209 -

<b>MRC-5</b>	$10^4 \pm 0$	$3.1 \times 10^6 \pm 1.2 \times 10^5$	$1.5 \times 10^8 \pm 9.7 \times 10^6$	$1.7 \times 10^8 \pm 3.8 \times 10^7$
<b>Vero</b>	$10^4 \pm 0$	$2.8 \times 10^6 \pm 2.3 \times 10^5$	$8.3 \times 10^7 \pm 7.0 \times 10^6$	$1.8 \times 10^8 \pm 9.4 \times 10^6$
<b>293</b>	$10^4 \pm 0$	$2.9 \times 10^7 \pm 5.6 \times 10^6$	$8.6 \times 10^7 \pm 1.1 \times 10^7$	$1.0 \times 10^8 \pm 1.1 \times 10^7$

### Experiment 2

#### Comparison of modified vaccinia strains

CEF, MRC-5, or GI-101A cells in 6-well plates were infected with GLV-1h68 or its derivatives at m.o.i. of 0.01 for 1 hour at 37°C. The inoculum was aspirated and the cell monolayers were washed twice with 2ml of DPBS (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). Two ml of cell culture medium were added into each well. Three wells of each virus/cell type were harvested at 24, 48, and 72 h post infection (PI), respectively.

The crude cell lysates were titrated in CV-1 cells.

Based on the viral yields in CEF cells, the viruses tested can be divided into two groups (Table 6). The virus yields in the first group (GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, and GLV-1h74) were much better than those in the second group (GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, and GLV-1h72). At all time points, the yields of the viruses in the first group were at least 10 times as high as that in the second group.

In the MRC-5 cell line, all viruses tested exhibited high virus yields (Table 7). In the first 24 hours, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, and GLV-1h74 had higher yields than did GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70 and GLV-1h72. On day 3, all viruses reached similar titers, except that the titer of GLV-1h74 was about 2 times as high as that of other viruses.

In the GI-101A cell line, all viruses except GLV-1h22 exhibited higher yields in the first day than did during the second day, and all viruses reached their maximum titers on day 2 (Table 8).

Overall, in all three cell lines tested, the virus lacking all foreign gene expression cassettes at all three loci (GLV-1h74) exhibited higher yields than did the virus lacking foreign gene expression cassettes at two loci (GLV-1h73) and much better yields than did the viruses lacking foreign gene expression cassette(s) at only one locus (GLV-1h70, 71, and 72). Also, all viruses had higher yields than their parental virus, GLV-1h68, indicating that foreign gene transcription and/or expression reduced vaccinia virus growth *in vitro*. The more foreign gene expression cassettes

- 210 -

- were replaced, the better the virus grew *in vitro*. Interestingly, among the viruses that have a foreign insert replaced at only one locus, GLV-1h71 consistently had higher yields than GLV-1h72, whereas GLV-1h72 always showed higher yields than GLV-1h70. *Ruc-GFP* fusion gene expression cassette that was replaced in GLV-1h71
- 5 consists of a synthetic early/late promoter that is stronger than the 11k promoter directing GUS expression replaced in GLV-1h70. It appears that stronger foreign gene expression exerts a stronger negative effect on virus replication, although it cannot be ruled out that different foreign proteins might have different effects on virus growth. Replacement of the insert at *TK* locus in GLV-1h72 that contains a strong
- 10 synthetic early/late promoter directing transcription of an anti-sense strand of a transferrin receptor and a 7.5k early/late promoter controlling LacZ expression resulted in more enhanced virus replication than did replacing an insert containing 11k promoter directing GUS expression in GLV-1h70, although the 11k promoter is much stronger than 7.5k promoter, indicating that transcription in the absence of
- 15 translation also appeared to have negative effects on virus yields *in vitro*.

**Table 6**  
**Virus Yields of Different Vaccinia Recombinants in CEF Cells**

PI (hr)	Virus Yield (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> Cells)					
	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h70	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74
0	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
24	2.9 x 10 <sup>3</sup> ± 9.1 x 10 <sup>2</sup>	1.4 x 10 <sup>3</sup> ± 3.7 x 10 <sup>2</sup>	3.5 x 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 5.9 x 10 <sup>3</sup>	3.1 x 10 <sup>3</sup> ± 6.0 x 10 <sup>2</sup>	7.7 x 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 1.7 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.1 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 1.3 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
48	2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 4.3 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.7 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 5.4 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	5.9 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 4.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.9 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 1.1 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	7.4 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 8.7 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.2 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 9.6 x 10 <sup>6</sup>
72	1.2 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 9.7 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	2.5 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 1.3 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	2.7 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.0 x 10 <sup>7</sup>	2.8 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 6.9 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	3.4 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.5 x 10 <sup>7</sup>	4.9 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.9 x 10 <sup>7</sup>

20

**Table 7**  
**Virus Yields of Different Vaccinia Recombinants in MRC-5 Cells**

PI (hr)	Virus Yield (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> Cells)					
	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h70	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74
0	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
24	9.9 x 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 4.9 x 10 <sup>3</sup>	9.9 x 10 <sup>4</sup> ± 1.6 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	6.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.3 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 7.1 x 10 <sup>3</sup>	1.2 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 1.4 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.0 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
48	1.3 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 2.4 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	1.4 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.3 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	2.7 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 8.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.7 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 5.8 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	3.6 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 8.4 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	6.9 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 2.3 x 10 <sup>7</sup>
72	3.4 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 3.5 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	4.9 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.8 x 10 <sup>7</sup>	3.3 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 6.4 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	4.5 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 6.9 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	4.0 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 9.2 x 10 <sup>6</sup>	8.1 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.4 x 10 <sup>7</sup>

**Table 8**  
**Virus Yields of Different Vaccinia Recombinants in GI-101A Cells**

PI (hr)	Virus Yield (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> Cells)						
	GLV-1h22	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h70	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74
0	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>4</sup>
24	2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 5.5 x 10 <sup>3</sup>	3.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 1.1 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	3.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.4 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.1 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 1.3 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	3.9 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	2.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 1.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	23.7 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 3.3 x 10 <sup>5</sup>
48	2.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 6.8 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	8.8 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.1 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.5 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	4.1 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 9.8 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.2 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.7 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.1 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 9.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.1 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>6</sup>
72	5.6 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 2.3 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	7.3 x 10 <sup>5</sup> ± 7.4 x 10 <sup>4</sup>	1.0 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	2.6 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.5 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	1.3 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 2.2 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	5.1 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 4.0 x 10 <sup>5</sup>	8.5 x 10 <sup>6</sup> ± 1.4 x 10 <sup>6</sup>

**5 D. Plaque size following viral infection of GI101A cells**

GLV-1h68, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74 were tested for plaque formation in GI101A cells. GLV-1h73 consistently formed larger plaques in GI101A cells than GLV-1h68 did. GLV-1h74 also consistently formed larger plaques in GI101A cells compared to GLV-1h68. This data is consistent with the higher viral yields of the  
 10 GLV -1h73 and GLV-1h74 strains as compared to GLV-1h68.

**E. Comparison of virion type produced by strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1i69**

Vaccinia virus makes three forms of infectious virions during its life cycle: IMV (intracellular enveloped virus), CEV (cell-associated enveloped virus) and EEV (extracellular enveloped virus). IMVs are made in virus factories within the infected  
 15 cells and stay there until cell lysis. CEVs have one additional membrane compared to IMVs and are retained on the cell surface. EEVs have identical structures to CEV, but are dissociated from the cell. IMVs are very stable virions, which are important for virus transmission between hosts. CEVs are required for efficient cell-to-cell spread. EEVs mediate long-range virus transmission and are relatively resistant to  
 20 host immune reactions. Because EEVs can be more resistant to host immune attacks than IMVs, EEVs should better survive transit from an initial delivery site to a tumor in animals and humans than IMVs, and hence have can have advantages as a therapeutic agent for cancer therapy not possessed by IMVs.

The relative levels of cell-associated virus (includes IMV plus CEV forms)  
 25 and EEV were assessed for strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1i69 by standard plaque assay (Table 9). 5 x 10<sup>5</sup> CV-1 cells were infected in triplicate with each virus at

- 212 -

m.o.i. of 10 and the supernatant (EEV) and infected cells (cell-associated virus) were harvested 24 hours post infection. Both EEV and cell-associated virus were titrated in CV-1 cells using standard protocols. Viral yields of cell-associated virus versus extracellular enveloped virus (EEV) are shown in Table 9.

- 5 Most vaccinia virus strains, including GLV-1h68, produce a majority of IMVs whereas EEVs only represent a very small portion of virions made during infection. The VV *A34R* gene product is involved in the release of cell-associated enveloped virus (CEV) from infected cell membranes to form EEV. The proteins encoded by the *A34R* genes of the GLV-1h68 and WR VV strains have identical amino acid
- 10 sequences, whereas the proteins encoded by the *A34R* genes of the WR (or GLV-1h68) and IHD-J strains differ by two amino acids (Asp 110 (GLV-1h68) → Asn (IHD-J) and Lys 151 (GLV-1h68) → Glu (IHD-J); compare SEQ ID NO: 61 and SEQ ID NO: 58). One of the mutations, Lys 151 (WR) → Glu (IHD-J) was shown to enhance the release of EEV (Blasco *et al.*, *J. Virol.*, 67, 3319-3325, 1993). GLV-1i69
- 15 is a derivative of GLV-1h68, in which the GLV-1h68 *A34R* gene coding sequence (nucleotides 153693 to 154199 of SEQ ID NO: 1) was replaced with the *A34R* gene coding sequence from vaccinia virus IHD-J strain (SEQ ID NO: 58). Vaccinia virus IHD-J produced up to 40 times more extracellular enveloped virus (EEV) than did VV WR strain (Blasco *et al.*, *J. Virol.*, 67, 3319-3325, 1993) and GLV-1h68 produced
- 20 8 times as many EEVs as GLV-1h68 did, while both GLV-1i69 and GLV-1h68 viruses made a similar amount of cell associated viruses (*i.e.* IMV plus CEV) 24 hours post infection. GLV-1i69 formed comet-like plaques under liquid medium *in vitro* as a result of *A34R* gene coding sequence replacement, whereas GLV-1h68 generated sharply defined round plaques, indicating that GLV-1i69 spread faster than
- 25 GLV-1h68 *in vitro*. GLV-1i69 thus exhibits enhanced spreading capability, a characteristic desired in a therapeutic agent for cancer virotherapy, and also can serve as a better source of EEVs than GLV-1h68.

Table 9

Yields of EEVs and cell associated viruses of GLV-1h68 and GLV-1i69 in CV-1 cells	
Virus	Titer (PFU/10 <sup>6</sup> cells)
GLV-1h68, cell associated virus	1.2 x 10 <sup>7</sup> ± 1.8 x 10 <sup>6</sup>

- 213 -

GLV-1h68, EEV	$7.4 \times 10^4 \pm 2.2 \times 10^3$
GLV-1i69, EEV	$5.8 \times 10^5 \pm 5 \times 10^4$

**Example 3*****In vivo* Viral Distribution**

5      **A.      *In Vivo* Virus Distribution in Nude Mice with Human Breast Tumor Xenografts**

The ability of the vaccinia viral strains to accumulate in tumor tissue relative to other tissues was assessed by infecting nude mice that were implanted with breast cancer cells in order to form tumors.  $5 \times 10^6$  GI-101A cells in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS were injected s.c. into the right lateral thigh of female nude mice, 5 weeks of age, and  
 10 allowed to grow for 33 days. Groups of 4 mice (for each mutant virus strain) were infected via injection into the femoral vein with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, or GLV-1h74. Two weeks post injection, all mice from each group were sacrificed, and tissue samples were homogenized using MagNA lyser (Roche Diagnostics, Indianapolis,  
 15 IN) at speed of 6,500 for 30 seconds. The viral titers were determined in duplicate by the standard plaque assay using CV-1 cells. Results of virus tissue distribution are shown in Table 10 below.

**Ovary:** No virus was found in the ovaries of the mice infected with GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71 or GLV-1h73. A moderate amount of  
 20 viruses were found in the ovaries of one out of a total of 4 mice infected with GLV-1h72 or GLV-1h74.

**Bladder:** No virus was found in the bladders of the mice infected with GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72 or GLV-1h74. A small amount of viruses were found in the bladders of one out of a total of 4 mice infected with GLV-1h70 or  
 25 GLV-1h73.

**Kidney:** A small to moderate amount of viruses were found in the kidneys of 50% or more of mice infected with GLV-1h70, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73 or GLV-1h74, with mice infected with GLV-1h74 having highest viral titer in the kidney; whereas

- 214 -

only small amounts of viruses were found in the kidneys of one mouse infected with GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h71.

**Adrenal Gland:** No virus was found in adrenal glands in any of the infected mice, except for one mouse infected with GLV-1h72.

5       **Spleen:** Moderate amounts of virus particles were found in spleens of all mice infected with GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, or GLV-1h74. A smaller amount of viruses were found in spleens of only three out of 4 mice infected with GLV-1h71, and one out of four mice infected with GLV-1h22.

10       **Pancreas:** No virus was found in the pancreases of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, and GLV-1h73 infected mice, and only small amounts of viruses were found in pancreases of two mice infected with GLV-1h74, and one mouse each infected with GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h70.

15       **Lung:** Moderate amounts of viruses were found in lungs of all infected mice. Mice infected with GLV-1h74 exhibited the highest viral titer, whereas mice infected with GLV-1h71 had the lowest viral titer in the lung.

**Heart:** Moderate amounts of viruses were found in hearts of mice infected with GLV-1h74, and only small amount of viruses were found in the hearts of two mice each infected with GLV-1h22 or GLV-1h68, and one mouse each infected with GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73 or GLV-1h74.

20       **Brain:** No virus was found in brains of any infected mice, except for one mouse infected with GLV-1h70.

**Serum:** No virus was found in the sera of mice infected with GLV-1h22 or GLV-1h71. Small amounts of viruses were found in sera of 3 mice infected with GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h74, two mice infected with GLV-1h70, and one mouse each  
25       infected with GLV-1h72 or GLV-1h73.

**Liver:** No virus was found in the livers of mice infected with GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h72. Small to moderate amounts of viruses were found in livers of all mice infected with GLV-1h73 or GLV-1h74, three mice infected with GLV-1h70, and one mouse each infected with GLV-1h22 or GLV-1h71, respectively.

- 215 -

**Tumor:** A large number of infectious virus particles were found in tumors of all infected mice, with mice infected with GLV-1h74 having highest viral titer, whereas mice infected with GLV-1h22 had the lowest viral titer in the tumor.

In summary, the lung and tumor are the only two organs where viruses were found in all infected mice. Viruses also were found in spleens in most of the infected mice. Although the titer of GLV-1h71 in tumors was five times as high as that of GLV-1h22, both viruses had similar and lower viral titers in most of the organs tested compared with the mice infected with other viruses. The removal of *Ruc-GFP* expression cassette from GLV-1h68, which yielded GLV-1h71 derivative, increased the viral titer in tumors and decreased the viral titers in other organs. The removal of the *gusA* expression cassette from GLV-1h68, which yielded GLV-1h70 derivative, resulted in a large increase in the viral titer in the liver, more than a two-fold increase in viral titer in spleen compared to GLV-1h68, and a slight increase in viral titer in the tumor. Deletion of the *LacZ* expression cassette, which yielded GLV-1h72 derivative, increased the viral titer in the tumor, but had less impact on the *in vivo* virus distribution in other organs than the removal of *gusA* expression cassette did, although the viral titer of GLV-1h72 in the kidney was more than two times as high as that of GLV-1h68. The viral titers of GLV-1h73, in which both *gusA* and *Ruc-GFP* expression cassettes were deleted, were found to be lower than that of GLV-1h70 in most of the organs except tumors, and were similar to that of GLV-1h68 except that the viral titers of GLV-1h73 in kidneys and tumors were significantly higher than that of GLV-1h68. The viral titers of GLV-1h74, in which all three foreign genes (*i.e.* *Ruc-GFP*, *gusA* and *LacZ* expression cassettes) were deleted, resulted in increases in viral titers in most of organs tested.

Table 10

**Virus Distribution in Nude Mice with Human Breast Tumor Xenografts  
2 weeks post-injection, PFU/g for tissue or PFU/ml for serum**

Organ	GLV-1h22	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h70	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74
Ovary	0	0	0	0	$2.1 \times 10^4 \pm 3.5 \times 10^4$ (1)*	0	$3.8 \times 10^3 \pm 6.6 \times 10^3$ (1)*
Bladder	0	0	$6.8 \times 10^2 \pm 1.2 \times 10^3$ (1)*	0	0	$3.3 \times 10^2 \pm 5.6 \times 10^2$ (1)*	0



- 216 -

Kidney	$35 \pm 60$ (1)*	$1.6 \times 10^2 \pm$ $2.7 \times 10^2$ (1)*	$94 \pm 56$ (3)*	$31 \pm 53$ (1)*	$3.9 \times 10^2 \pm$ $6.1 \times 10^2$ (2)*	$66 \pm 66$ (2)*	$2.8 \times 10^3 \pm$ $4.4 \times 10^3$ (3)*
Adrenal glands	0	0	0	0	$2.1 \times 10^4 \pm$ 3.7 $\times 10^4$ (1)*	0	0
Spleen	$1.7 \times 10^2 \pm$ $2.9 \times 10^2$ (1)*	$7.2 \times 10^2 \pm$ $4.2 \times 10^2$ (4)*	$1.7 \times 10^3 \pm$ $6.3 \times 10^2$ (4)*	$5.9 \times 10^2 \pm$ $4.6 \times 10^2$ (3)*	$7.9 \times 10^2 \pm$ $8.0 \times 10^2$ (4)*	$6.7 \times 10^2 \pm$ $2.4 \times 10^2$ (4)*	$9.4 \times 10^4 \pm$ $5.6 \times 10^2$ (4)*
Pancreas	0	$68 \pm 120$ (1)*	$75 \pm 130$ (1)*	0	0	0	$1.7 \times 10^2 \pm$ $1.9 \times 10^2$ (2)*
Lung	$6.5 \times 10^3 \pm$ $6.2 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$9.5 \times 10^3 \pm$ $2.5 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$1.2 \times 10^4 \pm$ $3.8 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$3.5 \times 10^3 \pm$ $3.3 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$5.9 \times 10^3 \pm$ $5.7 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$8.1 \times 10^3 \pm$ $4.1 \times 10^3$ (4)*	$1.9 \times 10^4 \pm$ $2.3 \times 10^3$ (4)*
Heart	$1.1 \times 10^2 \pm$ $1.1 \times 10^2$ (2)*	$94 \pm 94$ (2)*	$54 \pm 94$ (1)*	$42 \pm 73$ (1)*	$53 \pm 91$ (1)*	$50 \pm 86$ (1)*	$1.3 \times 10^3 \pm$ $1.1 \times 10^3$ (4)*
Brain	0	0	$5.8 \times 10^2 \pm$ $1.0 \times 10^3$ (1)*	0	0	0	0
Serum	0	$50 \pm 35$ (3)*	$25 \pm 25$ (2)*	0	$13 \pm 22$ (1)*	$13 \pm 22$ (1)*	$38 \pm 22$ (3)*
Liver	$24 \pm 42$ (1)*	0	$1.1 \times 10^4 \pm$ $1.8 \times 10^4$ (3)*	$26 \pm 44$ (1)*	0	$6.3 \times 10^3 \pm$ $1.1 \times 10^4$ (4)*	$410 \pm 99$ (4)*
Tumor	$9.4 \times 10^7 \pm$ $9.5 \times 10^7$ (4)*	$3.8 \times 10^8 \pm$ $3.8 \times 10^8$ (4)*	$4.5 \times 10^8 \pm$ $3.6 \times 10^8$ (4)*	$4.7 \times 10^8 \pm$ $2.9 \times 10^8$ (4)*	$7.1 \times 10^8 \pm$ $4.1 \times 10^8$ (4)*	$1.0 \times 10^9 \pm$ $2.4 \times 10^8$ (4)*	$1.3 \times 10^9 \pm$ $2.5 \times 10^8$ (4)*

#### B. Correlation between *in vitro* and *in vivo* viral titers

A comparison was made between the *in vitro* titers of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, or GLV-1h74 infected GI-101A cells (Example 1B) versus the respective *in vivo* viral titers recovered from the tumor tissues 2 weeks after virus injection (Example 3A). A summary of the foreign gene insertions in the viral genome of LVP and their effects on *in vitro* versus *in vivo* viral titers is shown in Table 11. There is a strong correlation between the *in vitro* and the *in vivo* data, indicating that the replication of the recombinant VV strains in the tumors can be well predicted from its replication in the cell cultures.

The viral titers recovered from the tumor tissues also were compared to the numbers of the inserted expression cassettes that were expressed by the recombinant virus GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, and GLV-1h74, respectively. There is a strong negative correlation between viral titer and

- 217 -

the number of inserted expression cassettes, indicating that when *F14.5L*, *TK*, and *HA* loci were all disrupted, the greater the number of the foreign gene expression cassettes that were inserted into these three loci in the viral genome, the greater the strain that was put on virus replication, thus producing a more attenuated virus.

5

**Table 11**  
**Comparison of Viral Yields versus Number of Heterologous Inserts**

Virus Name	Virus Genotype			Virus Yields		Number of Inserts <sup>c</sup>
	<i>F14.5L</i>	<i>TK</i>	<i>HA</i>	<i>In vitro</i> virus yield <sup>a</sup>	<i>In vivo</i> virus yield <sup>b</sup>	
GLV-1h22	pE/L- <i>Ruc-GFP</i>	p7.5k- <i>lacZ</i> pE/L- <i>TFR</i>	p11k- <i>gusA</i>	$5.6 \times 10^5$	$9.4 \times 10^7$	4
GLV-1h68	pE/L- <i>Ruc-GFP</i>	p7.5k- <i>lacZ</i> (pE/L- <i>rTFR</i> )	p11k- <i>gusA</i>	$7.3 \times 10^5$	$3.8 \times 10^8$	3
GLV-1h70	pE/L- <i>Ruc-GFP</i>	p7.5k- <i>lacZ</i> (pE/L- <i>rTFR</i> )	-	$1.0 \times 10^6$	$4.5 \times 10^8$	2
GLV-1h71	-	p7.5k- <i>lacZ</i> (pE/L- <i>rTFR</i> )	p11k- <i>gusA</i>	$2.6 \times 10^6$	$4.7 \times 10^8$	2
GLV-1h72	pE/L- <i>Ruc-GFP</i>	-	p11k- <i>gusA</i>	$1.3 \times 10^6$	$7.1 \times 10^8$	2
GLV-1h73	-	p7.5k- <i>lacZ</i> (pE/L- <i>rTFR</i> )	-	$5.1 \times 10^6$	$1.0 \times 10^9$	1
GLV-1h74	-	-	-	$8.5 \times 10^6$	$1.3 \times 10^9$	0

<sup>a</sup>  $1.0 \times 10^6$  GI-101A cells were infected with each virus at m.o.i. of 0.01 and harvested 3 days PI.

<sup>b</sup> Viral titers in tumor tissue recovered 2 weeks post-injection ( $5 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse, i.v. ) from nude mice with implanted GI-101A tumors.

<sup>c</sup> Only insertions which were expressed by the virus are counted.

10

#### Example 4

##### Effects of Modified Viruses on Survival and Tumor Growth *In vivo*

- A. Effects of viruses administered to female nude mice on s.c. human breast tumor xenografts

15

- 218 -

*Experiment 1*

The *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74 were evaluated using a mouse model of breast cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (s.c. on the right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; GI-101A cells: Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533) into female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-Foxn1<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN) (n = 4-8). Thirty three days following tumor cell implantation, seven groups of mice (n = 3-6) were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 33, 36, 43, 50, 57, 64, 71, 78, 82, 85, 89, 92, 97, and 102 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 12. Each virus provided for a decrease in median tumor volume relative to uninfected control mice. GLV-1h73 exhibited the best tumor therapy efficacy with a median tumor volume of only 4% that of uninfected controls after 97 days of tumor growth. GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, and GLV-1h72 show significantly better tumor therapy efficacy than GLV-1h68 with median tumor volumes of 20% (GLV-1h70), 19% (GLV-1h71), 25% (GLV-1h72), and 33% (GLV-1h68) of that of uninfected controls after 97 days of tumor growth. GLV-1h22 could arrest tumor growth overtime; however, during the time period used in this study, tumor growth was not reversed in mice to which GLV-1h22 was administered. GLV-1h74 was able to reverse tumor growth with high efficacy; however this strain was also toxic at this dose and over the extended time period (see Table 12).

**Table 12**

**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors**

Days post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )							
	Control (n=3)	GLV-1h22 (n=6)	GLV-1h68 (n=5)	GLV-1h70 (n=4)	GLV-1h71 (n=6)	GLV-1h72 (n=4)	GLV-1h73 (n=6)	GLV-1h74 (n=6)
33	240.8	261.8	248.4	216.8	208.3	157.2	280.3	301.9

- 219 -

Days post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )							
	Control (n=3)	GLV-1h22 (n=6)	GLV-1h68 (n=5)	GLV-1h70 (n=4)	GLV-1h71 (n=6)	GLV-1h72 (n=4)	GLV-1h73 (n=6)	GLV-1h74 (n=6)
36	263.6	273.5	243.8	286.0	267.1	155.6	310.9	416.9
43	579.1	536.1	550.4	463.4	543.3	320.1	679.0	660.6
50	636.4	701.4	761.3	706.6	721.3	476.3	864.1	828.6
57	671.6	978.4	852.0	985.5	936.1	695.0	1117.9	897.4
64	904.3	1203.2	1118.2	1134.1	1154.1	950.6	1193.6	665.6
71	1235.9	1269.4	1302.0	1147.3	1316.2	1053.6	678.6	*
78	1431.8	1437.5	1225.2	1091.2	1069.1	1120.0	373.1	*
82	1888.1	1537.9	1233.5	1084.7	802.1	1014.8	237.0	*
85	2166.5	1448.5	1295.9	1141.7	732.3	1118.0	203.5	*
89	2548.0	1536.1	1083.2	961.3	600.6	842.2	174.3	*
92	2715.6	1485.4	1053.6	852.0	606.4	751.8	166.7	*
97	2918.3	1536.9	962.2	579.2	546.9	720.1	117.8	*

\* No median tumor volume was calculated due to the death of significant numbers of mice.

### Experiment 2

- 5 In a separate experiment, the *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85 and GLV-1h86 were evaluated using the mouse GI-101A breast cancer model. Tumors were established in female nude mice by s.c. injection  $5 \times 10^6$  GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells into the right lateral thigh (n = 4-8). Thirty eight days following tumor cell implantation, eight groups of
- 10 mice were injected intravenously with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85 and GLV-1h86, respectively, into the femoral vein. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 39, 47, 54, 62, 68, 75, and 83 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 13.

15 **Table 13**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors**

Days	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )
------	----------------------------------------

- 220 -

	GLV-1h22	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h82	GLV-1h83	GLV-1h84	GLV-1h85	GLV-1h86
39	412.9	350.2	341.1	353.4	392.25	305.6	350.65	419.55
47	750.4	722.3	819.8	1081.2	1222.25	604.3	914	962.1
54	1154.3	1301.45	1234.2	1075.3	1168.75	985.6	1212.8	1279.8
62	1424.4	1390.35	983.2	1319.2	1686.05	982	947.2	1397.55
68	1849.8	1581.15	855.45	1608.9	2061.5	1119.2	636.9	1269.2
75	1907.5	1528.95	517.3	1211.8	1856.35	614.25	255.25	689.6
83	1973.6	1405.5	172.9	1017.8	1824.35	*	*	361.25
89	1887.6	1181.4	74.4	855.9	1392.0	*	*	187.5

\* No median tumor volume was calculated due to the death of significant numbers of mice.

## **B. Effects of viruses on body weight and survival of tumor-bearing mice**

### **5 1. Post-infection Survival**

The survival rates following i.v. administration of vaccinia strains to nude mice bearing s.c. human breast tumor xenografts were recorded and found to vary significantly among the different vaccinia strains tested. GLV-1h74 exhibited the highest toxicity with only 17% of mice infected surviving the duration of the experiment. In comparison, all mice infected with GLV-1h22 and GLV-1h71, 67% of mice infected with GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h72, and 50% of mice infected with GLV-1h70 and GLV-1h73 survived the duration of the experiment. In the case of GLV-1h74, mice started to die on day 38 post-infection and most mice died within 48 days post-infection. In the GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h72, and GLV-1h73 infections, the first deaths occurred sometime between day 38 and day 48, but the death curves were more gradual.

### **2. Post-infection body weight**

The percentage of body weight change following i.v. administration of the viruses was also examined and similarly found to vary significantly among the different vaccinia strains tested. GLV-1h74 again exhibited the most toxicity in mice with a 17% decrease in net body weight 37 days after intravenous delivery. GLV-1h22, GLV-1h71, and GLV-1h72 on the other hand, did not elicit any net body weight change in infected mice. GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, and GLV-1h73 strains did exhibit net body weight changes in infected mice, though the effects were more

- 221 -

gradual with decreases emerging only after 45 days following infection. At day 65 post-infection, mice exhibited decreases in body weight of approximately 6%, 6%, and 2.5% for GLV-1h68, GLV-1h70, and GLV-1h73 strains respectively.

5     **C.     Effects of GLV-1h73 on body weight of mice that do not bear tumors**

Groups of 6-week-old female BALB/c and C57BL/6 mice (7-8 mice per group) were mock-infected (with PBS) or infected via the tail vein with  $5 \times 10^7$ ,  $1 \times 10^8$  and  $2 \times 10^8$  PFU of GLV-1h73. Mice were weighed every two days for 30 days and compared with weights on day 1 post infection. Over the course of the study,  
10 both BALB/c and C57BL/6 mice gained more weight at all doses tested than did the mock-infected mice, indicating no acute toxicity was caused by GLV-1h73 infection at the dose up to  $2 \times 10^8$  PFU.

**Example 5**

15             **Effect of an Antiviral Agent on Plaque Formation *in vitro***

Administration of an antiviral agent to a subject to whom a virus is administered for tumor treatment can be used to reduce any toxic effects that the virus has on the subject. Therefore, the effect of the antiviral agent cidofovir on plaque formation by the recombinant vaccinia virus strains was assessed *in vitro* by infection  
20 of CV-1 cells. Four viruses were tested: GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, and GLV-1h74. CV-1 cells were plated in 24-well plates and were infected with 30 PFU/well of each virus for 1h at 37°C. The inoculum was then removed by aspiration, and 1ml overlay medium was added per well containing a different concentration (in triplicate) of cidofovir (Visitide, Gilead Sciences, Inc.). The  
25 concentrations of cidofovir tested were 0.2, 0.5, 2, 5, 20 µg/ml. After incubation in a CO<sub>2</sub> incubator at 37°C for 48 h, the cells were stained with crystal violet and plaque formation was assessed.

For all four strains tested, smaller plaques were formed at a concentration of 5 µg/ml cidofovir. Plaque formation by strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h71 was almost  
30 completely inhibited at 20 µg/ml cidofovir; only one tiny plaque for GLV-1h68 and 3 small plaques for GLV-1h71 were found. For strains GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74, the

- 222 -

number and size of plaques were significantly reduced at 20 µg/ml cidofovir, but not totally inhibited. For all four strains, no significant differences in size or number of plaques were seen when control (0 µg/ml cidofovir) experiments were compared to test experiments in which low levels of cidofovir (*i.e.*, 0.2, 0.5, 2 µg/ml) were used.

5

### Example 6

#### Effect of an Antiviral Agent on Ability of Modified Vaccinia Viruses to Arrest or Reverse *in vivo* Tumor Growth

The *in vivo* effect of cidofovir on tumor growth inhibition by modified  
10 vaccinia virus strain GLV-1h74 was evaluated using a mouse model of breast cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously (s.c.) injecting GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells into female nude mice (see Example 4). Eight mice were tested for each treatment. At 27 days after s.c. implantation, the mice were injected with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h74 or PBS. Twelve days after virus injection, 0  
15 or three different doses (25, 50, or 100 mg/kg, i.p. route) of cidofovir were injected. All three doses of cidofovir treatment significantly extended the survival time of GLV-1h74 injected mice, indicating attenuation of the viral toxicity by the cidofovir. The 50 mg/kg dose appeared to work a slightly better than the lower 25 mg/kg dose or higher 100mg/kg dose. The treatment with cidofovir did not significantly interfere  
20 with tumor therapy by the virus (Table 14). The median tumor volume of the mice treated with virus plus cidofovir was comparable to treatment with virus alone in reversing tumor growth.

Table 14

Days post- GI-101A tumor cell implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )				
	Untreated control	GLV-1h74 alone	GLV-1h74 + cidofovir 25 mg/kg	GLV-1h74 + cidofovir 50 mg/kg	GLV-1h74 + cidofovir 100 mg/kg
32	204.3	264.9	291.1	279.8	587.1
42	333.9	365.7	314.2	359.5	391.1
50	646.6	155.3	238.3	206.5	184.0
56	886.4 (8)*	62.0 (2)*	117.4 (6)*	61.0 (8)*	58.9 (6)*

- 223 -

**\*Number of mice surviving at 56 days post tumor cell implantation****Example 7****Comparison of the Effects on Mouse Body Weight and Survival of Vaccinia****5 Viruses that do not Contain a Functional Thymidine Kinase-Encoding Gene****A. RVGL2 vaccinia strain**

The toxicity of a modified vaccinia strain, RVGL2, containing an insertion of two expression cassettes into the thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene of strain LIVP was examined in several different mouse tumor models. Modified vaccinia virus strain

10 RVGL2 was recombinantly engineered from vaccinia virus LIVP strain (SEQ ID NO: 2). Methods for the construction of RVGL2 can be found in U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643 (see Example 1 of U.S. Patent Publication No. 2005/0031643). RVGL2 contains two marker gene expression cassettes, *Ruc-GFP* under the control of vaccinia early/late promoter  $P_{EL}$  and *lacZ* under the vaccinia early promoter  $P_{7.5k}$ ,

15 inserted into the *TK* gene coding sequence. For purposes of comparison, the effects of VV strains WR and LIVP on body weight and survival also were examined in the same mouse tumor models. Strain WR (ATCC, Manassas, Virginia) contains a functional *TK* gene. Strain LIVP contains a mutation in the *TK* gene that interrupts the coding sequence and therefore does not encode a functional thymidine kinase

20 protein.

**1. Animal Tumor Models**

Athymic nude mice (*nu/nu*) and C57BL/6 mice (Harlan Animal Res., Inc., Wilmington, MA) at 6-8 weeks of age were used for animal studies.

**a. Glioma Model**

25 To establish subcutaneous glioma tumor, rat glioma C6 cells (ATCC No. CCL-107) were collected by trypsinization, and  $5 \times 10^5$  cells/0.1 ml/mouse were injected subcutaneously (s.c.) into right hind leg of 6-8 week old male athymic mice. On day 7 after C6 cell implantation when median tumor size was about 150 mm<sup>3</sup>, viruses at the dose of  $10^7$  PFU/0.1ml/mouse were injected intravenously (i.v.) into the

30 femoral vein. Mice were sacrificed 14 days after virus injection.



- 224 -

**b. Breast Tumor Model**

To develop subcutaneous (s.c) breast tumors in mice, human breast cancer GI-101A cells (Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533) at the dose of  $5 \times 10^6$  cells/0.1 ml/mouse were injected s.c. into the right hind leg of 6-8 week old female athymic mice. On day 30 after GI-101A cell implantation, when median tumor size was about  $500 \text{ mm}^3$ , viruses at the dose of  $10^7$  PFU/mouse were injected i.v. into the femoral vein. Mice were sacrificed on day 14 after virus injection. Mice for survival experiments and breast tumor therapy studies were kept for long time periods (more than 100 days after virus injection). Mice that developed tumors that were about  $4000 \text{ mm}^3$  in size and/or lost 50% of body weight were sacrificed.

**c. Melanoma Model**

For a melanoma model, mouse melanoma B16-F10 cells (ATCC No. CRL-6475) at the dose of  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/0.04 ml/mouse were injected into the foot pad of 6-8 week old male C57BL/6 mice. When the tumor was established (median size of tumor about  $100 \text{ mm}^3$ ), on day 18 after cell implantation, viruses at the dose of  $10^7$  PFU/mouse were injected i.v. into the femoral vein. Mice were sacrificed 10 days after virus injection.

**2. Injection of virus into animal tumor models**

VV strains WR, LIVP, and RVGL2, were individually injected i.v. at a single dose of  $1 \times 10^7$  PFU in 100  $\mu\text{l}$  PBS into mice with C6 tumors (7 days after implantation of tumor cells), GI-101A tumors (30 days after implantation of tumor cells), or B16-F10 tumors (18 days after implantation of tumor cells). Body weight was monitored thereafter twice a week. Change of body weight was calculated as follows:  $((b' - t') - (b - t)) / (b - t)$ , where  $b$  and  $t$  are the body weight and tumor weight on day of virus injection, and  $b'$  and  $t'$  are the corresponding weights on the day of monitoring ( $n = 4$ ). For measurement of survival rate, tumorous mice were i.v. injected with individual VV strains at a single dose of  $1 \times 10^7$  PFU/mouse at 30 days after tumor cell implantation and survival was recorded over a 30 to 120-day period, depending on the tumor model.

**3. Results**

- 225 -

RVGL2 is markedly attenuated and showed significantly lower toxicity in the mouse tumor models. The survival rate of mice injected with RVGL2 is significantly longer than mice injected with wild type LIVP or WR. The difference in survival of the mice treated with RVGL2 was statistically significant compared with those treated with LIVP or WR ( $p < 0.0001$ ) ( $n > 5$ ). Mice infected with the WR and LIVP strains started to die around day 8 or day 20, respectively, after virus infection with no mice surviving past 12 days or 35 days, respectively, after infection. The WR and LIVP infected mice also exhibited weight losses ranging from 15-35% 10 days after infection for WR and 5-35% 14 days after infection for LIVP. Mice injected with RVGL2 strain exhibited no weight changes for the duration of the experiment (up to 14 days after infection) and the death curve was more gradual with 100% of the mice surviving up to day 80, 70% up to day 105 and 20% at day 120.

The *TK* gene in the wild-type LIVP is known to be mutated, and no functional TK protein is expressed in the infected cells as confirmed through a BrdU assay using standard techniques well-known in the art. Because strain RVGL2 is much more attenuated than strain LIVP, yet neither strain encodes a functional TK protein, the attenuation effect is, therefore, not due to loss of *TK* gene function. The marker proteins, LacZ and Ruc-GFP, contained in the *TK* locus of RVGL2 also are not known to have any virus attenuation or tumor therapy function; though the introduction of the expression cassettes into the *TK* gene markedly attenuated the virus.

### Example 8

#### Effects of route of administration on *in vivo* models of anti-tumor therapy

The *in vivo* effects of vaccinia virus on tumor growth using different routes of administration were assessed using the GI-101A mouse breast cancer model. The vaccinia virus strain GLV-1h73 was used for the comparison. Human breast cancer GI-101A cells at the dose of  $5 \times 10^6$  cells/0.1 ml/mouse were injected s.c. into the right hind leg of 6-8 week old female athymic mice. On day 27 after GI-101A cell implantation, viruses at the dose of  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse were injected using four different injection methods: intratumoral injection, intravenous tail vein injection,

- 226 -

intravenous femoral vein injection, and intraperitoneal injection. Median tumor volume was measured at various time points following tumor cell implantation (Table 15).

Following both venous administrations of the virus, the mice exhibited an initial increase in tumor growth (approximately 3.5-4.5 times the tumor size compared to day of virus injection) followed by a rapid shrinkage of the tumor after 13 days post virus injection with tail vein administration (40 days post tumor cell implantation in Table 15), and 21 days post virus injection with femoral vein administration (47 days post tumor cell implantation in Table 15). Tumor eradication was achieved at approximately 30 days and 50-60 days post virus administration for the tail vein and femoral vein injections, respectively. For the intratumoral injection of the virus, the mice exhibit less of an initial tumor growth (approximately 2 times the tumor size compared to day of virus injection); however the eradication of the tumor was much slower than that observed with intravenous administrations: 80 days compared to 30 or 50-60 days. It also was observed that the toxicity of GLV-1h73 when injected into the mice intravenously was higher than the intratumoral injection. Intraperitoneal injection of the virus was unable reverse tumor growth. Taken together, the data suggest that intravenous injection is a more potent route of administration for eradication of tumors, although the toxicity of the virus is higher.

Table 1

**Median tumor volume at different times following injection of GLV-1h68 via different routes in mice bearing GI-101A tumors**

Days post-GI-101A tumor cell implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	Intratumoral	Intravenous Tail Vein	Intravenous Femoral Vein	Intraperitoneal
27	215.2	388.6	285.6	286.1
33	626.9	972.8	616.9	543.5
40	731.6	1304.3	1141.0	880.5
48	644.5	650.9	1379.9	1395.4
56	509.6	151.6	813.8	1970.0
63	477.5	94.5	609.1	2708.2

- 227 -

69	436.9	74.4	280.4	2867.2
83	264.9	*	*	3391.5
90	261.6	*	*	3351.4
104	118.3	*	*	3603.6

\* No median tumor volume was calculated due to the death of significant numbers or all of mice.

### Example 9

#### 5 Effect of combination therapy with cisplatin on ovarian tumor growth

The therapeutic effect of an attenuated vaccinia virus alone, or in combination with cisplatin, on the progression of human ovarian tumors was evaluated in a mouse model of human ovarian cancer. The therapeutic effect on tumor growth was determined by measuring the volume of an established tumor at various time points

10 following administration of vaccinia virus.

#### A. Effect of GLV-1h68 on human ovarian tumors

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  OVCAR-3 human ovarian carcinoma cells on the right lateral thigh (NIH: OVCAR-3, ATCC No. HTB-161) into female nude mice (Hsd: Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN). Four mice were tested in each group. Following tumor cell  
 15 implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $1 \times 10^7$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 virus in the femoral vein at 54 days post-cancer cell injection, whereas the control group was injected with phosphate buffered saline (PBS). Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at day 53, day 63, day 69 and day 77. Four tumors were tested at each time  
 20 point. Results are provided in Table 16.

Table 16

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ )	
	GLV-1h68	Control
0	0.1	0.1
53	176.9	278.1
63	598.8	755
69	668.4	1169.9
77	896.6	2512.7

- 228 -

Administration of GLV-1h68 virus was able to slow tumor growth, but was not able to arrest growth of the OVCAR-3 tumors.

**B. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 plus cisplatin, on human ovarian tumors**

- 5 Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  OVCAR-3 human ovarian carcinoma cells on the right lateral thigh (NIH: OVCAR-3, ATCC No. HTB-161) into female nude mice [Hsd: Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN). Six to eight mice were tested in each group. Following tumor cell implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $2 \times 10^6$  PFUs of GLV-1h68 virus  
10 in the tail vein at 31 days post-cancer cell injection; one group of mice was intraperitoneally injected with 5 mg/kg cisplatin once a day on days 51, 52, 54 and 55 post-cancer injection; one group received combination therapy of GLV-1h68 and cisplatin, and the control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at days 41, 55, 64, 71, 79, 87, 93, 99, 106, 113, and 119 post-  
15 cancer cell injection. Results are provided in Table 17.

**Table 17**

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) following treatment			
	GLV-1h68 alone (n=7)	Cisplatin alone (n=8)	GLV-1h68 + cisplatin (n=6)	No treatment (n=8)
41	298.8	479.5	415.1	348.2
55	1448.3	1748.5	1403.1	1972.7
64	2512.4	1553.3	1163.7	4969.5
71	3407.4	1297.0	993.0	*
79	*	2280.4	757.5	*
87	*	4108.8	667.0	*
93	*	*	547.0	*
99	*	*	549.0	*
106	*	*	511.5	*
113	*	*	465.3	*
119	*	*	441.3	*

\* No median tumor volume was calculated due to the death of significant numbers or all of mice.

- 229 -

Treatment with GLV-1h68 virus alone decreased tumor growth rate, but did not shrink the tumors. Tumors treated with GLV-1h68 virus alone were partially filled with pus and were purplish in color in some areas of the tumor surface compared to untreated animals that are full of pus and purplish in color overall on the surface. Treatment with cisplatin alone initially reversed tumor growth, but two weeks after discontinued treatment, the tumors began growing again exponentially. Tumors treated with cisplatin alone are similar in appearance to non-treated mice and are full of pus and purplish in color. In the presence of both GLV-1h68 virus and cisplatin, tumor shrinkage was sustained until the end-point of the experiment (*i.e.*, 119 days post-injection of cancer cells). Tumors treated with the combination therapy were solid (with no pus) and whitish in color, a phenotype characteristic of dying tumors that undergo significant shrinkage. Thus, the combination therapy was most effective in controlling and inhibiting ovarian tumor progression.

**C. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 plus carboplatin, on human ovarian tumors**

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  OVCAR-3 human ovarian carcinoma cells on the right lateral thigh (NIH: OVCAR-3, ATCC No. HTB-161) into female nude mice [Hsd: Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN). Six to eight mice were tested in each group. Following tumor cell implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFUs of GLV-1h68 virus in the femoral vein at 56 days post-cancer cell injection; one group of mice was intraperitoneally injected with 32.5 mg/kg carboplatin in 200  $\mu$ PBS on day 63, 66, 69, 72, 75, 78, 81 and day 84 post-cancer cell injection for a total of 8 doses; one group received combination therapy of GLV-1h68 and cisplatin; and the control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at days 55, 62, 70, 75, 81, 89 and 96 post-cancer cell injection. Results are provided in Table 17a.

Table 17a

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) following treatment			
	GLV-1h68 alone	Carboplatin alone	GLV-1h68 + cisplatin	No treatment
55	268.4	676.45	402.1	793.45

- 230 -

62	623.7	1565.85	1128.15	1778.25
70	1232.5	5708.9	1485.05	3261.4
75	1277.05	3119.65	1599.35	4649.5
81	1189.55	3733.95	1411.4	7198.7
89	774.4	4109.75	1040.15	*
96		4460.5	906.75	*

Treatment with GLV-1h68 virus alone or combination therapy with GLV-1h68 virus and cisplatin appeared effective in slowing the initial tumor growth rate and then shrinking the tumor. Tumor shrinkage in mice treated with either regimen was sustained until the end-point of the experiment. While monotherapy with cisplatin reduced the rate of tumor growth, compared to untreated mice, the treatment was not able to reduce the size of the tumors or arrest growth completely.

#### Example 10

##### 10 Comparison of two chemotherapeutic agents in combination therapy against human breast carcinoma tumors *in vivo*

The therapeutic effect of an attenuated vaccinia virus alone, or in combination with either cisplatin or doxorubicin, on the progression of human breast carcinoma tumors was evaluated in a direct *in vivo* study.

15 Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533] subcutaneously on the right lateral thigh of female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 4-8mice/group). Following tumor cell implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $1 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 virus in the tail vein at 32 days post-cancer cell injection, one group of mice was intraperitoneally injected with 5 mg/kg cisplatin once daily on each of days 47, 48, 49, 50 and 51 post-cancer cell injection, one group received combination therapy of GLV-1h68 and cisplatin, one group of mice was intraperitoneally injected with 3 mg/kg doxorubicin (Sigma Catalog no. 44583) alone once a week for 4 consecutive weeks starting 47 days post-cancer cell injection, one group of mice received combination therapy of GLV-1h68

- 231 -

and doxorubicin, and the control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at days 32, 47, 52, 56, 63, 67, 76, 80, 89, 96 and 104 post-cancer cell injection. Results are provided in Table 18.

**Table 18**

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) on days post-GI-101A injection					
	GLV-1h68 alone (n=7)	Cisplatin alone (n=5)	GLV-1h68 + cisplatin (n=6)	Doxorubicin alone (n=5)	GLV-1h68 + doxorubicin (n=4)	No treatment (n=8)
32	212.7	208.9	184.4	192.4	155.2	171.5
47	694.0	646.0	538.8	664.0	496.9	463.1
52	810.7	622.1	582.4	856.6	558.0	561.3
56	901.7	637.7	570.1	968.2	599.1	667.9
63	1096.2	865.1	893.1	1328.6	850.5	1066.3
67	990.6	963.1	916.4	1390.2	1066.6	1105.7
76	914.3	1260.6	772.7	1884.1	1296.7	1420.9
80	903.1	1484.3	692.4	2213.1	1308.9	1959.9
89	801.5	2171.9	669.2	2484.8	1457.1	2948.1
96	644.4	2996.1	446.6	*	1357.6	3453.9
104	525.9	2849.4	454.1	*	1339.8	4202.5

5           \* No median tumor volume was calculated due to the death of significant numbers or all of mice.

In contrast to the OVCAR-3 human ovarian carcinomas, treatment of GI-101A human breast carcinomas with GLV-1h68 alone resulted in tumor shrinkage.

10   Treatment with cisplatin alone decreased the rate of tumor growth, but did not shrink tumors. Treatment with doxorubicin alone did not have any effect on the rate of tumor growth and results were similar to the untreated control animals. Treatment of animals with a combination of doxorubicin and GLV-1h68 was more effective than the untreated control animals, but was not as effective as GLV-1h68 treatment alone, 15   thus, doxorubicin may inhibit viral oncolytic activity. Treatment of animals with a combination of cisplatin and GLV-1h68 had the greatest effect on the shrinkage of the tumors and exhibited phenotypes characteristic of dying tumors as described above.



**Example 11****Effect of combination therapy with cisplatin on human pancreatic tumors**

The therapeutic effect of a modified vaccinia virus alone, or in combination  
 5 with cisplatin, on the progression of human pancreatic tumors was evaluated in a  
 direct *in vivo* study of a mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. The therapeutic  
 effect on tumor growth was determined by measuring the volume of the tumor at  
 various time points.

**A. Effect of GLV-1h68 or cisplatin on human pancreatic tumors**

10 Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$   
 cells PANC-1 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1469)  
 subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>;  
 Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Following tumor cell implantation,  
 one group of mice was injected with  $2 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 virus in the tail  
 15 vein 37 days post-cancer cell injection, one group of mice was intraperitoneally  
 injected with 5 mg/kg cisplatin on each of days 46, 47, 48, 49 and 50 post-cancer cell  
 injection, and the control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume  
 (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at days 36, 46, 52, 57, 63, 72, 79, 86, 94 and 100 post-cancer  
 cell injection. Results are provided in Table 19.

20

**Table 19**

Days Post- implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )		
	No treatment (n=6)	GLV-1h68 (n=8)	Cisplatin (n=3)
36	196.2	153.1	170.2
46	300.9	351.8	296.6
52	400.8	385.3	254.95
57	540.2	396.3	326.2
63	721.4	247.7	460.3
72	1082.5	156.8	663.4
79	1640.3	128.4	1022.0
86	2599.8	64.5	1718.3
94	3927.9	56.6	2520.4

- 233 -

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )		
	No treatment (n=6)	GLV-1h68 (n=8)	Cisplatin (n=3)
100	4556.7	39.5	3254.1

Although cisplatin slowed the growth rate of the pancreatic tumor significantly compared to untreated controls, it was unable to arrest tumor growth. GLV-1h68, on the other hand, caused shrinkage of the pancreatic tumors as early as 29 days after virus injection.

**B. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 with cisplatin, on PANC-1 human pancreatic tumors**

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells PANC-1 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC# CRL-1469) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (n = 8-11 mice/group). Following tumor cell implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $1 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 (RVGL21) virus in the tail vein 32 days post-cancer cell injection, one group of mice was treated with a combination of GLV-1h68 ( $1 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 injected in the tail vein at day 32) and intraperitoneal injection of 6 mg/kg cisplatin once daily on each of days 42, 43, 44, 45 and 46), one group received cisplatin only, and the control group received no treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) in mice administered GLV-1h68 or GLV1h68 and cisplatin was measured at days 31, 46, 52, 59, 68, 75, 84, 90 and 96 post-cancer cell injection. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) in the control group and mice administered cisplatin only was measured at days 36, 46, 52, 57, 63, 72 and 79 days post-cancer cell injection. Results are provided in Table 20.

**Table 20**

**Median tumor volume at different times following treatment with GLV-1h68 and cisplatin in mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	GLV-1h68 (n=11)	GLV-1h68 + Cisplatin (n=8)	Cisplatin	No treatment
31 (36)	118.9	125.8	170.2	196.15
46 (46)	282.6	365.6	296.6	300.9

- 234 -

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	GLV-1h68 (n=11)	GLV-1h68 + Cisplatin (n=8)	Cisplatin	No treatment
52 (52)	315.9	206.5	254.95	400.8
59 (57)	291.6	325.4	326.2	540.2
68 (63)	290.5	250.8	460.3	721.35
75 (72)	209.5	122.0	663.4	1082.45
84 (79)	196.8	70.7	1022	
90	119.9	51.9		
96	133.5	0		

Tumor shrinkage was more pronounced with the combination therapy of GLV-1h68 in combination with cisplatin compared to GLV-1h68 alone. Tumors were resolved with the combination therapy on day 64 post-virus injection.

**5 C. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 with cisplatin, on MIA-PaCa2 human pancreatic tumors**

The effect of combination treatment with GLV-1h68 and cisplatin was evaluated using a second mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells MIA PaCa-2 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1420) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Thirty-one days following tumor cell implantation, mice in on group were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, followed by intraperitoneal injection of 4 mg/kg cisplatin on day 42, 43, 44, 45 and 46; mice in another group were injected intravenously with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68; mice in a further group were injected intraperitoneally with 4 mg/kg cisplatin on day 42, 43, 44, 45 and 46; and mice in the control group received no treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 31, 42, 48, 56, 64 and 70 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) are provided in Table 20a.

Combination therapy of GLV-1h68 in combination with cisplatin and virotherapy with GLV-1h68 alone effectively controlled tumor growth compared to monotherapy with cisplatin or no treatment. Combination therapy of GLV-1h68 in

- 235 -

combination with cisplatin and virotherapy with GLV-1h68 alone appeared equally effective at shrinking and controlling MIA-PaCa2 tumors in nude mice.

Table 20a.

**Median tumor volume at different times following treatment with GLV-1h68 and cisplatin in mice bearing MIA-PaCa2 tumors**

5

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	No treatment	GLV-1h68	cisplatin	GLV-1h68 + cisplatin
31	681.45	537.9	577.7	674.9
42	3295.05	2110.9	2991.25	2195.8
48	4164.3	1916.1	5171.9	1741.75
56	5586.1	1462	8454.65	1623.35
64	*	1191	*	1321.85
70	*	1200.3	*	1130.35

### Example 12

#### Effect of combination therapy with gemcitabine on human tumors

10 The therapeutic effect of a modified vaccinia virus alone, or in combination with gemcitabine, on the progression of human lung tumors and human pancreatic tumors was evaluated *in vivo* mouse tumor models.

#### A. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 with gemcitabine, on human lung carcinoma tumors

15 The therapeutic effect of a modified vaccinia virus alone, or in combination with gemcitabine, on tumor growth inhibition was evaluated in a direct *in vivo* study in a mouse model of human lung cancer. The therapeutic effect on tumor growth was determined by observing phenotypic changes in the tumors and by measuring the volume of the tumor at various time points.

20 Tumors were established by subcutaneously injecting A549 human lung carcinoma cells [s.c. on right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; ATCC# CCL-185] into male nude mice [Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN] (n = 4-8).

- 236 -

On day 23 after A549 cell implantation, viruses at a dose of  $5.0 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse were injected intravenously (i.v.) into the femoral vein. At 7, 10, 13, 16 and 19 days after virus injection, Gemcitabine (Gemzar®, Eli Lilly and Company, at 50 mg/kg or 100 mg/kg) was injected intraperitoneally (i.p.). Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at 22, 30, 37, 44, 51, 58, and 65 days post-tumor cell implantation. Results are provided in Table 21a.

Gemcitabine alone actually increased tumor growth in the mice at both 50mg/kg and 100mg/kg doses. In contrast, gemcitabine enhanced the slowing of tumor growth and tumor shrinkage of GLV-1h68 when administered in the combination with GLV-1h68 at earlier time points following administration of the virus (compare *e.g.*, day 37 post-tumor cell implantation onward). Combination therapy with the lower dosage (50mg/kg) of gemcitabine promoted a more rapid response of tumor shrinkage as compared to the higher dosage or GLV-1h68 alone.

Table 21a

#### Effect of Gemcitabine Combination Therapy on Human Lung Tumors

Days Post-implantation	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ )					
	No treatment	GLV-1h68	Gemcitabine 50 mg/kg	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine 50 mg/kg	Gemcitabine 100 mg/kg	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine 100 mg/kg
22	226.5	303.8	245.6	234.0	228.1	251.9
30	477.4	677.2	579.8	565.7	487.4	599.1
37	557.1	1031.0	745.3	725.5	693.6	906.5
44	870.0	885.7	1023.9	544.4	1046.0	796.8
51	1442.7	902.0	1229.7	485.6	1580.2	616.3
58	1520.4	456.8	1619.0	336.9	2216.6	444.9
65	2168.7	262.1	2852.0	393.5	3413.4	424.1

#### B. Effect of combination therapy, GLV-1h68 with gemcitabine, on human pancreatic tumors

The therapeutic effect of a modified vaccinia virus alone, or in combination with gemcitabine, on tumor growth inhibition was evaluated in a direct *in vivo* study

- 237 -

in a mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. The therapeutic effect on tumor growth was determined by observing phenotypic changes in the tumors and by measuring the volume of the tumor at various time points.

Tumors were established by subcutaneously injecting PANC-1 human  
 5 pancreatic carcinoma cells [s.c. on right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; ATCC# CRL-1469]  
 into male nude mice [Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN] (n = 3-8  
 mice/group). On day 28 after PANC-1 cell implantation, viruses at a dose of  $5.0 \times 10^6$   
 PFU/mouse were injected intravenously (i.v.) into the tail vein. At 7, 10, 13, 16 and  
 19 days after virus injection, Gemcitabine (Gemzar®, Eli Lilly and Company, at 50  
 10 mg/kg or 100 mg/kg) was injected intraperitoneally (i.p.). Median tumor volume  
 (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 28, 35, 42, 50, 56, 63, 71 and 79 days post-tumor cell  
 implantation. Results are provided in Table 21b.

Gemcitabine alone moderately decreased tumor growth in the mice at both  
 50mg/kg and 100mg/kg. In combination with GLV-1h68, gemcitabine enhanced the  
 15 slowing of tumor growth and promoted tumor shrinkage by GLV-1h68 (compare *e.g.*,  
 day 42 post-tumor cell implantation onward). Combination therapy with the lower  
 dosage (50mg/kg) of gemcitabine promoted a more rapid response of tumor shrinkage  
 as compared to the higher dosage or GLV-1h68 alone.

20

Table 21b

## Effect of Gemcitabine Combination Therapy on Human Pancreatic Tumors

Days Post- implanta- tion	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )					
	No treatment	GLV- 1h68	Gemcitabine 50 mg/kg	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine 50 mg/kg	Gemcitabine 100 mg/kg	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine 100 mg/kg
28	281.6	231.7	268.0	226.2	209.7	227.8
35	395.4	425.9	359.2	408.6	417.8	401.3
42	616.7	724.5	543.6	592.3	652.5	662.5
50	1114.6	845.1	584.8	513.2	810.3	569.7
56	1146.5	776.3	682.9	510.1	655.6	554.1
63	1446.1	547.9	654.7	372.5	407.3	508.8

- 238 -

71	2074.6	376.3	1006.2	257.9	789.1	281.6
79	2907.7	268.2	1534.1	257.7	1437.0	242.4

**Example 13**

**Effect of vaccinia virus expression of human plasminogen k5 domain  
on human lung carcinoma tumors**

5        The therapeutic effect of administration vaccinia viruses expressing an angiogenesis inhibitor on the progression of A549 tumors was evaluated in a direct *in vivo* study in a mouse model of human lung cancer. GLV-1h81, which expresses human plasminogen k5 domain, and the GLV-1h68 control strain were used for the study. The therapeutic effect on tumor growth was determined by observing  
10    phenotypic changes in the tumors and by measuring the volume of the tumor at various time points.

Tumors were established by subcutaneously injecting A549 human lung carcinoma cells [s.c. on right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; ATCC# CCL-185] into male nude mice [Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN] (n = 4-8).

15    On day 23 after A549 cell implantation, viruses at a dose of  $5.0 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse were injected i.v. into the femoral vein. Median tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 22, 30, 37, 44, 51, 58, and 65 days post-tumor cell implantation. Results are provided in Table 22. In the mouse model for human lung carcinoma, GLV-1h81, which expresses, human plasminogen k5 domain, was able to slow tumor growth though the  
20    effect was less pronounced than the GLV-1h68 strain. The difference in therapeutic effect may be due to an attenuating effect of the strong synthetic early/late promoter on the GLV-1h81 virus.

- 239 -

Table 22

Days Post- implanta- tion	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )		
	No treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h81
22	226.5	303.8	290.9
30	477.4	677.2	651.2
37	557.1	1031.0	955.6
44	870.0	885.7	1087.7
51	1442.7	902.0	1068.5
58	1520.4	456.8	756.0
65	2168.7	262.1	685.9

## Example 14

## Imaging of viruses expressing multiple proteins for detection

Recombinant vaccinia viruses that express click beetle luciferase-mRFP1 (CBG99-mRFP1) and *Renilla* luciferase-GFP (Ruc-GFP) fusion genes were generated as described above to facilitate evaluation of virus replication *in vitro* and monitoring virus therapeutic effects and spread *in vivo*. GLV-1h84, which expresses CBG99-mRFP1, and GLV-1h86, which expresses Ruc-GFP, were used to evaluate the ability to monitor viruses *in vitro* and *in vivo* by fluorescence and bioluminescence imaging techniques. In the GLV-1h84 strain, CBG99 and mRFP1 are connected through a picornavirus 2A element. During translation, these two proteins are cleaved into two individual proteins at picornavirus 2A element. In the GLV-1h86 strain, Ruc-GFP is expressed as a fusion protein. As described in Example 1, the GLV-1h84 strain exhibits strong expression of mRFP1 as confirmed by fluorescence microscopy.

Real-time monitoring of infection was performed using CV-1 (green monkey kidney cells) and GI-101A (human breast adenocarcinoma) cells infected with GLV-1h84 and GLV-1h86. Infection of CV-1 and GI-101A cells with GLV-1h84 at an m.o.i. of 0.01 was monitored in real-time using fluorescence microscopy. In both cell types, individual red plaques were seen 24 hours post infection (hpi). By 48 hpi, more



- 240 -

than 80% of cells were infected; at 72 hpi, almost all cells were infected. GLV-1h86 showed similar spreading patterns in both CV1 and GI-101A cells in comparison with GLV-1h84. Infection of both cell types with either GLV-1h84 or GLV-1h86 was also imaged by measuring luciferase activities.

- 5 In a separate experiment of *in vitro* infection of CV1 cells, luciferase assays of 0.5 mg cell extract were performed at different times post infection. GLV-1h68 Ruc-GFP infected CV1 cells were assayed with 0.0375 mg coelenterazine and GLV-1h84 CBG99-RFP infected CV1 cells with 0.5 mg beetle luciferin. Even though the click beetle luciferase was incubated with more luciferin, the photon emission during the
- 10 assay was comparable for both luciferases. Data is shown in Table 23.

Table 23

Time Hours Post- Infection	Relative Light Units	
	GLV1h68 Ruc-GFP	GLV-1h84 CBG99-RFP
0	16	26
2	22	52
4	173	402
6	22295	19824
8	10874	11070
10	45550	52618
12	95445	109189
14	214488	235280
18	661022	778738
24	14595754	15082362
32	3095943	3436978
40	2047472	2265043
48	1641432	1720210

- Real-time monitoring of co-infection of the two viruses was also performed using CV-1 and GI-101A cells infected with both GLV-1h84 and GLV-1h86. When
- 15 CV-1 cells were co-infected with GLV-1h84 and GLV-1h86 at an m.o.i. of 0.01 for each virus, individual red or green plaques were seen at 24 hpi under a fluorescence microscope, confirming that each virus plaque was derived from a single virus particle. At 48 hpi, most cells were infected. At later hpi, some of infected cells were yellow, indicating that cells infected with one virus can also be infected later with

- 241 -

another virus. By 72 hpi, most cells were co-infected. In contrast, when GI-101A cells were co-infected with both viruses, there were not many yellow cells even by the time of 72 hpi, suggesting that the virus does not spread very well to GI-101A cells already infected.

- 5 Flow cytometric analysis was also performed on CV-1 cells infected with either GLV-1h84 or GLV-1h86 viruses or a combination of the two viruses to determine the levels of fluorescent molecule expression as well as assess any interference in the replication of the viruses following dual infection of viruses. CV-1 cells were infected at a m.o.i. of 0.5 for the single virus strain infection and a m.o.i. of 10 0.25 for each virus for the mixed infection. No significant differences were seen between the VV strains in the replication efficiency of the viruses. Expression of GFP was detectable earlier than RFP. VV strains did not influence fluorescence expression on each other as can be seen from the comparison of expected fluorescent cells and GFP and RFP expressing cells in the mixed infection. Data for the 15 percentage of fluorescent cells for each infection is presented in Table 24.

Table 24

Hours Post Infection	Percentage of Fluorescent Cells						
	GFP	RFP	GFP in mixed infection	RFP in mixed infection	GFP + RFP in mixed infection	Total fluorescence in mixed infection	Expected GFP+RFP in mixed infection
0	0.07	0.07	0.07	0.07	0.07	0.07	0.000049
4	0.27	0.07	0.11	0.12	0.08	0.15	0.000132
8	3.29	0.12	2.68	0.10	0.06	2.72	0.002
12	18.38	9.88	12.23	4.09	1.80	14.52	0.500
24	56.01	56.37	42.32	42.87	22.02	63.17	18.142
48	88.12	97.6	60.26	75.02	43.00	92.28	45.207

- In vivo* imaging was also performed by infecting tumor bearing mice with CBG99-mRFP1 expressing viruses. C6(pLEIN) glioma tumor bearing nude mice 20 were injected intravenously with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h84 and imaged at 7 days post infection. Tumor and poxes on the tail were detected by fluorescence and bioluminescence imaging of mRFP1 and CBG99, respectively. In another experiment GI101A tumor bearing nude mice were injected with GLV-1h84 CBG99-RFP or Ruc-GFP expressing virus and imaged at 7 days p.i.. Luciferase activity indicating the

- 242 -

presence of the virus was detected *in vivo* at the location of the tumor following injection of click beetle luciferin or coelenterazine into the mice and detection by low light imaging methods. Detection of fluorescence emission by either RFP or GFP was also detected *in vivo* in live mice as well as in excised tumors.

5           The results of these studies show that vaccinia virus replication in cultured cells and in living mice can be monitored by both fluorescence and bioluminescence imaging. In addition to their use as diagnostic tools, these strains can be used to investigate the role of the immune system and pathogen clearance in initial tumor colonization. The described VV strains are useful tools to investigate the influence of  
10   one Vaccinia infection followed by a second infection since they did not influence each other in their replication but were clearly distinguishable from each other due to their multicolor labeling. One virus expresses GFP and *Renilla* luciferase (Ruc) and can be detected by fluorescence imaging at emission wavelength 509nm for GFP and by photon emission at 482nm after adding coelenterazine for Ruc; the other VV  
15   expresses RFP and click beetle luciferase (CBG99) and can be detected by fluorescence imaging at emission wavelength 583nm for RFP and by photon emission at 537nm after adding beetle luciferin for CBG99. Hence, both viruses can be used independently in the same mouse for comparative low light imaging and high resolution in *in vivo* and *ex vivo* histology analysis.

20

### Example 15

#### Resonance imaging of viruses expressing iron binding proteins

Expression of iron binding proteins can enhance the imaging properties of viruses for *in vivo* detection. Vaccinia viral strains expressing the iron binding  
25   proteins, such as a ferritin and a transferrin receptor were tested for the ability to be detected in vivo using magnetic resonance imaging (MRI). Three strains were tested (GLV-1h22, GLV-1h82, and GLV-1h83) and compared to a control strain (GLV-1h68) that does not express the iron binding proteins. GLV-1h22 expresses the transferrin receptor, GLV-1h82 expresses both the transferrin receptor and *E. coli*  
30   ferritin, and GLV-1h83 expresses *E. coli* ferritin.

- 243 -

Tumors were established in athymic nu-/nu- mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells subcutaneously on the right lateral thigh of female nude mice. At 30 days post tumor cell implantation, mice were i.v. injected with different vaccinia virus strains or PBS control into the lateral tail vein. At 14 days later (44 days post tumor cell implantation), mice were perfused using 4% formaldehyde. Colonization of VV was confirmed by GFP expression in the tumor. Tumors were then excised and MRI was performed (Spin echo sequence TR: 1200ms, TE: 35ms, rat coil (UCSD) 7T GE small animal MRI scanner). The resulting pictures were analyzed and the mean grey level of each tumor was determined. The results for the grey levels are shown in Table 25. Expression of the ferritin or the transferrin receptor enhanced the MRI contrast in the tumor tissue compared to the uninfected and GLV-1h68 controls. The co-expression of ferritin with the transferrin receptor, however, did not increase the effect. Expression of ferritin alone appeared to have the greatest effect, which suggests that there may be an attenuating effect on gene expression when additional expression cassettes are added to the virus or an interference effect of expressing a human transferrin receptor in a mouse cell. Nonetheless the experiments establish that expression of iron binding proteins or iron transporters is useful for detection of tumors.

Table 25

	Grey Level	Standard Deviation	Mean
PBS control (uninfected)	111	33	108
GLV-1h68	100	26	99
GLV-1h22 (hTfR)	85	25	83
GLV-1h82 a (ftn, hTfR)	85	25	85
GLV-1h82 b (ftn, hTfR)	83	28	81
GLV-1h83 (ftn)	74	30	73

## Example 16

Effects of Modified Viruses on Lung Tumor Growth *In vivo*

## A. Effects of viruses administered to male nude mice on human lung tumors

- 244 -

Tumors were established by subcutaneously injecting A549 human lung carcinoma cells [s.c. on right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; ATCC# CCL-185] into male nude mice [Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN] (n = 4-8).

On day 23 after A549 cell implantation, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72 and  
 5 GLV-1h73 viruses at a dose of  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse were injected i.v. into the femoral vein. Median tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at time points post-tumor cell implantation.

All three strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h72, and GLV-1h73 promoted rapid responses of tumor shrinkage. The tumor shrinkage response induced by GLV-1h72  
 10 and GLV-1h73 was slightly faster. Treatment with GLV-1h71 led to approximately 50% decrease in tumor growth, but did not result in complete reverse of tumor growth as seen in the treatment groups of other three viruses.

Table 26

Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different  
 15 virus strains into nude mice bearing A549 tumors

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )				
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73
16	126.0	170.6	148.9	135.8	140.5
22	268.0	294.9	338.3	342.3	362.7
29	518.3	683.4	568.1	604	575
36	768.9	882.7	766.4	709.7	663.2
44	1004.1	586.0	802.4	418.85	398.1
51	1322.4	283.6	783.9	263.9	271.6
57	1913.0	*	897.6	177	210.5

## Example 17

Effects of A35R Deletion on Virulence and Tumor Growth *In vivo*

A. Effects of modified viruses administered to female nude mice on s.c.  
 20 human breast tumor xenografts

The *in vivo* effects of removal of the A35R gene on virulence and tumor shrinkage induced by the modified vaccinia strains were evaluated using a mouse

- 245 -

model of breast cancer. Strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74 were evaluated with their corresponding A35R-deleted strains GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, respectively. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (s.c. on the right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; GI-101A cells: Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533) into female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN) (n = 4-8). Thirty three days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at 34, 41, 49, 57, 64, 71, 78, 85 and 92 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 27.

GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74 showed antitumor activities similar to their corresponding A35R-deleted strains, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, respectively. A35R-deleted strain GLV-1j87 showed significantly enhanced antitumor activity as compared to its corresponding strain of GLV-1h68. The A35R deletion was able to attenuate the toxicity of the GLV-1h68 virus and provide a greater tumor response (see GLV-1j87 in Table 26). The A35R deletion did not decrease the toxicity of the GLV-1h73 or GLV-1h74 strains (see GLV-1j88, 1j89 in Table 26).

Table 27

Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ )						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74	GLV-1j87	GLV-1j88	GLV-1j89
34	305.2	306.6	351.1	534.75	377.5	353.3	325.45
41	459.2	444.75	590.65	881.5	673.35	677.45	753.05
49	794.85	777.05	923.15	1259.8	1126.85	988	1095.95
57	1253.4	1102.95	1109.5	1181.4	1271.95	1023.85	975.75
64	*	1204.5	691.85	280.5	1125.85	715.45	497.5
71	*	1239.85	318.15	33.8	1130.35	340.9	*
78	*	1347.2	106.65	*	931.9	*	*

- 246 -

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h74	GLV-1j87	GLV-1j88	GLV-1j89
85	*	1261.95	8.05	*	755.2	*	*
92	*	1061.15	0	*	599.5	*	*

#### B. Effects of A35R deletion on virulence following intranasal administration

The *in vivo* effect of removal of the A35R gene on virulence of intranasally administered modified vaccinia strains was evaluated. Strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h73 and GLV-1h74 were evaluated with their corresponding A35R-deleted strains GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88 and GLV-1j89, respectively. Groups of eight male BALB/c 5-week-old mice were anesthetized and intranasally challenged with varying concentrations of of each virus,  $1 \times 10^5$ ,  $1 \times 10^6$  or  $1 \times 10^7$  PFU, in 20  $\mu$ l 10 mM Tris-HCl (pH 9.0) or PBS control. Individual mice were weighed three times every week.

Over the observation period, all mice exhibited significant weight gain. The increasing concentrations of each virus slightly decreased the percentage weight gain; however, the A35R mutation did not significantly alter the percentage weight gain of corresponding vaccinia viruses in the mice. Thus, removal of A35R from the viruses does not appear to affect virulence via intranasal administration.

15

#### Example 18

##### Effects of IL-6 and IL-24 Expressing Viruses on Breast Tumor Growth *In vivo*

#### A. Effects of modified viruses on s.c. human breast tumor xenografts

The *in vivo* effects of IL-6 expressing viruses GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h91 and GLV-1h92 and IL-24-expressing viruses GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97 and GLV-1h98 compared to virus strains GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71 and Dark8.1 on tumor growth were evaluated using a mouse model of breast cancer. The Dark8.1 strain was isolated from a culture of GLV-1h68 by selection dark plaques under fluorescence microscope and subsequent plaque purification. Dark8.1 has an intact F14.5L gene, which is identical in sequence to F14.5L of LIVP. (The *lacZ* and *gusA* genes at the *TK* and *HA* loci, respectively, in Dark8.1 are still intact).

25

- 247 -

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (s.c. on the right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; GI-101A cells: Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533) into female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN) (n = 4-8). Thirty three days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, Dark 8.1, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97 and GLV-1h98, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 31, 39, 54, 62, 69, 76 and 97 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 28. GLV-1h90 (expressin IL-6) and GLV-1h96 (expressing IL-24) showed enhanced antitumor response as compared to the corresponding virus GLV-1h68, which does not express IL-6 or IL-24.

**Table 28**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )									
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	Dark 8.1	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h91	GLV-1h92	GLV-1h96	GLV-1h97	GLV-1h98
31	777.55	578	523.7	571.4	445.6	485.6	609	505.1	505.3	716.4
39	1124.4	967.8	1147.6	1012.95	942	860	905.4	939.4	829.8	1326.3
54	3535.1	2059.4	1997	1991	1110.8	521.8	811.7	1864.3	1456.9	2266.8
62	*	2669.05	1184.3	2144.8	1337.3	*	*	1969.9	2326.3	2193.2
69	*	578	1008.25	*	1219.4	*	*	1820.75	2483.55	1957.8
76	*	*	452.15	*	1378.9	*	*	1488.85	2243.25	1419.6
97	*	*	154.5	*	155.4	*	*	311.3	1131.5	945.1

#### Example 19

#### Effects of Modified Viruses on Pancreatic Tumor Growth *In vivo*

##### A. Effects of modified viruses on human pancreatic tumors - *PANC-1 Model*

The *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h81 (hk5-expressing), GLV-1h90 (sIL-6R-IL-6 expressing) and GLV-1h96 (IL-24 expressing)



- 248 -

virus were evaluated using a mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  PANC-1 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1469) subcutaneously in right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty seven days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 26, 33, 41, 49, 56, 68, 76 and 85 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 29.

GLV-1h81 (hk5-expressing), GLV-1h90 (sIL-6R-IL-6 expressing), and GLV-1h96 (IL-24 expressing) viruses showed significantly accelerated antitumor responses as compared to GLV-1h68 (Table 29). Among these four viruses, GLV-1h96 showed the best antitumor activity. In addition, based on net body weight changes, mice treated with GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90, and GLV-1h96 gained 5-10% more weight than mice treated GLV-1h68, which may indicate that GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90, and GLV-1h96 are less toxic to mice (Table 30). Nonetheless, mice treated with GLV-1h68, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90, and GLV-1h96 all gained significant weight during the course of viral treatment.

**Table 29**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h81	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
26	234	252.2	195.25	171.6	197.75	191.4	169.05
33	387.8	458.25	405.5	352.15	352.8	492.9	384.65
41	669	796.25	625.25	638.15	547.1	633.15	547.1
49	834.7	877.7	480.4	552.45	645.55	720.65	341.25
56	1258.8	823.35	384.95	313	589.2	555	229.5
68	1990	616.35	303.35	291.25	422.6	262	157.2
76	3056.1	436.95	236.6	*	362.55	182.95	124.4

- 249 -

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h81	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
85	4627.4	307.25	201.1	*	256.85	133.1	81.15
98	*	218.4	119.7	*	172.45	129.55	41.8
106	*	157.95	*	*	141.25	110.7	43.8

Comparison of tumor volumes for each of the eight individual mice injected with either GLV-1h68 (Mice ID Nos. 6060-6067) or GLV-1h90 (Mice ID Nos. 6116-6123) are presented in Tables 30 and 31, respectively. Variations in tumor sizes were seen at different time points in the mice following GLV-1h90 injection; however, by 80 days following treatment, only tumor remnants remained in most mice. Much smaller variations in tumor sizes were seen at different time points in mice treated with GLV-1h68, though the average tumor response was significantly slower as compared to GLV-1h90. Similar to mice treated with GLV-1h90, only tumor remnants were seen by 80 days after GLV-1h68 injection.

**Table 30**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )							
	6060	6061	6062	6063	6064	6065	6066	6067
26	272.1	193.3	257.8	339.4	163.1	165.2	246.6	351.2
33	474.6	539.1	426.8	578.1	294.7	340.6	441.9	649.6
41	819.5	997.9	731.9	1096.9	460.5	532.6	773.9	818.6
49	981.5	815.3	911.8	930.7	557.9	843.6	764.3	1153.2
56	819.9	762.7	826.8	757.5	857.5	956.2	553.6	1064.9
68	812	601.2	484.9	631.5	715.8	445.7	338.8	703.2
76	564.9	593.9	332.4	374.8	634.3	228	284.3	499.1
85	488.6	528.7	256.7	311.3	635.3	137.5	301.6	303.2
98	301.9	402.8	218.4	123.4	507.3	64.2	187.4	nd
106	210.8	176.7	128.5	nd	259.9	45.6	139.2	nd

- 250 -

**Table 31**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of GLV-1h90**  
**into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )							
	6116	6117	6118	6119	6120	6121	6122	6123
26	377	169.9	209.3	281.8	173.5	137.3	130.8	212.7
33	631.2	532	453.8	785.6	323.5	370.3	291.9	749.3
41	850.3	757.8	497.7	881	508.5	416.5	294.5	958.4
49	755.9	691.5	576	935.4	749.8	360.4	205.2	1178.8
56	668.3	589.4	352.5	520.6	765.4	161.7	109.4	879.9
68	345.4	332.4	152.9	227.2	748.5	75.8	84.5	296.8
76	233.2	298.3	98.6	219.2	598.7	102.3	69.2	146.7
85	164.8	136.1	74.7	130.1	610.2	43.8	64.6	168.1
98	148.8	167.3	51.2	110.3	587.9	63.4	0	211.6
106	137.5	125.6	41.7	95.8	282.9	68.6	0	269.1

**5 B. Effects of modified viruses on human pancreatic tumors - MIA PaCa-2 Model**

The *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96 were evaluated using a second mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells MIA PaCa-2 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1420) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-Foxn1<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty-nine days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 30, 36, 45, 52 and 58 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) are provided in Table 32. GLV-1h90 (sIL-6R-IL-6 expressing) and GLV-1h96 (IL-24 expressing) showed significantly accelerated antitumor response as compared to GLV-1h68. Among these three viruses, GLV-1h96 showed the best antitumor activity at 28 days after virus injection.

- 251 -

**Table 32**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing MIA-PaCa-2 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h72	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h81	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
30	904.8	761.1	723.7	587	657.6	625.55	527.4
36	1806.4	1482.15	1457.6	1270.7	1322.7	1067.85	1243.05
45	4641.7	1223.1	1112.3	1180.15	1508.5	1233.8	1154.3
52	*	1175.85	584.6	749.25	1042.7	853.55	736.45
58	*	1073.15	467.8	603.2	984.8	681.95	546.05

5    **C.      Effects of viruses on body weight in a mouse model of human pancreatic tumors - *PANC-1 Model***

The percentage of body weight change following intravenous administration of the viruses in the PANC-1 mouse model of human pancreatic cancer was also examined (Table 33). Percentage of body weight change was measured for the  
 10    experiment described in Section A. Mice treated with GLV-1h68, GLV-1h81 and GLV-1h90 gained significant weight (all much better than the untreated group) during the course of viral treatment.

**Table 33**  
**Body weight change at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Body weight Change (%)						
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h71	GLV-1h73	GLV-1h81	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
26	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
33	-0.36	-2.4	-0.59	-4.76	-3.72	-6.06	-5.09
41	0	-6.85	-2.74	-4.17	-5.02	-7.39	-4.28
49	-2.91	-2.78	11.74	7.14	3.35	3.98	11.81
56	1.09	7.04	9.98	9.52	11.15	16.29	16.5
68	-3.27	11.11	12.33	-13.49	15.24	17.05	11.2
76	-3.27	11.3	8.61	nd	15.8	21.4	10.59
85	-6.18	13.7	5.68	nd	18.22	22.16	-0.41

- 252 -

**Example 20****IL-6 ELISA Correlation of IL-6 with tumor volume**

The relationship between tumor volume and the amount of IL-6 expressed by injected viruses was evaluated in a mouse model of pancreatic cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells PANC-1 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1469) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 8 mice/group). Twenty-seven days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of either GLV-1h68 or GLV-1h90. At 56 days post-cancer cell injection, tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured and samples of tumor fluid (~ 10-20  $\mu$ l through needle puncture) and blood serum (~ 500  $\mu$ l through retroorbital bleeding) were collected to measure IL-6 concentration by ELISA.

For comparison, production of IL-6 was also measured from CV-1 cells infected with virus. CV-1 cells in 6-well plates ( $1.0 \times 10^6$  cells/well) were mock infected or infected in triplicate with GLV-1h68, -1h90, -1h91 or -1h92 at m.o.i of 10 for 1 hour at 37°C. The inoculum was aspirated and the cell monolayers were washed twice with 2 ml of DPBS (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). Two ml of DMEM-2 were added into each well. The infected medium was collected at 24 h post infection and clarified by centrifugation at 3,000 rpm for 5 min.

The concentration of human IL-6 in the culture supernatants, mouse sera, and tumor fluids was quantified by Human IL-6 ELISA kit (Cell Sciences, Inc., Catalog No: CKH106) following the manufacturer's instructions. The culture supernatant samples were diluted 1:1000 or 1:5000, the mouse serum samples were diluted 1:100, and the tumor fluid samples were diluted 1:300. The standards and test samples were assayed in duplicate, and the absorbance at 450 nm was measured. The average absorbance obtained for each standard was used to generate the standard curve. The concentration of human IL-6 in each test sample was interpolated from the standard curve. Results for the IL-6 ELISA are shown in Table 34.

**Table 34**

- 253 -

**IL-6 concentration following *in vitro* infection of CV-1 cells or *in vivo* i.v.  
injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Sample		OD-OD.bl (450nm)	IL-6 (ng/ml)	Dilution Factor	Concentration (mean)
Cell Culture Supernatant	Mock-1	-0.002	n.d.	1:1000	n.d.
	Mock-2	-0.002	n.d.	1:1000	
	Mock-3	-0.001	n.d.	1:1000	
	GLV-1h68-1	0.001	n.d.	1:1000	n.d.
	GLV-1h68-2	0.001	n.d.	1:1000	
	GLV-1h68-3	-0.002	n.d.	1:1000	
	GLV-1h90-1	0.553	0.031	1:1000	42 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-2	0.703	0.042	1:1000	
	GLV-1h90-3	0.806	0.053	1:1000	
	GLV-1h91-1	1.159	0.108	1:5000	635 ng/ml
	GLV-1h91-2	1.410	0.162	1:5000	
	GLV-1h91-3	1.171	0.111	1:5000	
Mouse Serum	GLV-1h92-1	1.071	0.092	1:5000	562 ng/ml
	GLV-1h92-2	1.232	0.122	1:5000	
	GLV-1h92-3	1.243	0.123	1:5000	
	GLV-1h68 (8)	-0.001	n.d.	1:100	n.d.
	GLV-1h90-1	0.0912	0.0055	1:100	0.55 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-2	0.0496	0.0021	1:100	0.21 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-3	0.0694	0.0034	1:100	0.34 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-4	0.1250	0.0082	1:100	0.82 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-5	0.1196	0.0075	1:100	0.75 ng/ml
Tumor Fluid	GLV-1h90-6	0.0466	0.0020	1:100	0.20 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-7	0.0046	0.0014	1:100	0.14 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-8	0.1591	0.0089	1:100	0.89 ng/ml
	GLV-1h68 (8)	-0.001	n.d.	1:300	n.d.
	GLV-1h90-1	1.125	0.173	1:300	51.9 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-2	1.481	0.277	1:300	83.1 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-3	0.377	0.026	1:300	7.8 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-4	1.312	0.196	1:300	58.8 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-5	0.793	0.071	1:300	21.3 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-6	0.672	0.054	1:300	16.2 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-7	0.779	0.069	1:300	20.7 ng/ml
	GLV-1h90-8	1.143	0.140	1:300	42.0 ng/ml

OD. bl = OD value measured for the blank control. n.d.= not detected.

- 5 Results for median tumor volume compared to IL-6 concentration are provided in Table 35 for GLV-1h90, which expresses IL-6, and Table 36 for GLV-1h68, which does not express IL-6. In the 1h90 treated animals, high amounts of IL-6 were found in the cell culture, tumor fluid and blood serum as compared to the samples from mice treated with 1h68 control, which does not express IL-6.

- 254 -

During the tumor shrinking phase of the treatment (56 days post implantation of the tumor cells), in the GLV-1h90 treated animals, the concentration of IL-6 in the tumor fluid and in the serum is positively correlated to the tumor volume. This is because the larger tumor volume sustains higher virus replication. The smaller tumors, which are already shrunk by the virus treatment, have less tumor tissue in which the virus can replicate, and thus display a lower level of IL-6. In the control GLV-1h68 treated animals, the animals intrinsically express low levels of IL-6; however, there is no correlation between tumor volume and IL-6 concentration.

10 **Table 35**  
**IL-6 concentration versus tumor volume following i.v. injection of**  
**GLV-1h90 into mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Mouse ID (GLV-1h90 injected)	[IL-6] in tumor fluid (1:300)	Tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) at 56 days	Tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) / 500	[IL-6] in serum fluid
6116	1.1248	668.3	1.34	0.912
6117	1.4813	589.4	1.18	0.496
6118	0.3774	352.5	0.71	0.694
6119	1.3121	520.6	1.04	1.25
6120	0.7927	765.4	1.53	1.196
6121	0.6723	161.7	0.32	0.4066
6122	0.7785	109.4	0.22	0.046
6123	1.1425	879.9	1.76	1.591

15 **Table 36**  
**IL-6 concentration versus tumor volume following i.v. injection of**  
**GLV-1h68 into mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**

Mouse ID (GLV-1h68 injected)	[IL-6] in tumor fluid (1:300)	Tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) at 56 days	Tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> ) / 500	[IL-6] in serum fluid
6060	-0.0102	819.9	0.0041	-0.0248
6061	-0.0077	762.7	0.00381	-0.0108
6062	-0.0032	826.8	0.004134	-0.0088
6063	0.0072	757.5	0.00379	0.0044
6064	0.0093	857.5	0.00429	0.0017
6065	0.0087	956.2	0.004781	-0.0089
6066	-0.0049	553.6	0.002768	-0.0157
6067	-0.0042	1064.9	0.00532	-0.0093

**Example 21**

- 255 -

**Effects of Modified Viruses on Prostate Tumor Growth *In vivo*****A. Effects of viruses administered to female nude mice on human prostate carcinoma**

The *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h96 or a combination of GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96 were evaluated using two mouse models of human prostate cancer. In the first model, the *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h96 or a combination of GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96 on DU145 human prostate tumors was assessed. Tumors were established by subcutaneous implantation of  $1 \times 10^7$  DU145 human prostate cancer cells (ATCC# HTB-81) in the right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-Foxn1nu; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Nineteen days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90, or GLV-1h96, or  $2.5 \times 10^6$  PFU each of GLV-1h90 and GLV-1h96. Median tumor volumes ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) were measured using a digital caliper on day 18, 25, 31, 39, 45, 54, and 61 (days after tumor cell implantation). Results are shown in Table 37a.

In the second model, the *in vivo* effects of GLV-1h68 on PC-3 human prostate tumors was assessed. Tumors were established by subcutaneous implantation of  $1 \times 10^7$  PC-3 human prostate cancer cells (ATCC# CRL-1435) in the right lateral thigh of nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-Foxn1nu; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN). Following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously either through the femoral vein (f.v.) or through the tail vein (t.v.) with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS. Median tumor volumes ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) were measured using a digital caliper on days 27, 42, 50, 56, 63, 71, 78, 86, 105, 114, 133 and 146 after tumor cell implantation. Results are shown in Table 37b.

GLV-1h90 (sIL-6R-IL-6 expressing), GLV-1h96 (IL-24 expressing), and GLV-1h90 plus GLV-1h96 combination treatments of mice bearing DU145 tumors showed significantly accelerated and enhanced antitumor response as compared to GLV-1h68 (Table 37a). Among these four treatment groups, GLV-1h96 and GLV-1h90 plus GLV-1h96 combination treatments showed the best antitumor activities.



- 256 -

Tumors were eradicated in almost all mice in these two treatment groups 43 days after virus injection.

**Table 37a**  
Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing DU145 tumors

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )				
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96	GLV-1h90 + GLV-1h96
18	423.55	430.55	440.6	436.9	388.3
25	794.55	703.75	832.35	803.35	751.05
31	1036.05	1011.2	1025	952.3	1045.45
39	1278.9	1123.05	828.15	910.4	923.15
45	1649.9	1031	639.25	644.75	449.7
54	1746.8	951.5	452.15	238.75	214.05
61	2068.8	766.1	369.8	5.15	87.25

Administration of GLV-1h68, via to the tail vein or femoral vein, to mice bearing PC-3 tumors resulted in similar tumor progression to that seen in mice that were not treated (Table 37b). Administration of GLV-1h68 vis the tail vein resulted in slightly slower tumor growth compared with tumor growth in untreated mice.

**Table 37b**  
Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection into the tail vein or femoral vein of GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing PC-3 tumors

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )		
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68 (t.v.)	GLV-1h68 (f.v.)
27	38.05	28.55	37.8
42	158.25	145.8	111.45
50	188.15	247.25	146.2
56	215.3	259.45	187
63	373.15	330.55	323.5
71	446.1	381.15	322.05
78	546.15	525.9	408.9
86	679.8	718.1	549.7
105	1335.35	1000.9	1114.85
114	1499.9	1423	1522.8

- 257 -

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )		
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68 (t.v.)	GLV-1h68 (f.v.)
133	2685.2	2162.4	2719.8
146	3342.45	2627.95	3120.1

**B. Effects of viruses on body weight in a mouse model of human prostate cancer**

The percentage of body weight change following intravenous administration of the viruses in the mouse model of human prostate cancer was also examined (Table 38. Percentage of body weight change was measured for the experiment described in Section A. Mice in all treatment groups gained significant weight (equal to or better than the untreated group) and remained healthy during the course of viral treatment.

Table 38

10 **Body weight change at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing DU145 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Body weight Change (%)				
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96	GLV-1h90 + GLV-1h96
18	0	0	0	0	0
25	6.39	1.62	-1.3	0.81	1.46
31	5.01	0.97	-0.49	2.75	0.49
39	5.01	4.7	6.68	3.23	1.79
45	9.67	6.16	9.78	7.27	7.97
54	9.15	9.89	7.98	5.33	9.11
61	5	10.5	7.98	10.18	5.53

**Example 22**

**Effect of Erbitux or Avastin Combination Therapies on Human Pancreatic Carcinomas *In vivo***

15

**A. Effects of modified viruses with Erbitux or Avastin on tumor growth**

- 258 -

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells PANC-1 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1469) subcutaneously on the right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty seven days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68. For the combination treatments, Eribitux was administered i.p. at a dose of 3 mg/kg twice a week for five consecutive weeks) and Avastin was administered i.p. at a dose of 5 mg/kg twice a week for five consecutive weeks. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at 26, 33, 41, 49, 56, 68, 76, 85, 98 and 106 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume are provided in Table 39. Avastin exhibited a significant enhancement tumor regression when used in combination with 1h68, whereas Eribitux treatment slightly improved tumor regression when used in combination with 1h68. In addition, mice remained healthy following 1h68 and Avastin treatment.

**Table 39**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of**  
**GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors**  
**with or without Eribitux or Avastin combination therapy**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )					
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h68 + Eribitux	Eribitux	GLV-1h68 + Avastin	Avastin
26	234	252.2	170.9	190.15	230.75	221.5
33	387.8	458.25	420	382.45	422.05	366.3
41	669	796.25	695.15	507.7	628.7	537.65
49	834.7	877.7	724.3	785.65	648.5	742.8
56	1258.8	823.35	617.8	1126.35	449.6	988.9
68	1990	616.35	437.1	1926.6	275.55	1450
76	3056.1	436.95	382.9	2684.15	255.45	1919.85
85	4627.4	307.25	294.3	4283.6	205.3	2556.3
98	*	218.4	236.2	*	141	*
106	*	157.95	212.05	*	143.8	*

- 259 -

**B. Effects of combination therapy on body weight in a mouse model of human pancreatic cancer**

The percentage of body weight change following intravenous administration of the viruses in the PANC-1 mouse model of human pancreatic cancer was also examined (Table 40). Percentage of body weight change was measured for the

Mice injected with GLV-1h68 alone, GLV-1h68 plus Erbitux, and GLV-1h68 plus Avastin treatment groups gained significant weight, which was significantly better than the untreated, treated with Erbitux alone, or treated with Avastin alone groups, and remained healthy during the course of viral treatment.

**Table 40**  
Body weight change at different time points after i.v. injection of GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing PANC-1 tumors with or without Erbitux or Avastin combination therapy

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Body weight Change (%)					
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h68 + Erbitux	Erbitux	GLV-1h68 + Avastin	Avastin
26	0	0	0	0	0	0
33	-0.36	-2.4	-3.1	-0.19	-4.41	-1.14
41	0	-6.85	-5.43	0.38	-4.41	-3.6
49	-2.91	-2.78	1.55	-2.66	2.61	-2.65
56	1.09	7.04	9.88	-1.52	14.63	-6.06
68	-3.27	11.11	14.53	-5.69	19.84	-5.49
76	-3.27	11.3	13.76	-3.04	19.44	-7.95
85	-6.18	13.7	17.25	-4.36	19.44	-8.9

**Example 23**

**Effect of Combination Therapy on Pancreatic Tumor Growth *In vivo***

**A. Combination therapy with IL-6 or IL-24-expressing viruses and Gemcitabine**

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells MIA PaCa-2 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1420) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty-nine days following tumor

- 260 -

cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90 or GLV-1h96 viruses. For the combination treatment, Gemcitabine was administered i.p. at a dose of 50 mg/kg once every three days for five doses. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at 30, 36, 45, 52, and 58 days after tumor cell implantation. Results for median tumor volume are provided in Table 41. GLV-1h68 plus Gemcitabine combination treatment showed significantly accelerated and enhanced antitumor response as compared to treatment with GLV-1h68 alone or with Gemcitabine alone.

10

**Table 41**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of**  
**different modified viruses into nude mice bearing MIA-PaCa-2 tumors**  
**with or without Gemcitabine combination therapy**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ )							
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96	Gemcitabine	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine	GLV-1h90+ Gemcitabine	GLV-1h96+ Gemcitabine
30	904.8	761.1	625.55	527.4	706.7	597.8	633.6	739.2
36	1806.4	1482.15	1067.85	1243.05	1556.2	1390.8	1209.15	1413.6
45	4641.7	1223.1	1233.8	1154.3	3184.35	1209	1315.45	1593.4
52	*	1175.85	853.55	736.45	4187.45	854.4	995.5	1049.4
58	*	1073.15	681.95	546.05	*	766.6	825.65	981.35

**15 B. Comparison of combination therapy with Gemcitabine or Avastin**

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells MIA PaCa-2 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1420) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty-nine days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 viruses. For the combination treatment, Avastin was administered i.p. at a dose of 5 mg/kg twice a week for five consecutive weeks. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at 30, 36, 45, 52, and 58 days after tumor cell implantation. Results for median tumor volume are provided in Table 42.

- 261 -

Combination between 1h68 and Avastin or Gemcitabine exhibited a significant synergistic effect as compared GLV-1h68, Avastin or Gemcitabine alone.

**Table 42**

**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing MIA-PaCa-2 tumors with or without Gemcitabine or Avastin combination therapy**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )					
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	Avastin	GLV-1h68 + Avastin	Gemcitabine	GLV-1h68 + Gemcitabine
30	904.8	761.1	645.65	824.5	706.7	597.8
36	1806.4	1482.15	1408.4	1325.6	1556.2	1390.8
45	4641.7	1223.1	2746.25	1422.45	3184.35	1209
52	*	1175.85	4241.15	842.05	4187.45	854.4
58	*	1073.15	*	697.9	*	766.6

**Example 24****Effect of Irinotecan Combination Therapy on Breast Tumor Growth *In vivo***

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat. No. 5,693,533] subcutaneously on the right lateral thigh of female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-Foxn1<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 4-8mice/group). Following tumor cell implantation, one group of mice was injected with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU/mouse of GLV-1h68 virus in the femoral vein at 23 days post-cancer cell injection, one group of mice was intraperitoneally injected with 80 mg/kg irinotecan once a week on each of days 36, 43, 50 and 59 post-cancer cell injection, and one group received combination therapy of GLV-1h68 and irinotecan (irinotecan injected at same time points as the last group). Tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was measured at days 22, 32, 36, 42, 49, 59, 66, 80, 86, 99, 108, and 116 post-cancer cell injection. Results are provided in Table 43. Combination between 1h68 and irinotecan exhibited a significant synergistic effect as compared GLV-1h68 or irinotecan alone.

**Table 43**

**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of**

- 262 -

**GLV-1h68 into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors  
with or without Irinotecan combination therapy**

Days post- implanta- tion of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	No Treatment	GLV- 1h68	Irinotecan	GLV- 1h68 + Irinotecan
22	244.5	166	184	219.45
32	594.9	604.3	458.45	546
36	695.85	649.3	546.2	734.55
42	951.55	1002	668.75	921.25
49	1261.05	1200.8	712.9	973.35
59	1844.7	1694	831.8	901.55
66	nd	2049.2	1011.8	1003.25
80	nd	2608.4	1502.15	817.45
86	nd	2296.8	1678.4	684.8
99	nd	1647.5	2712.55	526.15
108	nd	nd	nd	429.25
116	nd	nd	nd	337.65

**Example 25**

**5 Expression of anti-VEGF single chain antibody by modified vaccinia strains**

**A. Expression of G6-FLAG in CV-1 cells**

Monkey CV-1 cells were infected with the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 virus strains and expression of G6-FLAG was investigated via Western blot analysis. For negative controls, uninfected cells or cells infected with GLV-1h68, which lacks the G6-FLAG gene, were used. At 48h post-infection, the supernatant of the infected cells was collected and cell pellets were harvested. The supernatant samples were centrifuged to remove cellular debris. Protein fractions were denatured and separated via vertical SDS-PAGE (sodium-dodecyl-sulfate polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis). Proteins were transferred to a PVDF-membrane and nonspecific binding was blocked by incubation of the membrane in 1x PBS/5% skim milk. The membrane was then incubated with the specific antibody rabbit anti-DDDDK-tag (detects the FLAG-tag) overnight. Chromogenic detection was achieved using a secondary HRP-conjugated goat anti-rabbit-IgG and an HRP detection kit,

20 Opti4CN (4-chloro-1-naphthol; Bio-Rad). Expressed scAb G6-FLAG protein

- 263 -

(approximate size 32 kDa) was detected both in the supernatant and the pellet (intracellular protein) for all three strains. Both GLV-1h108 ( $P_{SEL}$ ) and GLV1h109 ( $P_{SL}$ ) strains exhibit high levels of expression of G6-FLAG after 48h post-infection due to the stronger  $P_{SEL}$  and  $P_{SL}$  promoters in the 1h108 and 1h109 strains, respectively. Strain GLV-1h107 ( $P_{SE}$ ) exhibits a lower expression of G6-FLAG as compared to GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 due the weaker  $P_{SE}$  promoter in the GLV-1h107 strain. The experiment shows that the recombinant DNA can be delivered to mammalian cells via viral delivery by the modified vaccinia strains. The recombinant protein is successfully expressed in the infected cell and is secreted into the surrounding medium.

During the course of virus replication, infected cells undergo apoptosis and die. The cell membrane is also destroyed and cellular proteins are released into the supernatant. In order to demonstrate that the protein in the collected supernatants was a result of secretion by the infected cells and not by release of proteins into the supernatant by dying or dead cells, supernatant was harvested from infected CV-1 cells at 6h post-infection and analyzed by Western blot detection. Since cell death is minimal at earlier time points during infection, analyzing the supernatant from the infected cells at 6h post-infection allows detection of proteins that are actively secreted into the supernatant. By Western blot analysis, expression at 6h post-infection was low but detectable in the cell supernatants, indicating that the G6-FLAG fusion protein is expressed and secreted by the cells into the surrounding media

#### **B. Expression of G6-FLAG in tumor cell lines**

Different tumor cell lines were infected with an MOI of 10 (GLV-1h107 to GLV-1h109; GLV-1h68 as a control). The used cell lines included breast tumor (GL-101A), prostate adenocarcinoma (PC-3), colon carcinoma (HT-29) and pancreatic cancer (PANC-1) cell lines. After 48h post-infection, the supernatant of the infected cells was collected and cell pellets were harvested. The supernatant samples were centrifuged to remove cellular debris. Western blot analysis was performed as described in (A). The expressed scAb G6-FLAG (approximate size 32 kDa) was detected after 48h for all strains tested. Both GLV-1h108 ( $P_{SEL}$ ) and GLV1h109 ( $P_{SL}$ ) strains exhibited higher levels of expression of G6-FLAG as compared to strain GLV-



- 264 -

1h107 (P<sub>SE</sub>). The supernatant protein fractions contain a higher amount of protein compared to pellet protein fractions.

### Example 26

#### 5                    **Functional *in vitro* analysis of expressed G6-FLAG by ELISA**

In order to investigate the functional properties of the scAb G6-FLAG, CV-1 cells were infected with virus strains GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109, and the binding of expressed G6-FLAG, collected from cell supernatants, to human VEGF protein was analyzed by Enzyme-Linked ImmunoSorbent Assay (ELISA).

10    Uninfected CV-1 cells and CV-1 cells infected with GLV-1h68 were employed as negative controls. Microtiter plates were pre-incubated with human VEGF (Sigma) at a concentration of 1.8 µg/ml at 4°C overnight. Supernatant of CV-1 infected cells was sampled after 48h and centrifuged to remove cellular debris. The supernatant was then serially diluted and incubated at room temperature on the pre-coated  
15    microtiter plates. To detect functional binding, rabbit anti-DDDDK-tag and HRP-conjugated goat anti-rabbit-IgG antibodies were serially used. Chromogenic detection was achieved by using TMB (3,3',5,5'-Tetramethylbenzidine, Sigma), and the reaction was stopped with 2N hydrochloride acid. The blue color development was measured using a microtiter plate reader (Molecular Devices).

20            The supernatants of cells infected with the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108, and GLV-1h109 viruses contained functional G6-FLAG protein that bound to the VEGF-coated plates (Table 44). The concentration of G6-FLAG in the supernatants of the GLV-1h108 or GLV-1h109 infected cells was higher as compared to the GLV-1h107 infected cells. In the GLV-1h108 or GLV-1h109 samples, the supernatants needed to  
25    be diluted at least by a factor of 50 to achieve unsaturated detection. The controls of uninfected and GLV-1h68 infected cells show marginal or no binding affinity to the human VEGF-coated plate.

**Table 44**

**Analysis of functional binding of scAb G6-FLAG to human VEGF via ELISA**

30

Dilution	Absorbance OD <sub>450</sub>				
	GLV1h107	GLV1h108	GLV1h109	Uninfected CV-1	GLV1h68

- 265 -

<b>1:200</b>	0.0908	0.7637	0.8728	0.2330	0.1033
<b>1:100</b>	0.1363	1.0060	1.0220	0.0737	-0.0534
<b>1:50</b>	0.3209	1.3736	1.2368	-0.0498	-0.0097
<b>1:20</b>	0.5558	1.9924	1.8959	-0.0006	0.0119
<b>1:10</b>	0.9059	1.6135	1.8163	0.00607	0.0124
<b>1:5</b>	1.4289	2.0801	1.8982	-0.0012	0.0295
<b>1:2</b>	1.8765	2.0439	1.9194	0.00807	0.1445

**Example 27****Functional *in vitro* analysis of anti-angiogenic activity**

- 5        The anti-angiogenic effects of virally expressed scAb G6-FLAG can be studied in an *in vitro* model of angiogenesis. The murine endothelial cell line 2h11 (ATCC No. CRL-2163) can be employed in order to study inhibitory effects of the scAb G6-FLAG on tube formation *in vitro*. For the tube formation assays, the cells are trypsinized, counted and diluted to a concentration of about  $1 \times 10^5$  cells/ml.
- 10      Human VEGF (Sigma) is added to the cells (end concentration 40 ng/ml) and mixed. CV-1 cells are separately infected with GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 or GLV-1h109 (scAb G6-FLAG-expressing viruses) or control strain GLV-1h68. The supernatant of infected CV-1 cells is harvested and centrifuged in order to remove cellular debris. Several different volumes of the CV-1 cell supernatant are then added to the samples
- 15      of 2h11 endothelial cells. After a 5-10 min incubation, the suspension is added to the wells of a microtiter plate (24-well; 500  $\mu$ l/well) containing a layer of Matrigel™ (BD Biosciences; other matrices can also be employed to induce tube formation, for example, fibrin gels or gelatin matrices). Tube formation is monitored with a microscope over time (approx. 24h). The following controls can be used: 1) cells
- 20      incubated without addition of VEGF (negative control); 2) cells incubated with VEGF alone; or 3) cells incubated with VEGF and different concentrations of Avastin® (positive control). The latter control mimics the mode of action of the scAb G6-FLAG by binding VEGF and sequestering it away from its receptor on the endothelial cells.
- 25

**Example 28****Purification of G6-FLAG from supernatants of virus infected cells**

- 266 -

The virally expressed G6-FLAG protein can be purified for further analytical studies in order to reduce background activity of other factors present in the supernatant samples collected from virus infected cells. The scAb G6-FLAG protein was immunoprecipitated via the FLAG-tag using Sigma FLAG<sup>®</sup>-Tagged Protein

5 Immunoprecipitation Kit according to the manufacturer's recommendations. FLAG-tagged proteins were bound by an antibody, which is bound to an agarose resin. Following binding and washing off unbound supernatant proteins, the G6-FLAG protein was eluted from the resin by competitive binding with a short FLAG peptide. The isolated G6-FLAG can be kept in a native condition following purification.

10 The purified proteins were analyzed by Western blot detection and ELISA assays. G6-FLAG protein (32 kDa) was detected in the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 samples. FLAG-BAP Fusion Protein (55 kDa; Sigma) was employed as a positive control for the protein detection. No G6-FLAG protein was present in supernatant from control GLV-1h68 infected cells or in the PBS control. The

15 functionality of the purified G6-FLAG protein was analysed by ELISA assay (Table 45). The G6-FLAG protein isolated from the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 samples all exhibited functional binding of human VEGF. The sample derived from GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 infected CV-1 cells exhibited a higher absorbance as compared GLV-1h107 infected CV-1 cells due to higher amounts of protein in the

20 starting sample. This Western blot analysis showed a similar relative amounts of G6-FLAG in the GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 versus GLV-1h107 derived samples.

**Table 45**  
**Analysis of functional binding of purified scAb G6-FLAG to human VEGF via ELISA**

25

Dilution	Absorbance OD <sub>450</sub>			
	GLV1h107	GLV1h108	GLV1h109	GLV1h68
1:10	.2644	1.946	1.1976	-0.0106
1:50	0.0574	0.8853	1.0877	-0.0093
1:100	0.0167	0.6854	0.8257	0.0185
1:200	0.0111	0.4084	0.5142	0.006
1:500	0.0021	0.1911	0.3093	0.0067

**Example 29**

- 267 -

**Effects of scAb anti-VEGF Expressing Viruses on Breast Tumor Growth *In vivo***

The *in vivo* effects of virally expressed G6-FLAG protein on tumor growth were evaluated in a mouse model of breast cancer. The human breast cancer cell line GI-101A was used as a xenograft tumor model in nude mice. The *in vivo* effects of  
5 G6-FLAG expressing viruses GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 on tumor growth were compared to virus strains GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h72.

Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells (s.c. on the right lateral thigh;  $5 \times 10^6$  cells; GI-101A cells: Rumbaugh-Goodwin Institute for Cancer Research Inc. Plantation, FL; U.S. Pat.  
10 No. 5,693,533) into four- to five-week-old female nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN) (n = 4-5 per group). Twenty-three days following tumor cell implantation (approximate tumor volume 250 mm<sup>3</sup>), the groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100 µl of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-  
15 1h109. Tumor dimensions (mm) were measured using a digital caliper, and tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>) was calculated according to the formula: (height-5) x width x length)/2. The net body weight change over time was determined by weighing mice and subtracting the estimated tumor weight (1000 mm<sup>3</sup> = 1g) (Table 46). Net body weight change was calculated by the following formula: [(Gross weight - tumor  
20 weight) – (gross weight at T23 – tumor weight at T23)] / (gross weight at T23 – tumor weight at T23); “T23” means 23 days after tumor cell implantation, which was also the time of virus injection. The survival rate of mice treated with the different virus strains was monitored throughout the experiment.

Table 46 shows the median GI101A tumor volume over time after virus  
25 injection. In the untreated control mice, exponential tumor growth was observed. Mice were killed after tumor growth exceeded 2500 mm<sup>3</sup> (58 days after tumor implantation). In the GLV-1h68 treated mice, the tumor growth shows the typical three-phase growth pattern (Zhang *et al.* (2007) *Cancer Research* 67:20). During Phase I (growth phase), the tumor volume exceeds that of the untreated control group.  
30 The tumor growth then slows and arrests approximately 30 days following virus injection (inhibitory phase, Phase II). After an additional 10 days the inhibitory phase

- 268 -

is followed by the regression phase (Phase III) where the tumor volume decreases over time until the termination of the experiment at 100 days following tumor cell implantation. Mice infected with the virus strain GLV-1h72 show a different tumor growth pattern than GLV-1h68, which is characterized by a delayed onset of tumor growth with no apparent Phase I and a lower median tumor size in Phase II. The tumor regression rate (in Phase III) in GLV-1h72 treated mice is slower than in GLV-1h68 treated mice. The GLV-1h72 virus strain also is slightly more toxic *in vivo* than GLV-1h68 based on net body weight changes in nude mice after virus treatment (Table 47). Tumors in mice treated with the GLV-1h107 virus strain show a growth pattern similar to GLV-1h72 treated tumors with a delayed onset of tumor growth of a week compared to GLV-1h68 and an overall lower tumor size than in the GLV-1h68 treated group (Table 46). Forty-two days after virus injection, the regression phase starts with a rapid decrease of tumor volumes. After a week the tumor volumes reach a plateau. Due to the lower survival rate in this group, the number of mice fell below the statistically evaluable number. All mice in the group were killed one week before the endpoint of the experiment. Further outcome of tumor growth could not be monitored throughout this experiment. Toxicity studies as determined by net body weight change indicate that this virus strain can be more toxic than GLV-1h68, since the mice do not show significant weight gain over the course of the experiment (Table 47).

In mice treated with GLV-1h108, a more pronounced inhibition of tumor growth can be seen compared to GLV-1h68. Tumor growth was inhibited very early after injection and does not reach comparable tumor sizes as in GLV-1h68 treated mice in the inhibitory phase. Over the course of therapy, tumor sizes in GLV-1h108 treated mice are lower than in GLV-1h72 treated mice. The regression phase is characterized by a slower tumor volume decrease than in GLV-1h68 treated animals. At the endpoint of the experiment, median tumor volumes of the mice are similar to those of GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h72 treated mice.

The infection of tumor bearing mice with GLV-1h109 leads to a slower tumor growth as described for GLV-1h108 treated tumors, but the tumor growth pattern does not resemble the above described three phase pattern. In contrast, the growth of

- 269 -

the tumors in these mice can be divided into regression and progression phases of tumor growth. After a third regression phase, tumors start to grow again until the termination of the experiment.

Based on net body weight change data, both GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109  
5 viral strains show a slightly increased toxicity as compared to GLV-1h68. This correlates with a survival rate of 80% in GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 treated mice, as compared to a survival rate of 100% in GLV-1h68 treated animals.

The results of the tumor therapy experiment show that treatment of nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors with the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 virus  
10 strains all lead to a marked regression or delay of tumor growth *in vivo*. The varying ability of the GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 virus strains to mediate tumor growth inhibition *in vivo* correlates with the strength of the different promoters used to express the *G6-FLAG* gene. GLV-1h107 comprises the weakest promoter for the G6-FLAG expression, whereas GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109 both contain the  
15 stronger late promoters and show increased expression of G6-FLAG *in vitro*.

**Table 46**  
**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of G6-FLAG-expressing viruses into nude mice bearing GI-101A tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )					
	No treatment (PBS)	GLV 1h68	GLV 1h72	GLV 1h107	GLV 1h107	GLV 1h109
21	241.46	2121.975	225.51	218.655	1183.955	984.175
23	294.75	277.49	257.155	265.88	238.365	284.605
27	367.385	384.88	317.36	349.455	383.8	358.3
30	427.9	573.31	433.37	430.605	424.335	444.54
34	729.68	946.35	628.875	627.96	616.6	599.775
41	965.51	1098.17	1020.31	959.9	721.145	887.13
43	934.735	1229.04	981.53	985.135	767.175	678.125
48	1167.225	1416.89	1027.41	1109.095	925.975	739.355
51	1502.02	1664.53	1101.01	1032.565	911.125	793.465

- 270 -

55	2121.975	1652.39	1078.65	1183.955	984.175	1006.535
58	2578.15	1564.61	1004.88	1162.59	826.3	805.38
65		1353.9	1086.465	1094.915	795.92	683.36
72		1328.66	1043.175	747.63	745.995	968.455
79		1003.35	956.08	796.26	661.61	734.575
87		851.52	970.815	748.61	639.15	900.045
93		695.89	634.21	796.23	627.525	1108.115
100		452.82	464.01		436.38	1108.085

Table 47

Net animal body weight change (%) during the therapy of GI-101A tumors with  
G6-FLAG-expressing virus strains

5

Days post- implantation of tumor cells	Mean weight change in %					
	No treatment (PBS)	GLV 1h68	GLV 1h72	GLV 1h107	GLV 1h107	GLV 1h109
0	0	0	0	0	0	0
4	4.7	3.8	4.2	4.3	1.6	1
7	6.3	1.3	6	5.7	0.9	2.7
11	6.8	3.7	4.8	4.4	-0.5	3.7
18	3	6	7.1	1.9	0.7	0.2
21	8.3	5.9	12.3	4.8	-0.1	-3.9
25	13	12.2	13.1	7.4	4.1	4.9
28	12	14.6	9.3	6.1	1.7	6.4
32	8.2	13.8	14.6	6.2	5.1	6.1
35	11.1	15.5	12.2	5.5	8.4	11
38	13	14.1	13	8.2	9.6	11.5
42		16.1	6.8	4.8	11.3	11.4
49		16.3	12.6	5	10	9.4

- 271 -

56		18.8	14.1	2.6	12.1	10.4
63		20.6	4.8	9.3	15.7	13.9
70		22.5	15.5	2.3	16.3	13.8
77		23.3	10.5		14.8	10.9

The survival rate of mice treated with the different viruses was monitored for 100 days after the implantation of the tumor cells (77 days after injection of the viruses). All of the mice that were treated with GLV1h68 survived throughout the monitoring period. All off the mice treated with GLV1h107 survived until day 60 post implantation, at which point one mouse died. Another mouse in this group died at day 80, reducing the final survival rate to 60%. Of the mice that received GLV1h108, only one died (day 80 post implantation) resulting in a survival rate of 80%. An 80% survival rate also was observed in the group of mice that were treated with GLV1h109, with one mouse dying 50 days post transplantation.

### Example 30.

#### Effects of scAb anti-VEGF Expressing Viruses on pancreatic Tumor Growth *In vivo*

The *in vivo* effects of virally expressed G6-FLAG protein on tumor growth was evaluated in a mouse model of human pancreatic cancer. Tumors were established in nude mice by subcutaneously injecting  $5 \times 10^6$  cells MIA PaCa-2 human pancreatic carcinoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-1420) subcutaneously on right lateral thigh of male nude mice (Hsd:Athymic Nude-*Foxn1*<sup>nu</sup>; Harlan, Indianapolis, IN; n = 3-8 mice/group). Twenty-nine days following tumor cell implantation, groups of mice were injected intravenously [in 100  $\mu$ l of PBS, through femoral vein under anesthesia] with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h107 and GLV-1h109, respectively. The control group of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at 30, 36, 45, 52 and 58 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) are provided in Table 48.



- 272 -

GLV-1h109 exhibited the best antitumor efficacy, resulting in tumors that were 27% the volume of those seen in mice treated with GLV-1h68. GLV-1h109 also exhibited good antitumor activity, reducing the growth of tumors to half that seen in mice treated with GLV-1h68.

5

**Table 48**

**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different virus strains into nude mice bearing MIA-PaCa-2 tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	No Treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h107	GLV-1h109
30	904.8	761.1	711.7	565.6
36	1806.4	1482.15	1410.2	1170
45	4641.7	1223.1	1453.9	832
52	*	1175.85	1098.7	611.7
58	*	1073.15	927.7	568
69	*	942.55	709.25	487.9
80	*	1200.1	721.8	455.3
92	*	1720.15	850.45	471.6

10

**Example 31.**

**Effects of IL-6 and IL-24 Expressing Viruses on Human Melanoma Growth *In vivo***

Systemic virotherapy of human melanoma tumors in mice was assessed using three different human melanoma cells to establish tumors, and different viruses for treatment. Human 888-MEL cells, 1858-MEL cells or 1936-MEL cells (gift from Dr. F. Marincola at the National Institutes of Health, Bethesda, MD; see e.g. Wang *et al.*, (2006) J. Invest. Dermatol. 126:1372-1377) were implanted subcutaneously into the right lateral thigh of nude mice at a dose of  $1 \times 10^6$  cells,  $4 \times 10^6$  cells and  $1 \times 10^6$  cells, respectively, in 100  $\mu$ l PBS. GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90 or GLV-1h96 at a dose of  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU in 100  $\mu$ l PBS were injected i.v. into the femoral vein of mice when the tumor was established. This corresponded to injection of virus 51 days after implantation into mice bearing 888-MEL cells; 27 days after implantation into mice

- 273 -

bearing 1858-MEL cells; and 72 days after implantation in mice bearing 1936-MEL cells. The control groups of mice was not given any treatment. Tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ ) was measured at different time points post tumor cell injection. Results of median 888-MEL, 1858-MEL and 1936-MEL tumor volume are provided in Tables 49, 50 and 51, respectively.

Each virus provided for a decrease in median tumor volume, relative to uninfected control mice, in mice bearing 888-MEL tumors (Table 49). Mice that received no treatment were sacrificed due to excessively large tumors reaching a median volume of  $2166.8 \text{ mm}^3$  at 83 days post implantation. GLV-1h96, which expresses IL-24, exhibited the best tumor therapy efficacy with a median tumor volume that reached  $843.1 \text{ mm}^3$  110 days after implantation. GLV-1h68, which does not express an interleukin, and GLV1h90, which expresses IL-6, exhibited similar tumor therapy efficacy. Median tumor volumes at 110 days post implantation were  $1657.2 \text{ mm}^3$  in mice treated with GLV-1h68, and  $1829.4 \text{ mm}^3$  in mice treated with GLV-1h90.

Table 49

**Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different modified viruses into mice bearing 888-MEL tumors**

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume ( $\text{mm}^3$ )			
	No treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
50	144.75	292.4	153.7	460
57	217	463.65	256.9	732.5
63	438.05	667.35	381.2	895.2
66	549.45	559.85	465.8	763.2
71	945.55	653.95	446.3	668.6
76	1438.4	712	510	657.2
83	2166.3	669	783.2	582.6
91	*	677.4	925	636.9
100	*	926.4	1055.7	698

- 274 -

105	*	1272.95	1318.9	698.9
111	*	1657.2	1829.4	843.1

The 1858-MEL tumors of mice treated with the different viruses were markedly smaller in volume relative to uninfected control mice (Table 50). GLV-1h96 again exhibited the best tumor therapy efficacy with a median tumor volume that reached only 13.3 mm<sup>3</sup> 59 days after implantation, which is approximately 14% of the volume of tumors in untreated mice at the same time point. Treatment with GLV-1h68 also slowed tumor growth in mice, compared to untreated mice. By day 59, mice treated with GLV-1h68 had median tumor volumes of 182.4 mm<sup>3</sup>, compared to 900 mm<sup>3</sup> in untreated mice. GLV-1h90 exhibited slightly less tumor therapy efficacy compared to the other viruses (median tumor volume of 245.65 mm<sup>3</sup> at day 59), but still slowed tumor growth compared to no treatment.

Table 50

Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of different modified viruses into mice bearing 1858-MEL tumors

Days post-implantation of tumor cells	Median tumor volume (mm <sup>3</sup> )			
	No treatment	GLV-1h68	GLV-1h90	GLV-1h96
27	81.45	108.95	109.9	105.8
34	148.8	204	161.3	171.6
39	206.05	217.6	182.4	178.2
45	356.9	202.5	216.8	171.3
52	695.6	182.9	239.8	148.6
59	900	182.4	245.65	130.3

Tumor therapy efficacy of GLV-1h68 and GLV-1h96 also was assessed in mice bearing 1936-MEL tumors (Table 51). In this experiment, GLV-1h68 exhibited the best efficacy, slowing tumor growth by approximately 50% compared to that

- 275 -

observed in untreated mice (median tumor volume of 1572.6 mm<sup>3</sup> at day 118 compared to 3175 mm<sup>3</sup>). GLV-1h96 also exhibited some tumor therapy efficacy, resulting in median tumor volumes of 2878.4 mm<sup>3</sup> in mice treated with this virus.

**Table 51**

5           **Median tumor volumes at different time points after i.v. injection of  
different modified viruses into mice bearing 1936-MEL tumors**

<b>Days post- implantation of tumor cells</b>	<b>Median tumor volume (mm<sup>3</sup>)</b>		
	<b>No treatment</b>	<b>GLV- 1h68</b>	<b>GLV- 1h96</b>
<b>72</b>	477.7	399.1	650.95
<b>80</b>	581.7	745.8	854.9
<b>85</b>	725.1	876.7	1043.6
<b>91</b>	1024.3	1088.8	1147.3
<b>100</b>	1429	1209	1634.1
<b>105</b>	1918.15	1290.1	1934.95
<b>111</b>	2664.6	1425.9	2532.65
<b>118</b>	3175	1572.6	2878.4

**Example 32**

**Effects of different doses of IL-6 and IL-24 Expressing Viruses on the Health of  
Mice**

10

The effects of different doses of virally expressed IL-6 and IL-24 on the health of mice was evaluated by assessing body weight. Groups of 4-5 week old C57BL/6 mice were injected intravenously [in 100 µl of PBS, through tail vein] with  $5 \times 10^7$  PFU,  $1 \times 10^8$  PFU or  $2 \times 10^8$  PFU of GLV-1h68, GLV-1h90 (expressing IL-6) and  
15 GLV-1h96 (expressing IL-24), respectively. Body weight was measured at 30, 36, 45, 52 and 58 days post-cancer cell injection. Results of median body weight (gm) are provided in Table 52. None of the viruses appeared to have a detrimental affect on the body weight of the mice.

**Table 52**

- 276 -

**Median body weight at different time points after i.v. injection of  
different modified viruses into mice**

Days post injection of virus	Median body weight (gm)								
	GLV-1h68			GLV-1h90			GLV-1h96		
	$5 \times 10^7$	$1 \times 10^8$	$2 \times 10^8$	$5 \times 10^7$	$1 \times 10^8$	$2 \times 10^8$	$5 \times 10^7$	$1 \times 10^8$	$2 \times 10^8$
0	17.1	17.6	17.3	16.6	16.75	16.4	16.5	16.65	15.8
6	18.4	19.4	18.75	18.5	17.95	18.6	17.8	17.85	18.2
14	19.3	19.4	19.4	19.8	19.2	19.25	18.4	18.25	19.3
21	20.4	20.5	21	21	20.45	20.85	20	19.25	20.4
28	21.3	21.1	21.75	20.8	21.65	21.8	20.5	20.1	21.7
42	22.4	22.2	22.05	21.6	21.55	22.55	21.1	21	22
59	24.3	23	23.7	22.2	22.25	23.1		21.8	24.3

**Example 33**

**5 Infectivity of GLV-1h68 in normal and tumor fibroblast cells**

The infectivity of GLH-1h68 in cultures of normal and tumor fibroblast cells was assessed and compared by microscopy and virus titration. Primary human dermal fibroblasts (hDF) were purchased from Cell Applications, Inc., and grown in Fibroblast Growth Medium (Cell Application, Inc., San Diego, CA). HT-1080 (pLEIN) cells were derived from HT-1080, a human fibrosarcoma cell line (CCL-121, ATCC) by transfection with a GFP-expressing plasmid. HT-1080 (pLEIN) cells were grown in DMEM (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA) with 10% fetal bovine serum (FBS; Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). hDF and HT-1080(pLEIN) cells ( were seeded at  $2 \times 10^5$  cells/well in 24-well plates were infected the following days with a series of 10-fold dilutions of GLV-1h68 in duplicate. Two days post infection the plaques were either visualized under a fluorescence microscope ( Olympus 1X71) using a FITC filter or stained with 0.13% crystal violet to determine the viral titers in both cell lines. Both the size and number of the plaques in each cell line was assessed.

The infectivity of GLV-1h68 in human primary dermal fibroblast cells (hDF cells) was approximately 200 times lower than that observed in the human fibrosarcoma cell line (HT-1080(pLEIN)). The virus titer from hDF cells was 8.5

- 277 -

$\times 10^6 \pm 1.4 \times 10^6$  PFU, compared to  $1.7 \times 10^9 \pm 3.5 \times 10^6$  PFU from HT-1080(pLEIN) cells. GLV-1h68 also was observed to form smaller plaques in hDF cells compared to HT-1080(pLEIN) cells. These results reflect the selective nature of GLV-1h68 cells for tumor cells versus normal healthy cells.

5

### Example 34

#### Effect of attenuation of viruses on infectivity in primary fibroblast cells

To investigate the effect of attenuation of viruses on their infectivity in non-tumor cells, viral growth curves of different viruses in a primary fibroblast cells were determined. Primary murine embryonic fibroblast (MEF) cells were cultured in 12-well plates to  $1.1 \times 10^5$  cells/well and infected at a multiplicity of infection (MOI) of 0.01 with  $1 \times 10^3$  PFU of LVP, WR, GLV-1d27, GLV-1f65, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71 and dark 8.1, respectively. After 1 hr at 37°C, the inoculum was aspirated and the cell monolayers were washed twice with 2ml of DPBS (Mediatech, Inc., Herndon, VA). Two ml of DMEM containing 2% fetal bovine serum (FBS) were added into each well. Three wells of cells from each virus infection were harvested at 24, 48 and 72 hours post infection. The harvested cells were subjected to three freeze-thaw cycles and sonicated three times for 1 minute at full power before the amount of virus in the lysates was determined by titration. The virus was titrated in CV-1 cells in duplicate. Results of the virus titer are provided in Table 53.

Both the LVP and WR strains established an infection in the primary MEF cells and increased viral titers by 2 to 3 log over 72 hours. In contrast none of the attenuated viruses (GLV-1d27, GLV-1f65, GLV-1h68, GLV-1h71 or dark 8.1) could replicate in MEF cells, and by 72 hours, none of the attenuated viruses were detectable in cultures of primary murine embryonic fibroblasts. The loss of infectivity of GLV-1h68 and its parental (GLV-1d27 and GLV-1f65) and derived viruses in non-tumor cells indicates that these viruses have reduced toxicity compared LVP. This data supports the observations that *in vivo* administration of these attenuated viruses does not result in viral replication throughout the body (see e.g. Example 3), but rather just in tumor cells, thereby reducing *in vivo* toxicity.

Table 53

- 278 -

**Virus Replication in Primary Murine Embryonic Fibroblast (MEF) Cells**

Hours post infect.	Log Virus Titer (PFU/mL)						
	LIVP	WR	GLV- 1d27	GLV- 1f65	GLV- 1h68	GLV- 1h71	dark 8.1
0	3.041	3.041	3.041	3.041	3.041	3.041	3.041
24	4.014	4.754	2.009	0.784	0.784	1.091	1.498
48	4.963	5.947	0.000	1.133	1.133	0.932	1.780
72	5.292	6.273	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000	0.000

**Example 35****Replication of GLV-1h68 in cat and dog tumor cells**

- 5 To determine whether virotherapy with GLV-1h68 and its derivatives could be used to treat animals other than humans, the replicative ability of GLV-1h68 in dog and cat tumor cells was assessed.

**A. Replication of GLV-1h68 in FC77.T feline fibrosarcoma cells**

- 10 The ability of GLV-1h68 to replicate in FC77.T feline fibrosarcoma cells *in vitro* was investigated. FC77.T feline fibrosarcoma cells (ATCC No. CRL-6105) were cultured *in vitro*, a process that results in two populations of cells: adherent cells and suspension cells in clusters. The culture was infected with  $4 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 at an MOI of 0.01, and the infected cells were harvested at 24, 48 and 72 hours post infection. The amount of virus in cell lysates was determined by titration of the virus in CV-1 cells. The level of GLV-1h68 infection in the adherent and suspended cell populations also was monitored by detection of the fluorescent signal emitted by the virally-encoded GFP.

- 15 It was observed in the *in vitro* GLV-1h68 replication study that cells in suspension displayed green fluorescence, indicating GLV-1h68 replication in this cell population. In contrast, no fluorescence was observed in adherent cells. Viral titers in the cell lysates of FC77.T feline fibrosarcoma cells dropped from  $4 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 to undetectable levels by 24 hours post infection, indicating that this virus does not replicate well in these particular feline fibrosarcoma cells.

**B. Replication of GLV-1h68 in D17 dog osteosarcoma cells**

- 279 -

The ability of GLV-1h68 to replicate in D17 dog osteosarcoma cells (ATCC No. CCL-183) *in vitro*, was investigated and compared its replication in GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells. Both cell types were cultured *in vitro* and infected with  $4 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 at an MOI of 0.01. The infected cells were harvested at 24, 48 and 72 hours post infection and the amount of virus in cell lysates was determined by titration in CV-1 cells. The level of GLV-1h68 infection in the two cell cultures also was monitored by detection of the fluorescent signal emitted by the virally-encoded GFP.

It was observed in the *in vitro* GLV-1h68 replication study that D17 dog osteosarcoma cells displayed green fluorescence, indicating GLV-1h68 replication in this cell population. Viral titration indicated that GLV-1h68 replication in D17 dog osteosarcoma cells was equally as efficient as that observed in GI-101A human breast carcinoma cells, reaching median log titers of 6.2 in D17 cells compared to 5.9 in GI-101A cells by 72 hours post infection.

These studies in cat and dog tumor cells indicate that GLV-1h68 can replicate in animal cells other than human cells, and, therefore, that GLV-1h68 and its derivatives have the potential to be used in virotherapy treatments in animals other than humans.

20

### Example 36

#### Cellular Immunity to GLV-1h68 in mice

The ability of GLV-1h68 to induce a cellular immune response in mice was investigated by evaluating the cytotoxic T cell (CTL) response in *in vitro* chromium release CTL assays. Preliminary development experiments (Experiments 1 through 4) using only a few mice each were performed to determine the appropriate conditions and parameters for a larger study (Experiment 5) involving more animals. A detailed description of the methods for the CTL assay used in these experiments is provided in section 5, below.

30



- 280 -

### 1. Experiment 1.

To determine the appropriate length of time for infection of target cells for the CTL assay, mice treated with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 (n=3) on day 1 and 14, by intravenous injection through the tail vein, and untreated control mice (n=2), were sacrificed on day 21. The effector cell splenocytes were isolated from the spleens and were mixed with  $1 \times 10^4$  MC57G target cells (ATCC No. CRL-2295) that had previously been infected with GLV-1h68 either for 2 hours (MOI of 5) with concurrent  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  labeling, or infected overnight (MOI of 5) followed by a 2 hour  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  labeling incubation. The ratios at which the effector and target cells were mixed for the CTL assay were 3:1, 10:1, 30:1 and 90:1, and the cells were incubated for 4 hours. Following incubation, the cells were washed and lysed and the supernatant was assayed for radioactivity (in counts per minute) using a scintillation counter. It was observed that the CTL response in mice treated twice with GLV-1h68 was stronger when the target cells were infected for 2 hours (approximately 45-60% specific lysis at an E:T ratio of 90:1) compared with overnight infection (approximately 25-35% specific lysis). Splenocytes from untreated mice showed negligible specific lysis. These data indicate that a 2 hour infection with an MOI of 5 is appropriate for use in subsequent experiments.

### 2. Experiment 2

To assess the effect of restimulation of effector cells *in vitro*, a portion of the splenocytes from the Experiment 1 were restimulated *in vitro* by the addition of GLV-1h68 at an MOI of 0.25 for 1 week before they were used in a CTL assay with MC57G target cells that had been infected for 2 hours with GLV1h68 at an MOI of 5 and labeled with  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ . The CTL response was greater when effector cells were used after a 1 week restimulation, compared to no restimulation. Effector cells from mice treated twice with GLV-1h68, and restimulated for 1 week *in vitro* exhibited 50-70% specific lysis at an E:T ratio of 30:1, compared to approximately 25% specific lysis using cells that had not been restimulated (from Experiment 1). The CTL response from effector cells from untreated mice that had been restimulated for 1 week *in vitro* also increased, reaching approximately 15% specific lysis at an E:T ratio of 30:1.

- 281 -

Recovery of cells, however, was poor, which could render this method inappropriate for some studies.

### 3. Experiment 3

To determine the effect of a freeze-thaw cycle on splenocytes prior to use in the CTL assay, splenocytes isolated from mice treated once with GLV-1h68 were frozen immediately on isolation and stored frozen in liquid nitrogen vapor. The cells were then thawed and restimulated with GLV-1h68 at an MOI of 0.25 for 1 week before they were used as effectors in a CTL assay with MC57G target cells that had been infected for 2 hours with GLV1h68 at an MOI of 5 and labeled with  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ . Freezing of the splenocytes from GLV-1h68 treated mice resulted in specific lysis of up to 100% at an E:T ratio of 60:1. After thawing and 1 week of restimulation, however, no splenocytes were recovered from untreated animals. Thus, *in vitro* restimulation was not included in subsequent experiments.

### 4. Experiment 4

In a fourth preliminary experiment, splenocytes from animals treated either once or twice with GL-ONC1 isolated and subjected to a freeze thaw cycle prior to incubation in a CTL assay with MC57G target cells that had been infected with GLV-1h68 and labeled with  $^{51}\text{Cr}$ . The CTL response after a freeze-thaw cycle (and no *in vitro* restimulation) was greater in mice treated twice with GLV-1h68 (approximately 20% specific lysis at an E:T ratio of 60:1) compared to mice treated only once with GLV-1h68 (less than 5% specific lysis at an E:T ratio of 60:1). This data indicates that it may be more appropriate to test fresh instead of freeze-thawed splenocytes from animals treated once with GLV-1h68.

### 5. Experiment 5

Experiments 1-4 were used to establish appropriate conditions and parameters for the following larger study of the cellular immune response in mice treated with GLV-1h68. Ten 10 week old C57/BL6 mice (5 male and 5 female) were injected intravenously into the tail vein with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU of GLV-1h68 in 500  $\mu\text{l}$  PBS. A control group of 10 C57/BL6 mice (5 male and 5 female) were treated with PBS alone. Twenty-one days after injection, the mice were sacrificed and the spleens were removed aseptically. The excess fat was trimmed off the spleens and the spleens

- 282 -

were transferred to 5 ml tubes containing 2-3 ml sterile culture medium and stored on ice for transport.

To prepare the effector cells for the CTL assay, single cell suspensions of the mouse splenocytes were prepared before the cells were filtered through a 40-70  $\mu\text{m}$  sterile cell strainer and centrifuged at 250-350  $\times g$  for 8 to 10 mins at 15-20°C. The supernatant was aspirated and the cells were resuspended at  $9 \times 10^6$  cells/ml in pre-warmed effector medium (RPMI-1640 with 10% heat inactivated FBS, 55  $\mu\text{M}$  2-mercaptoethanol, 1% GlutaMAX (Invitrogen, CA) and 1mM sodium pyruvate). The cells were further diluted to  $3 \times 10^6$  cells/ml,  $1 \times 10^6$  cells/ml and  $3 \times 10^5$  cells/ml.

To prepare the target cells for the CTL assay,  $3 \times 10^5$  cells/ml MC57G cells (ATCC No. CRL-2295) were cultured in a tissue culture flask overnight in target medium (EMEM with 10% heat inactivated FBS, 100  $\mu\text{M}$  non-essential amino acids, 1% GlutaMAX and 1mM sodium pyruvate). A stock of  $1 \times 10^8$  PFU/ml of GLV-1h68 was prepared in target medium, and a stock of 1 mCi/ml of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  also was prepared. The MC57G cells were harvested and  $1.5 \times 10^6$  cells were resuspended in 0.35 ml target medium in a 15 ml tube, to which was added 0.075 ml of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  and 0.075 ml of GLV-1h68. Uninfected target cells also were prepared as controls by adding 0.075 ml of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  and 0.075 ml of target medium (no virus). The target cells were then incubated for 2 hours at 37°C. Following incubation the cells were washed three times in effector medium and counted.

The CTL assay was initiated by adding  $1 \times 10^4$  target cells (infected or uninfected) in 100  $\mu\text{l}$  to the wells of a 96 well plate. An equal volume of effector cells were then added to each well such that the effector:target cell (E:T) ratios were 30:1, 90:1, 270:1 and 540:1. Additional controls to assess maximum lysis and spontaneous release of  $^{51}\text{Cr}$  were included in the assay by plating 100  $\mu\text{l}$  target cells with 100  $\mu\text{l}$  2% lysis buffer (2% Triton X-100 in effector medium), and 100  $\mu\text{l}$  target cells with 100  $\mu\text{l}$  effector medium, respectively. A further positive control using pooled splenocytes (after a freeze-thaw cycle) from mice treated twice (on day 1 and day 14) with  $5 \times 10^6$  PFU GLV-1h68 also was included, using E:T ratios of 3.3:1, 10:1, 30:1 and 90:1. The 96 well plates were centrifuged at 150 $\times g$  for 5 minutes and then incubated at 37°C for 4 hours. The plates were again centrifuged at 150 $\times g$  for 5

- 283 -

minutes and 50 µl supernatant from each well was added to the corresponding well of a 96 well plate containing 150 µl scintillation fluid/well. The radioactivity (counts per minute (CPM)) was measured using a scintillation counter. The percentage specific lysis of target cells for each effector:target ratio are provided in Table 54.

5 Statistical analysis of the data was performed using a t-test.

The mean percent specific lysis using effector cells from GLV-1h68 treated animals was greater than that of mice treated with PBS at each effector:target ratio (values ranged from 0.3% to 3.8% in controls and 2.1% to 6.4% in GLV-1h68 treated animals). A very strong CTL response was elicited in mouse 18, reaching levels  
10 approximately twice that of other mice administered GLV-1h68. Statistical analysis revealed that the increases in CTL response in mice that received a single GLV-1h68 injection compared to untreated mice were statistically significant at each effector:target ratio ( probability value (p) = 0.0016 for the E:T ratio of 30:1; p = 0.0010 for the E:T ratio of 90:1; p = 0.0021 for the E:T ratio of 270:1; and p = 0.0315  
15 for the E:T ratio of 540:1). When animal 18 (a putative outlier, discussed above) was excluded from analysis, mean percent specific lysis using effector cells from GLV-1h68 treated animals remained greater than that for cells from control animals, but the differences were statistically significant only at the 30:1, 90:1, and 270:1 effector:target ratio.

20 As shown in Table 54, there was more robust CTL activity using the positive control cells, which were obtained from mice treated twice with GLV-1h68. Percent specific lysis values in this cell population ranged from 5.0% (3.3:1 effector:target ratio) to 37.0% (90:1 effector:target ratio).

This data indicates that intravenous administration of GLV-1h68 to mice  
25 elicits a specific cytotoxic T cell response that can be readily detected using standard cellular immunity assays.

**Table 54**

**Cytotoxic T cell activity in mice treated with GLV-1h68**

Animal	Treatment	Percentage specific lysis	
		Infected target cells	Uninfected target cells

- 284 -

		<b>E:T 30:1</b>	<b>E:T 90:1</b>	<b>E:T 270:1</b>	<b>E:T 540:1</b>	<b>E:T 270:1</b>
1	PBS	0.2%	0.8%	3.3%	6.2%	3.2%
2	PBS	1.1%	1.1%	3.8%	5.9%	2.6%
3	PBS	0.9%	0.7%	2.2%	4.2%	1.4%
4	PBS	0.6%	1.6%	3.3%	4.8%	1.6%
5	PBS	0.5%	0.5%	2.2%	4.1%	1.3%
6	PBS	0.0%	1.2%	3.0%	4.8%	1.9%
7	PBS	0.7%	0.9%	3.1%	4.5%	2.8%
8	PBS	1.0%	-0.1%	0.4%	0.8%	2.3%
9	PBS	-0.9%	-0.1%	1.4%	1.0%	2.6%
10	PBS	-0.9%	-0.3%	1.3%	1.3%	1.2%
Group mean		0.3%	0.6%	2.4%	3.8%	2.1%
Standard deviation		0.7%	0.6%	1.1%	2.0%	0.7%
11	GLV-1h68	0.3%	1.1%	2.9%	3.2%	1.8%
12	GLV-1h68	0.8%	3.1%	4.5%	4.7%	1.9%
13	GLV-1h68	2.2%	3.1%	5.2%	4.2%	3.5%
14	GLV-1h68	1.3%	2.9%	8.0%	8.3%	2.5%
15	GLV-1h68	1.5%	4.5%	5.5%	6.5%	2.6%
16	GLV-1h68	2.0%	3.2%	4.3%	4.4%	1.9%
17	GLV-1h68	2.9%	4.8%	7.6%	7.1%	2.7%
18	GLV-1h68	5.1%	11.3%	14.6%	11.7%	3.5%
19	GLV-1h68	2.3%	2.6%	4.0%	4.1%	1.7%
20	GLV-1h68	2.6%	4.6%	7.1%	7.5%	2.6%
Group mean <sup>a</sup>		2.1%	4.1%	6.4%	6.2%	2.5%
Standard deviation <sup>a</sup>		1.3%	2.8%	3.3%	2.6%	0.6%
Group mean <sup>b</sup>		1.8%	3.3%	5.5%	5.6%	2.4%
Standard deviation <sup>b</sup>		0.8%	1.2%	1.8%	1.8%	0.6%
		<b>E:T</b>	<b>E:T</b>	<b>E:T</b>	<b>E:T</b>	<b>E:T</b>

- 285 -

	3.3:1	10:1	30:1	90:1	290:1
Positive control	5.0%	9.8%	20.0%	37.0%	1.9%

<sup>a</sup> Including all animals (11–20).<sup>b</sup> Excluding animal 18.<sup>c</sup> Pooled splenocytes (after freeze-thaw cycle) from animals treated twice with GL-ONC1.

- 5            Since modifications will be apparent to those of skill in this art, it is intended that this invention be limited only by the scope of the appended claims.

- 286 -

**WHAT IS CLAIMED:**

1. A recombinant vaccinia virus that is selected from among GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89,  
5 GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.
2. A recombinant vaccinia virus comprising, a modified hemagglutinin (HA) gene, thymidine kinase (*TK*) gene, and *F14.5L* gene, wherein:  
one or more of the modifications comprises insertion of a heterologous  
10 non-coding nucleic acid molecule into the *HA* gene locus, *TK* gene locus and/or *F14.5L* gene locus; and  
a functional HA, TK, and F14.5L polypeptide is not expressed.
3. The recombinant vaccinia virus of claim 2 that is a Lister strain.
4. The recombinant vaccinia virus of claim 3 that is LIVP.
- 15 5. The recombinant vaccinia virus of any of claims 1-4 that is selected from among GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89.
6. A recombinant Lister strain vaccinia virus that encodes a diagnostic or therapeutic protein, wherein the diagnostic or therapeutic protein is selected from  
20 among a ferritin, CBG99-mRFP1, plasminogen kringle 5 domain, sIL-6R/IL-6, interleukin-24, tTF-RGD and an anti-VEGF single chain antibody..
7. A recombinant Lister strain vaccinia virus that comprises replacement of the A34R gene with the A34R gene from another vaccinia virus strain.
8. The recombinant vaccinia virus of claim 7, wherein the A34R gene is  
25 replaced by the A34R gene from vaccinia IHD-J strain.
9. The recombinant vaccinia virus of any of claims 7-9, wherein the replacement increases the extracellular enveloped virus (EEV) form of vaccinia virus and/or increases the resistance of the virus to virus neutralizing antibodies.
10. A recombinant Lister strain vaccinia virus that comprises deletion of  
30 the A35R gene.

- 287 -

11. The recombinant virus of any of claims 2-4 and 6-10 that is an LIVP strain.

12. A recombinant virus of any of claims 1-10, further comprising one or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules that encode(s) a diagnostic and/or  
5 therapeutic protein.

13. The recombinant virus of claim 12, further comprising a nucleic acid molecule that encodes a diagnostic protein that is a detectable protein or a protein that induces a detectable signal.

14. The recombinant virus of claim 13, wherein the diagnostic protein is  
10 selected from among a luciferase, a fluorescent protein, an iron storage molecule, an iron transporter, an iron receptor or a protein that binds a contrasting agent, chromophore or a compound or detectable ligand that can be detected.

15. The recombinant virus of claim 12, wherein therapeutic protein is selected from among a cytokine, a chemokine, an immunomodulatory molecule, an  
15 antigen, a single chain antibody, antisense RNA, prodrug converting enzyme, siRNA, angiogenesis inhibitor, a toxin, an antitumor oligopeptides, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimetabolic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer polypeptide antibiotic, and tissue factor.

16. A combination, comprising a recombinant virus of any of claims 1-15 and an anticancer compound.

20 17. The combination of claim 16, wherein the anti-cancer compound selected from among a cytokine, a chemokine, a growth factor, a photosensitizing agent, a toxin, an anti-cancer antibiotic, a chemotherapeutic compound, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a signaling modulator, an anti-metabolite, an anti-cancer vaccine, an anti-cancer oligopeptide, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an  
25 antimetabolic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer antibody, an anti-cancer antibiotic, an immunotherapeutic agent, a bacterium and a combination of any of the preceding thereof.

18. The combination of claim 16, wherein the anti-cancer compound is selected from among cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR  
30 antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.



- 288 -

19. The combination of claim 16 or claim 18, wherein the anti-cancer compound and virus are formulated as a single composition or separately in two compositions.

20. A kit, comprising the combination of claim 16 or claim 18; and  
5 optional instructions for administration of the composition(s).

21. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a recombinant virus of any of claims 1-15 in a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

22. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21 that is formulated for local or systemic administration.

10 23. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 21 or claim 22, comprising two or more viruses.

24. The pharmaceutical composition of any of claims 21-23, formulated for administration as a vaccine.

25. The pharmaceutical composition of claim 24, wherein the vaccine is a  
15 smallpox vaccine.

26. A method of treatment, comprising administering the pharmaceutical composition of any of claims 21-23 to a subject for the treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis.

27. The method of claim 26, further comprising administration of an anti-  
20 cancer agent.

28. The method of claim 27, wherein the anticancer agent is selected from among a cytokine, a chemokine, a growth factor, a photosensitizing agent, a toxin, an anti-cancer antibiotic, a chemotherapeutic compound, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a signaling modulator, an anti-metabolite, an anti-cancer vaccine, an anti-  
25 cancer oligopeptide, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimitotic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer antibody, an anti-cancer antibiotic, an immunotherapeutic agent, hyperthermia or hyperthermia therapy, a bacterium, radiation therapy and a combination of any of the preceding thereof.

29. The method of claim 27, wherein the anticancer agent is selected from  
30 among cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

- 289 -

30. The method of any of claims 27-29, wherein the anticancer agent is administered simultaneously or intermittently.

31. The method of any of claims 27-30, wherein the virus and the anticancer agent are administered as a single composition or as two compositions.

5 32. The method of any of claims 26-31, further comprising administration of an anti-viral agent.

33. The method of claim 32, wherein the antiviral agent is selected from among cidofovir, alkoxyalkyl esters of cidofovir, Gleevec, gancyclovir, acyclovir, and ST-26.

10 34. The method of any of claims 26-33, wherein the tumor in human is selected from among a bladder tumor, breast tumor, prostate tumor, carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, biliary tract cancer, bladder cancer, bone cancer, brain cancer, CNS cancer, glioma tumor, cervical cancer, choriocarcinoma, colon and rectum cancer, connective tissue cancer, cancer of the digestive system, endometrial cancer,  
15 esophageal cancer, eye cancer, cancer of the head and neck, gastric cancer, intra-epithelial neoplasm, kidney cancer, larynx cancer, leukemia, liver cancer, lung cancer, lymphoma, Hodgkin's lymphoma, Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, melanoma, myeloma, neuroblastoma, oral cavity cancer, ovarian cancer, pancreatic cancer, retinoblastoma, rhabdomyosarcoma, rectal cancer, renal cancer, cancer of the respiratory system,  
20 sarcoma, skin cancer, stomach cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, uterine cancer, and cancer of the urinary system.

35. The method of claim 26-33, wherein the tumor is an ovarian tumor, a breast tumor, a pancreatic tumor, a colon tumor, or a lung tumor.

25 36. The method of claim any of claims 26-33, wherein the tumor in a non-human subject is selected from among lymphosarcoma, osteosarcoma, mammary tumors, mastocytoma, brain tumor, melanoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, carcinoid lung tumor, bronchial gland tumor, bronchiolar adenocarcinoma, fibroma, myxochondroma, pulmonary sarcoma, neurosarcoma, osteoma, papilloma, retinoblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma, Wilm's tumor, Burkitt's lymphoma, microglioma,  
30 neuroblastoma, osteoclastoma, oral neoplasia, fibrosarcoma, osteosarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma, genital squamous cell carcinoma, transmissible venereal tumor,

- 290 -

- testicular tumor, seminoma, Sertoli cell tumor, hemangiopericytoma, histiocytoma, chloroma, granulocytic sarcoma, corneal papilloma, corneal squamous cell carcinoma, hemangiosarcoma, pleural mesothelioma, basal cell tumor, thymoma, stomach tumor, adrenal gland carcinoma, oral papillomatosis, hemangioendothelioma, cystadenoma,
- 5 follicular lymphoma, intestinal lymphosarcoma, fibrosarcoma, and pulmonary squamous cell carcinoma, leukemia, hemangiopericytoma, ocular neoplasia, preputial fibrosarcoma, ulcerative squamous cell carcinoma, preputial carcinoma, connective tissue neoplasia, mastocytoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, lymphoma, pulmonary adenomatosis, pulmonary sarcoma, Rous sarcoma, reticulo-endotheliosis,
- 10 fibrosarcoma, nephroblastoma, B-cell lymphoma, lymphoid leukosis, retinoblastoma, hepatic neoplasia, lymphosarcoma, plasmacytoid leukemia, swimbladder sarcoma (in fish), caseous lymphadenitis, lung carcinoma, insulinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, neuroma, pancreatic islet cell tumor, gastric MALT lymphoma and gastric adenocarcinoma.
- 15 37. The method of any of claims 26-36, wherein the pharmaceutical composition is administered systemically, intravenously, intraarterially, intratumorally, endoscopically, intralesionally, intramuscularly, intradermally, intraperitoneally, intravesicularly, intraarticularly, intrapleurally, percutaneously, subcutaneously, orally, parenterally, intranasally, intratracheally, by inhalation,
- 20 intracranially, intraprostatically, intravitreally, topically, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally.
38. The method of claim 37, wherein the pharmaceutical composition is administered intravenously.
- 25 39. The method of any of claims 26-38, wherein administering the pharmaceutical composition a subject causes:
- a) tumor growth to stop or be delayed; and/or
  - b) tumor volume to decrease; and/or
  - c) elimination of the tumor from the subject.
- 30 40. The method of any of claims 26-39, wherein the subject is a human or a non-human animal.

- 291 -

41. A method of detecting one or more viruses in a subject, comprising administering the pharmaceutical composition of any of claims 21-23 to a subject, wherein the pharmaceutical composition comprises one or more viruses that expresses a detectable protein or a protein that induces a detectable signal; and  
5 detecting the detectable protein or a protein that induces a detectable signal, whereby detection indicates the presence of the virus in the subject.

42. A method of detecting a tumor in a subject, comprising administering the pharmaceutical composition of any of claims 21-23 to a subject, wherein the pharmaceutical composition comprises one more viruses that  
10 expresses a detectable protein or a protein that induces of inducing a detectable signal; and  
detecting the detectable protein or a protein that induces a detectable signal, whereby detection indicates the presence of a tumor in the subject.

43. The method of claim 41 or claim 42, wherein detection is by  
15 fluorescence imaging, magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), single-photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), positron emission tomography (PET), scintigraphy, gamma camera, a  $\beta^+$  detector, a  $\gamma$  detector, or a combination thereof.

44. The method of any of claims 41-43, wherein two or more detectable proteins are detected.

20 45. The method of claim 44, wherein two or more fluorescent or luminescent proteins are detected, wherein each protein is detected at a different wavelength.

46. A vaccine, comprising a comprising a recombinant vaccinia virus of any of claims of any of claims 1-15.

25 47. A method of vaccination, comprising administering the vaccine of claim 46 to a subject.

48. A combination, comprising:  
a recombinant vaccinia virus; and  
an anticancer compound selected from among cisplatin, carboplatin,  
30 gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

- 292 -

49. The combination of claim 48, wherein the virus is a Lister strain vaccinia virus.

50. The combination of claim 49, wherein the virus is selected from among GLV-1h68, GLV-1h22, GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73,  
5 GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.

51. The combination of any of claims 48-50, wherein the virus and the  
10 anti-cancer compound are formulated as a single composition or separately in two compositions.

52. The combination of any of claims 48-51, further comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier.

53. A method of treating a tumor, cancer or metastasis in a subject,  
15 comprising administering to a subject a vaccinia virus and an anticancer compound selected from among cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

54. The method of claim 53, wherein the virus is a Lister strain vaccinia virus.

20 55. The method of claim 54, wherein the virus is selected from among GLV-1h68, GLV-1h22, GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h74, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-  
25 1h108 and GLV-1h109.

56. The method of any of claims 53-55, wherein the anticancer compound is administered simultaneously or intermittently with the virus.

57. The method of any of claims 53-56, wherein the virus and the anticancer compound are administered as a single composition or as two  
30 compositions.

- 293 -

58. The method of any of claims 53-57, further comprising administration of an anti-viral agent.

59. The method of claim 58, wherein the antiviral agent is selected from among cidofovir, alkoxyalkyl esters of cidofovir, Gleevec, gancyclovir, acyclovir, and  
5 ST-26.

60. The method of any of claims 53-59, wherein the tumor in human is selected from among a bladder tumor, breast tumor, prostate tumor, carcinoma, basal cell carcinoma, biliary tract cancer, bladder cancer, bone cancer, brain cancer, CNS cancer, glioma tumor, cervical cancer, choriocarcinoma, colon and rectum cancer,  
10 connective tissue cancer, cancer of the digestive system, endometrial cancer, esophageal cancer, eye cancer, cancer of the head and neck, gastric cancer, intra-epithelial neoplasm, kidney cancer, larynx cancer, leukemia, liver cancer, lung cancer, lymphoma, Hodgkin's lymphoma, Non-Hodgkin's lymphoma, melanoma, myeloma, neuroblastoma, oral cavity cancer, ovarian cancer, pancreatic cancer, retinoblastoma,  
15 rhabdomyosarcoma, rectal cancer, renal cancer, cancer of the respiratory system, sarcoma, skin cancer, stomach cancer, testicular cancer, thyroid cancer, uterine cancer, and cancer of the urinary system.

61. The method of any of claims 53-59, wherein the tumor is an ovarian tumor, a breast tumor, a pancreatic tumor, a colon tumor, or a lung tumor.

20 62. The method of any of claims 53-59, wherein the tumor in an non-human subject is selected from among lymphosarcoma, osteosarcoma, mammary tumors, mastocytoma, brain tumor, melanoma, adenosquamous carcinoma, carcinoid lung tumor, bronchial gland tumor, bronchiolar adenocarcinoma, fibroma, myxochondroma, pulmonary sarcoma, neurosarcoma, osteoma, papilloma,  
25 retinoblastoma, Ewing's sarcoma, Wilm's tumor, Burkitt's lymphoma, microglioma, neuroblastoma, osteoclastoma, oral neoplasia, fibrosarcoma, osteosarcoma and rhabdomyosarcoma, genital squamous cell carcinoma, transmissible venereal tumor, testicular tumor, seminoma, Sertoli cell tumor, hemangiopericytoma, histiocytoma, chloroma, granulocytic sarcoma, corneal papilloma, corneal squamous cell carcinoma,  
30 hemangiosarcoma, pleural mesothelioma, basal cell tumor, thymoma, stomach tumor, adrenal gland carcinoma, oral papillomatosis, hemangioendothelioma, cystadenoma,

- 294 -

follicular lymphoma, intestinal lymphosarcoma, fibrosarcoma, and pulmonary squamous cell carcinoma, leukemia, hemangiopericytoma, ocular neoplasia, preputial fibrosarcoma, ulcerative squamous cell carcinoma, preputial carcinoma, connective tissue neoplasia, mastocytoma, hepatocellular carcinoma, lymphoma, pulmonary  
5 adenomatosis, pulmonary sarcoma, Rous sarcoma, reticulo-endotheliosis, fibrosarcoma, nephroblastoma, B-cell lymphoma, lymphoid leukosis, retinoblastoma, hepatic neoplasia, lymphosarcoma, plasmacytoid leukemia, swimbladder sarcoma (in fish), caseous lymphadenitis, lung carcinoma, insulinoma, lymphoma, sarcoma, neuroma, pancreatic islet cell tumor, gastric MALT lymphoma and gastric  
10 adenocarcinoma.

63. The method of any of claims 53-62, wherein the virus is administered intravenously, intraarterially, intratumorally, endoscopically, intralesionally, intramuscularly, intradermally, intraperitoneally, intravesicularly, intraarticularly, intrapleurally, percutaneously, subcutaneously, orally, parenterally, intranasally,  
15 intratracheally, by inhalation, intracranially, intraprostatically, intravitreally, topically, ocularly, vaginally, or rectally.

64. The method of any of claims 53-63, wherein administering the virus and the anticancer compound to a subject causes:

- a) tumor growth to stop or be delayed; and/or
- 20 b) tumor volume to decrease; and/or
- c) elimination of the tumor from the subject.

65. The method of any of claims 53-64, wherein the subject is a human or non-human animal.

- 66. A host cell containing a recombinant virus of any of claims 1-15.
- 25 67. A tumor cell containing a recombinant virus of any of claims 1-15.
- 68. Use of a vaccinia virus of claim 1 for the treatment cancer in a subject.
- 69. Use of a vaccinia virus of claim 1 for preparation of a pharmaceutical composition for the treatment cancer in a subject.

70. The use of claim 69, wherein the pharmaceutical composition further  
30 comprises an anti-cancer compound.

- 295 -

71. The use of claim 70, wherein the anticancer compound is selected from among a cytokine, a chemokine, a growth factor, a photosensitizing agent, a toxin, an anti-cancer antibiotic, a chemotherapeutic compound, a radionuclide, an angiogenesis inhibitor, a signaling modulator, an anti-metabolite, an anti-cancer vaccine, an anti-cancer oligopeptide, a mitosis inhibitor protein, an antimitotic oligopeptide, an anti-cancer antibody, an anti-cancer antibiotic, an immunotherapeutic agent, hyperthermia or hyperthermia therapy, a bacterium and a combination of any of the preceding thereof.

72. The use of claim 70, wherein the anticancer compound is selected from among cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

73. Use of a pharmaceutical composition for treating a tumor, cancer or metastasis in a subject, wherein the pharmaceutical composition comprises:  
a recombinant vaccinia virus; and  
an anticancer compound selected from among cisplatin, carboplatin, gemcitabine, irinotecan, an anti-EGFR antibody and an anti-VEGF antibody.

74. The use of claim 73, where the virus is a Lister strain.

75. The use of claim 74, where the virus is an LIVP strain.

76. A method for modulating attenuation of a therapeutic virus, comprising:  
a) providing a therapeutic virus for attenuation modulation, wherein:  
the therapeutic virus comprises a heterologous nucleic acid containing an open reading frame;  
the open reading frame encodes a polypeptide; and  
the heterologous nucleic acid is operably linked to a promoter;  
and

b) modifying the heterologous nucleic acid molecule, whereby modification alters attenuation of the resulting virus compared to the attenuation of the unmodified therapeutic virus.

77. The method of claim 76, wherein the open reading frame encodes a non-therapeutic polypeptide.



- 296 -

78. The method of claim 76, wherein the open reading frame encodes a therapeutic polypeptide.

79. The method of any of claims 76 -78, further comprising:  
assessing the level of attenuation following modification of the virus.

5 80. The method of claim 79, wherein the step of assessing the level of attenuation is performed *in vitro* or *in vivo*.

81. The method of any of claims 76-80, wherein the modification increases or decreases the level of attenuation relative to the unmodified virus.

82. The method of claim 80, wherein attenuation is assessed by changes in  
10 one or more of the following properties of the virus:

- a) viral mRNA synthesis;
- b) viral protein expression;
- c) viral DNA replication;
- d) viral plaque size;
- 15 e) viral titer; and/or
- f) *in vivo* toxicity.

83. The method of any of claims 76-82, wherein the modification comprises replacement or removal of all or a portion of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule, wherein the removal alters the attenuation of the virus.

20 84. The method of claim 83, wherein the portion of the heterologous nucleic acid that is replaced or removed comprises 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 or more, 10 or more, 15 or more, 20 or more, 50 or more, 100 or more, 1000 or more, 5000 or more nucleotide bases.

85. The method of claim 83, wherein modification comprises replacement  
25 of all or a portion of the heterologous nucleic acid molecule with a non-coding nucleic acid molecule.

86. The method of any of claims 76-85, wherein the promoter that is operably linked to the heterologous nucleic acid is a native promoter or a heterologous promoter.

30 87. The method of claim 86, wherein the promoter is a synthetic promoter.

- 297 -

88. The method of claim 86 or claim 87, wherein the promoter is a viral promoter.
89. The method of claim 88, wherein the promoter is a poxvirus promoter.
90. The method of claim 89, wherein the promoter is a vaccinia viral  
5 promoter.
91. The method of claim 90, wherein the promoter is selected from among a vaccinia early, intermediate, early/late and late promoter.
92. The method of claim 91, wherein the promoter is selected from among vaccinia P<sub>7.5k</sub>, P<sub>11k</sub>, P<sub>EL</sub>, P<sub>SEL</sub>, P<sub>SE</sub>, H5R, TK, P28, C11R, G8R, F17R, I3L, I8R, A1L,  
10 A2L, A3L, H1L, H3L, H5L, H6R, H8R, D1R, D4R, D5R, D9R, D11L, D12L, D13L, M1L, N2L, P4b or K1.
93. The method of claim 88, wherein the promoter is selected from among an adenovirus late promoter, Cowpox ATI promoter, or T7 promoter.
94. The method of any of claims 76-93, wherein the promoter that is  
15 operably linked to the heterologous nucleic acid is modified.
95. The method of claim 94, wherein the modification comprises replacement of the promoter with another promoter, wherein:  
the replaced promoter is stronger thereby resulting in increased attenuation; or  
the replaced promoter is weaker, thereby resulting in decreased attenuation.
- 20 96. The method of claim 95, wherein the replaced promoter is selected from among vaccinia P<sub>7.5k</sub>, P<sub>11k</sub>, P<sub>EL</sub>, P<sub>SEL</sub>, P<sub>SE</sub>, H5R, TK, P28, C11R, G8R, F17R, I3L, I8R, A1L, A2L, A3L, H1L, H3L, H5L, H6R, H8R, D1R, D4R, D5R, D9R, D11L, D12L, D13L, M1L, N2L, P4b or K1.
97. The method of any of claims 76-0, wherein the open reading frame  
25 encodes one or more gene products.
98. The method of any of claims 76-97, wherein the open reading frame is modified, wherein the modification alters the attenuation of the virus compared to the attenuation of the unmodified virus.
99. The method of claim 98, wherein the modification comprises  
30 increasing the length of the open reading frame or removal of all or part of the open reading frame, thereby increasing the level of attenuation.

- 298 -

100. The method of any of claims 76-99, wherein the modification comprises replacement of all or a portion of a first heterologous nucleic acid molecule with a second heterologous nucleic acid molecule comprising an open reading frame operably linked to a promoter, wherein replacement alters attenuation of the resulting virus compared to the attenuation of the unmodified virus.

101. The method of claim 100, wherein the second heterologous nucleic acid molecule comprises:

a stronger promoter, thereby resulting in increased attenuation; or

a weaker promoter, thereby resulting in decreased attenuation.

102. The method of claim 100 or claim 101, wherein the second heterologous nucleic acid molecule comprises two or more promoters and/or two or more open reading frames.

103. The method of any of claims 76-102, wherein modification alters transcription and/translation of one or more viral genes during infection.

104. The method of any of claims 76-103, wherein modification alters translation of one or more endogenous viral polypeptides during infection.

105. The method of any of claims 76-104, further comprising insertion of one or more heterologous nucleic acid molecules comprising an open reading frame operably linked to a promoter into the viral genome.

106. The method of any of claims 76-105, wherein the modified virus encodes a detectable protein or a protein that induces a detectable signal.

107. The method of claim 106, wherein the protein is selected from a luciferase, a fluorescent protein or a protein that binds a contrasting agent, chromophore, or a compound or detectable ligand.

108. The method of claim 107, wherein the protein is a fluorescent protein that is a green fluorescent protein or red fluorescent protein.

109. The method of any of claims 76-108, further comprising insertion of a heterologous nucleic acid molecule that encodes a therapeutic gene product.

110. The method of claim 109, wherein the therapeutic gene product is selected from among a cytokine, a chemokine, an immunomodulatory molecule, a single chain antibody, antisense RNA, siRNA, prodrug converting enzyme, a toxin, a

- 299 -

mitosis inhibitor protein, an antitumor oligopeptide, an anti-cancer polypeptide antibiotic, angiogenesis inhibitor, or tissue factor.

111. The method of any of claims 76-110, wherein the virus is selected from among a poxvirus, herpesvirus, adenovirus, adeno-associated virus, lentivirus, 5 retrovirus, rhabdovirus and a papillomavirus.

112. The method of any of claims 76-110, wherein the virus is a vaccinia virus.

113. The method of claim 112, wherein the virus is a vaccinia virus that is a Lister strain.

10 114. The method of claim 113, wherein the Lister strain is LIVP.

115. The method of claim 113 or claim 114, wherein the vaccinia virus is selected from among GLV-1h22, GLV-1h68, GLV-1i69, GLV-1h70, GLV-1h71, GLV-1h72, GLV-1h73, GLV-1h75, GLV-1h81, GLV-1h82, GLV-1h83, GLV-1h84, GLV-1h85, GLV-1h86, GLV-1j87, GLV-1j88, GLV-1j89, GLV-1h90, GLV-1h91, 15 GLV-1h92, GLV-1h96, GLV-1h97, GLV-1h98, GLV-1h104, GLV-1h105, GLV-1h106, GLV-1h107, GLV-1h108 and GLV-1h109.

116. The method of any of claims 76-115, further comprising determining the desired level of attenuation, wherein the desired level of attenuation depends on the therapeutic or diagnostic application of the virus.

20 117. The method of claim 116, wherein the application is a therapeutic application that comprises treatment of a tumor, cancer or metastasis.

118. The method of claim 116, wherein the application is a diagnostic application that comprises detection of a tumor.

119. The method of any of claims 116-118, wherein determining the desired 25 level of attenuation comprises assessing the health of a subject prior to administration of the virus to the subject.

120. The method of claim 116-119, wherein the desired level of attenuation depends on the route of administration for the virus for the diagnostic or therapeutic application.